

STP 21-1-SMCT

HEADQUARTERS
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY

Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks

Warrior Skills Level 1

MAY 2011

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION:

Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

The Soldier's Creed

I am an American Soldier.

I am a Warrior and a member of a team.
I serve the people of the United States and live the Army Values.

I will always place the mission first.

I will never accept defeat.

I will never quit.

I will never leave a fallen comrade.

I am disciplined, physically and mentally tough, trained, and
proficient in my warrior tasks and drills.

I always maintain my arms, my equipment, and myself.

I am an expert and I am a professional.

I stand ready to deploy, engage, and destroy
the enemies of the United States of America
in close combat.

I am a guardian of freedom and
the American way of life.

I am an American Soldier.

This publication is available at
Army Knowledge Online (www.us.army.mil)
and at the General Dennis J. Reimer Training and Doctrine
Digital Library (www.train.army.mil).

Contents

Preface	vi
Chapter 1 Introduction to the SMCT System	1-1
Chapter 2 Training Guide.....	2- 1
Chapter 3 Warrior Skills Level 1 Tasks	3-1
Appendix Proponent School or Agency Codes	Appendix-1
Glossary	Glossary-1
<hr/>	
Subject Area 1: Shoot/Maintain, Employ, and Engage with Assigned Weapon System	3-1
071-100-0029 Perform a Function Check on an M-16 Series Rifle/ M4 Series Carbine.....	3-1
071-100-0028 Load an M16 Series Rifle/M4 Series Carbine	3-2
071-100-0027 Unload an M16 Series Rifle/M4 Series Carbine.....	3-4
071-100-0030 Engage Targets with an M16 Series Rifle/M4 Series Carbine.....	3-6
071-100-0033 Correct Malfunctions on an M-16 Series Rifle/M4 Series Carbine.....	3-7
071-100-0031 Zero an M-16 Series Rifle/M4 Series Carbine.....	3-9
071-100-0039 Mount an AN/PAQ-4 Series Aiming Light on an M-16-Series Rifle/M4 Carbine	3-13
071-100-0042 Zero an AN/PAQ-4 Series Aiming Light to an M-16 Series Rifle/M4 Carbine	3-17
071-100-0040 Dismount an AN/PAQ-4 Series Aiming Light to an M-16 Series Rifle/M4 Carbine	3-20
071-100-0041 Engage Targets with an M-16-Series Rifle/M4 Series Carbine Using an AN/PAQ-4 Series Aiming Light.....	3-22
071-100-0021 Engage Targets with an M16-Series Rifle/M4 Carbine Using an AN/PAS-13-Series Thermal Weapon Sight	3-23

Distribution Restriction: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

*This manual supersedes STP 21-1-SMCT, 18 June 2009.

071-325-4401 Perform Safety Checks on Hand Grenades.....	3-24
071-325-4407 Employ Hand Grenades.....	3-29
<hr/>	
Subject Area 2: Move	3-31
071-326-0501 Move as a Member of a Fire Team.....	3-31
071-326-0541 Perform Exterior Movement Techniques During an Urban Operation	3-34
071-329-1000 Identify Topographic Symbols on a Military Map.....	3-39
071-329-1001 Identify Terrain Features on a Map	3-42
071-329-1008 Measure Distance on a Map	3-52
071-329-1002 Determine the Grid Coordinates of a Point on a Military Map...	3-55
071-329-1005 Determine a Location on the Ground by Terrain Association	3-59
071-329-1012 Orient a Map to the Ground by Map-Terrain Association	3-61
071-329-1011 Orient a Map Using a Lensatic Compass	3-62
071-329-1003 Determine a Magnetic Azimuth Using a Lensatic Compass.....	3-63
071-329-1006 Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Dismounted.....	3-67
071-329-1030 Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Mounted	3-69
113-610-2005 Navigate Using the Defense Advanced Global Positioning System (GPS) Receiver (DAGR)	3-71
071-326-0502 Move Under Direct Fire	3-72
071-326-0503 Move Over, Through, or Around Obstacles (Except Minefields).....	3-75
071 326-0510 React to Indirect Fire while Dismounted	3-78
071-326-3002 React to Indirect Fire while Mounted	3-79
071-410-0002 React to Direct Fire Mounted	3-81
071-326-0513 Select Temporary Fighting Positions.....	3-82
<hr/>	
Subject Area 3: Communicate	3-84
113-587-2070 Operate SINCGARS Single-Channel (SC).....	3-84
113-571-1022 Perform Voice Communications	3-85
113-587-2000 Operate Secure SINCGARS	3-87

081-831-0101 Request Medical Evacuation.....	3-88
171-121-4079 Send a Situation Report (SITREP)	3-91
071-121-4080 Send a Spot Report (SPOTREP).....	3-93
093-403-5030 Report Explosive Hazard (EH)	3-96
071-326-0608 Use Visual Signaling Techniques	3-98
<hr/>	
Subject Area 4: Survive	3-113
031-503-1036 Maintain Your Assigned Protective Mask	3-113
031-503-1035 Protect Yourself from Chemical and Biological (CB) Contamination Using Your Assigned Protective Mask.....	3-114
031-503-1019 React to Chemical or Biological (CB) Hazard/Attack	3-119
031-503-1040 Protect Yourself from CBRN Injury/Contamination with the JSLIST Chemical-Protective Ensemble	3-122
031-503-1013 Decontaminate Yourself and Individual Equipment Using Chemical Decontaminating Kits	3-126
031-503-1037 Detect Chemical Agents Using M8 or M9 Detector Paper.....	3-133
031-503-1021 Mark CBRN-Contaminated Areas.....	3-136
081-831-1001 Evaluate a Casualty (Tactical Combat Casualty Care)	3-139
081-831-1003 Perform First Aid to Clear an Object Stuck in the Throat of a Conscious Casualty.....	3-144
081-831-1005 Perform First Aid to Prevent or Control Shock.....	3-146
081-831-1023 Perform First Aid to Restore Breathing and/or Pulse	3-149
081-831-1032 Perform First Aid for Bleeding and/or Severed Extremity	3-155
081-831-1051 Transport a Casualty Using a Military Vehicle.....	3-161
081-831-1046 Transport a Casualty	3-164
081-831-1007 Perform First Aid for Burns.....	3-169
052-192-1270 React to Possible Improvised Explosive Device (IED) (Located at https://www.us.army.mil/suite/doc/23838478).....	3-172
052-192-1271 Identify Visual Indicators of an Implosive Device (IED) (Located at https://www.us.army.mil/suite/doc/23838510).....	3-172
093-89D-1264 Search Suspect Vehicle for Improvised Device (IED).....	3-172
301-371-1000 Report Intelligence Information.....	3-173
071-331-0804 Perform Surveillance without the Aid of Electronic Device....	3-175

301-348-1050 Report Information of Potential Intelligence Value.....	3-180
071-000-0006 React to Man-to-Man Contact	3-181
<hr/>	
Subject Area 5: Adapt	3-191
171-300-0011 Employ Progressive Levels of Individual Force When Confronting Civilians	3-191
181-105-1001 Comply with the Law of War and the Geneva and Hague Conventions	3-193
331-202-1049 Comply with the Requirements of the Code of Conduct	3-212
191-376-5148 Search an Individual.....	3-215
224-176-1425 Interact with News Media.....	3-220
301-CAT-1001 See Yourself Culturally	3-222
301-CAT-1002 Learn and Understand the Culture of Other Societies Where You Are Deployed or Assigned.....	3-223
159-200-2025 Effective Performance in an Operational Environment	3-225
150-SRT-0001 Develop Professionally	3-229
150-SRT-0002 Develop in the Five Dimensions of Comprehensive Soldier Fitness	3-231
<hr/>	
Battle Drill: React to Contact, Establish Security, Perform Actions as a Member of a Mounted Patrol, and Evacuate a Casualty.....	3-234
071-410-0002 React to Direct Fire while Mounted...(Repeat Task).....	3-81
071-326-0513 Select Temporary Fighting Positions...(Repeat Task).....	3-82
071-100-0030 Engage Targets with an M16 Series Rifle/M4 Series Carbine...(Repeat Task).....	3-6
071-326-0608 Use Visual Signaling Techniques...(Repeat Task).....	3-98
071-326-0502 Move Under Direct Fire...(Repeat Task).....	3-72
071 326-0510 React to Indirect Fire while Dismounted...(Repeat Task).....	3-78
071-326-3002 React to Indirect Fire while Mounted...(Repeat Task).....	3-79
113-571-1022 Perform Voice Communications...(Repeat Task).....	3-85
071-326-0501 Move as a Member of a Fire Team...(Repeat Task).....	3-31

071-326-0503 Move Over, Through, or Around Obstacles (Except Minefield) ... (Repeat Task)	3-75
071-325-4407 Employ Hand Grenades ... (Repeat Task)	3-29
071-331-0801 Challenge Persons Entering Your Area	3-235
071-331-1004 Perform Duty as a Guard	3-237
191-376-4114 Control Entry to and from a Restricted Area	3-238
191-376-5140 Search a Vehicle for Explosive Devices or Prohibited Items at an Installation Access Control Point	3-240
071-331-0815 Practice Noise, Light, Litter Discipline.....	3-246
191-376-5151 Control Access to a Military Installation	3-248
113-587-2070 Operate SINCGARS Single-Channel (SC).....	3-84
113-571-4079 Send a Situation Report (SITREP)... (Repeat Task)	3-91
071-121-4080 Send a Spot Report (SPOTREP)... (Repeat Task).....	3-93
093-404-5030 Report Explosive Hazard (EH)... (Repeat Task).....	3-96
113-587-2000 Operate Secure SINCGARS... (Repeat Task).....	3-87
551-001-1042 Dismount a Vehicle	3-252
551-001-1043 React to Vehicle Rollover.....	3-254
551-001-1041 Establish Security While Mounted	3-257
551-001-1040 Perform 5/25/200 Meter Scan.....	3-259
551-88M-1658 Prepare Vehicle for Convoy Operations.....	3-262
081-831-0101 Request Medical Evacuation ... (Repeat Task)	3-88
081-831-1001 Evaluate a Casualty (Tactical Combat Casualty Care) ... (Repeat Task)	3-139
081-831-1003 Perform First Aid to Clear an Object Stuck in the Throat of a Conscious Casualty ... (Repeat Task).....	3-144
081-831-1005 Perform First Aid to Prevent or Control Shock. (Repeat Task)	3-146
081-831-1023 Perform First Aid to Restore Breathing and/or Pulse ... (Repeat Task)	3-149
081-831-1032 Perform First Aid for Bleeding and/or Severed Extremity ... (Repeat Task)	3-155
081-831-1051 Transport a Casualty Using a Military Vehicle... (Repeat Task)	3-161

081-831-1046 Transport a Casualty (Repeat Task).....**3-164**
081-831-1007 Perform First Aid for Burns (Repeat Task)**3-169**

Preface

This manual is one of a series of soldier training publications (STPs) that support individual training. Commanders, trainers, and Soldiers will use this manual and STP 21-24-SMCT to plan, conduct, sustain, and evaluate individual training of warrior tasks and battle drills in units.

This manual includes the Army Warrior Training plan for warrior skills level (SL) 1 and task summaries for SL 1 critical common tasks that support unit wartime missions. This manual is the only authorized source for these common tasks. Task summaries in this manual supersede any common tasks appearing in military occupational specialty (MOS)-specific Soldier manuals.

Training support information, such as reference materials, is also included. Trainers and first-line supervisors will ensure that SL 1 Soldiers have access to this publication in their work areas, unit learning centers, and unit libraries.

This manual applies to the Active Army, the Army National Guard/Army National Guard of the United States, and the U.S. Army Reserve unless otherwise stated.

The proponent of this publication is the United States Army Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC), with the United States Army Training Support Center (ATSC) designated as the principle publishing, printing, and distribution agency. Proponents for the specific tasks are the Army schools and agencies as identified by the school code, listed in appendix A. This code consists of the first three digits of the task identification number.

Record any comments or questions regarding the task summaries contained in this manual on a DA Form 2028 (*Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms*) and send it to the respective task proponent with information copies forwarded to—

- Commander, U.S. Army Training and Doctrine Command,
ATTN: ATCG-MT,
Fort Monroe, VA 23651-5000.
- Commander, U.S. Army Training Support Center,
ATTN: ATIC-APR,
Fort Eustis, VA 23604-5166.

This page intentionally left blank.

Chapter 1

Introduction to the SMCT System

1-1. GENERAL

The Army's basic mission is to train and prepare Soldiers, leaders, and units to fight and win in combat. As explained in the Army's capstone training doctrine (FM 7-0), units do not have the time or the resources to achieve and sustain proficiency with every possible training task. Therefore, commanders must identify the tasks that are the units' critical wartime tasks. These tasks then become the unit's Mission Essential Task List (METL). Commanders use the METL to develop their unit-training plan. Noncommissioned officers (NCOs) plan the individual training that Soldiers need to become warriors and to accomplish the METL. The STPs, also known as Soldier's manuals (SMs), provide the critical individual tasks for each military occupational specialty (MOS) that support all of the unit's missions. The NCO leadership uses the tasks in the SMs to train the Soldiers and measure the Soldiers' proficiency with these unit-critical tasks. The manuals provide task performance and evaluation criteria and are the basis for individual training and evaluation in the unit and for task-based evaluation during resident training.

The Army identified warrior tasks and battle drills (WTBD) that enhance a Soldier's readiness to fight on the battlefield. Warrior tasks are a collection of individual Soldier skills known to be critical to Soldier survival. Examples include weapons training, tactical communications, urban operations, and first aid. Battle drills are group skills designed to teach a unit to react and survive in common combat situations. Examples included react to ambush, react to chemical attack, and evacuate injured personnel from a vehicle. WTBD increases the relevance of training to current combat requirements and enhance the rigor in training. The driving force behind the change comes from lessons learned. Standards remain constant but commanders must be aware that the enemy adapts at once and Soldier training will change sooner because of current operational environments.

Note: If a task identified in the SMCT is not current refer to AKO "my training" or "DTMS", identify the individual task or task number. All tasks are reviewed annually and may change before the SMCT is updated.

1-2. PURPOSE

This Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT), Warrior Skill Level (SL) 1, contains the individual tasks that are essential to the Army's ability to win on the modern battlefield. In an operational environment, regardless of job or individual MOS, each Soldier risks exposure to hostile actions. This manual contains the warrior skills that Soldiers must be able to perform to fight, survive, and win in combat.

This SMCT gives the commander, NCO trainer, first-line supervisor, and individual Soldiers the information necessary to support integration and sustainment training in their units. This information allows trainers to plan, prepare, train, evaluate, and monitor individual training of warrior tasks. Using the appropriate mission-training plan (MTP), military occupational specialty (MOS)-specific Soldier's training publication

(STP), and this manual helps provide the foundation for an effective unit-training plan.

1-3. COMMANDER'S RESPONSIBILITIES

The commander at each level develops a unit METL in consultation with the command sergeant major and subordinate commanders. Using the training planning process described in FM 7-0, the commander develops the METL and then determines the level of training needed to attain and maintain proficiency. WTBD in Chapter 4 supports an Army at war and becomes the key element in Army Warrior Training (AWT). Commanders use the unit METL and AWT to determine the necessary training for the unit and develop a strategy to accomplish the required training throughout the fiscal year (FY). The commander also gives the NCO leadership the guidance they need to carry out this strategy. Each commander must design a unit training plan that prepares the unit for the full spectrum of operations. Soldiers must develop and sustain proficiency in the critical tasks for their MOS and skill level. The commander's unit training program should provide individual training for all Soldiers assigned to the unit and evaluate Soldier proficiency by routine. The leader's assessment and the AWT are two tools that give the NCO leadership and commander information about the status of training for individuals and for the unit, which should be integrated with collective training such as the MTPs, crew drills, and battle drills.

Chapter 2 provides information about where tasks are trained to standard and how often tasks are trained to maintain proficiency.

Based on the commander's guidance, individual training in the unit is the responsibility of the NCO trainers. The commander must give the NCO trainer the priorities, resources, and directions needed to carry out training. He or she must also assess the training results of the MTP and other training events, and adjust the unit training plan as a result. To develop a training program, use the following seven-step approach:

- Step 1.** Set the objectives for training.
- Step 2.** Plan the resources (personnel, time, funds, facilities, devices, and training aids).
- Step 3.** Train the trainers.
- Step 4.** Provide the resources.
- Step 5.** Manage risks, environmental and safety concerns.
- Step 6.** Conduct the training.
- Step 7.** Evaluate the results.

1-4. TRAINER'S RESPONSIBILITIES

Trainers must use the following steps to plan and evaluate training:

- a.** *Identify individual training requirements.* The NCO determines which tasks Soldiers need to train based on the commander's training strategy. The unit's training plan, METL, MTP, and the AWT plan (Chapter 2) are sources for helping the trainer define the individual training needed.

b. Plan the training. Plan individual training based on the unit's training plan. Be prepared to take advantage of opportunities to conduct individual training ("hip pocket" training).

c. Gather the training references and materials. The task summaries list references that can assist the trainer in preparing for the training of that task. The Reimer Digital Library provides current training materials.

d. Manage risks and environmental and safety concerns. Assess the risks involved with training a specific task regarding the conditions current at the time of training and, if necessary, implement controls to reduce the risk level. Ensure that training preparation takes into account those cautions, warnings, and dangers associated with each task as well as environmental and safety concerns (FM 5-19).

e. Train each Soldier. Demonstrate to the Soldier how to do the task with standard proficiency and explain (step by step) how to do the task. Give each Soldier the opportunity to practice the task step by step.

f. Check each Soldier. Evaluate how well each Soldier performs the tasks in this manual. Conduct these evaluations during individual training sessions or while evaluating individual proficiencies when conducting unit collective tasks. This manual provides a training and evaluation guide for each task to enhance the NCO's ability to conduct year-round, hands-on evaluations of tasks critical to the unit's mission. Use the information in the AWT plan (chapter 2) as a guide to determine how often to train Soldiers using each task to maintain proficiency.

g. Record the results. Use the leader book referred to in FM 7-1 to record task performance. This gives the leader total flexibility with the methods of recording training tasks. The trainer may use DA Form 5164-R (*Hands-on Evaluation*) and DA Form 5165-R (*Field Expedient Squad Book*) as part of the leader book. These forms are optional and reproducible anywhere.

h. Retrain and evaluate. Work with each Soldier until he/she performs the task to standard. Well-planned, integrated training increases the professional competence of each Soldier and contributes to the development of an efficient unit. The NCO or first-line supervisor is a vital link to the conduct of training.

1-5. SOLDIER'S RESPONSIBILITIES

Each Soldier must be able to perform the individual tasks that the first-line supervisor has identified based on the unit's METL. The Soldier must perform the task to the standard listed in this SMCT. If a Soldier has a question about how to do a task, or which tasks in this manual he or she must perform, it is the Soldier's responsibility to go to the first-line supervisor for clarification. The first-line supervisor knows how to perform each task or can direct the Soldier to the appropriate training materials. In addition, each Soldier should—

a. Know the training steps for both the WTBD and the MOS-specific critical tasks for his or her skill level. A list of the critical tasks is found in chapter 2 of this manual and the STP for the specific MOS (MOS-specific tasks).

b. Check the Reimer Digital Library for new training materials to support self-development with maintaining earlier trained tasks or to learn new tasks.

1-6. TASK SUMMARIES

Task summaries document the performance requirements of a critical warrior task. They provide the Soldier and the trainer with the information necessary to evaluate critical tasks. The formats for the task summaries are—

a. *Task title.* The task title identifies the action to perform.

b. *Task number.* The task number is a 10-digit number that identifies each task. The first three digits of the number represent the proponent code for that task. (Appendix A provides a list of proponent codes.) Include the entire 10-digit task number, along with the task title, in any correspondence relating to the task.

c. *Conditions.* The task conditions identify all the equipment, tools, materials, references, job aids, and supporting personnel that the Soldier needs to perform the task. This section identifies any environmental conditions that can alter task performance such as visibility, temperature, or wind. This section also identifies any specific cues or events (for example, a chemical attack or identification of an unexploded ordnance hazard) that trigger task performance.

d. *Standards.* A task standard specifies the requirements for task performance by indicating how well, complete, or accurate a product must be produced, a process must be performed, or both. Standards are described in terms of accuracy, tolerances, completeness, format, clarity, number of errors, quantity, sequence, or speed of performance.

e. *Training and evaluation guide.* This section has two parts. The first part, Performance Steps, lists the individual steps that the Soldier must complete to perform the task. The second part is the Performance Evaluation Guide. This provides guidance about how to evaluate a Soldier's performance of the task. It is composed of three subsections. The *Evaluation Preparation* subsection identifies special setup procedures and, if required, instructions for evaluating the task performance. Sometimes the conditions and standards must be modified so that the task can be evaluated in a situation that does not, without approximation, duplicate actual field performance. The *Performance Measures* subsection identifies the criteria for acceptable task performance. The Soldier is rated (GO/NO-GO) on how well he or she performs specific actions or produces specific products. As indicated in *Evaluation Guidance*, a Soldier must score a GO on all or specified performance measures to receive a GO on the task in order to be considered trained.

f. *References.* This section identifies references that provide more detailed and thorough explanations of task performance requirements than that given in the task summary description. This section identifies resources the Soldier can use to improve or maintain performance.

g. In addition, task summaries can include safety statements, environmental considerations, and notes. Safety statements (danger, warning, and caution) alert users to the possibility of immediate death, personal injury, or damage to equipment. Notes provide additional information to support task performance.

1-7. TRAINING TIPS FOR NCO LEADERS

a. Prepare yourself.

(1) Get training guidance from your chain of command about when to train, which Soldiers to train, availability of resources, and a training site.

(2) Get task, conditions and standards from the task summary in this manual. Ensure that you can do the task. Review the task summary and the references in the reference section. Practice doing the task or, if necessary, have someone train you how to perform the task.

b. Prepare the resources.

(1) Obtain the required resources as identified in the conditions statement for each task and/or modified in the training and evaluation guide.

(2) Gather the equipment and ensure that it is operational.

(3) Prepare a training outline consisting of informal notes about what you want to cover during your training session.

(4) Practice your training presentation.

(5) Coordinate for the use of training aids and devices.

(6) Prepare the training site using the conditions statement as modified in the training and evaluation guide.

c. Train the Soldier.

(1) Tell the Soldier what task to do and how well it must be done. Refer to the task standards and the performance measures for the task, as appropriate.

(2) Caution Soldiers about safety, environment, and security considerations.

(3) Demonstrate how to do the task to the standard level. Have the Soldiers study the appropriate training materials.

(4) Provide any necessary training involving basic skills Soldiers must have before they can be proficient with the task.

(5) Have the Soldiers practice the task until they can perform it to standard levels.

(6) Provide critical information to those Soldiers who fail to perform at task standard levels, and have them continue to practice until they can perform at standard levels.

(7) Combine training involving the individual tasks contained in this manual with the collective tasks contained in the MTP. Ensure that the necessary safety equipment and clothing needed for proper performance of the job are on hand at the training site.

d. Record the results: First-line supervisors record the results and report information to the unit leadership.

1-8. TRAINING SUPPORT

Appendix A lists the task proponents and agency codes (first three digits of the task number) with addresses for submitting comments concerning specific tasks in this manual.

1-9. EVALUATING TASK PERFORMANCE

Trainers need to keep the following points in mind when preparing to evaluate their Soldiers:

- a.** Review the performance measures to become familiar with the criteria about which you will score the Soldier.
- b.** Ensure that all necessary equipment and clothing needed for proper performance of the job are on hand at the training site. Remember to include safety equipment.
- c.** Prepare the test site according to the conditions section of the task summary. Some tasks contain special evaluation preparation instructions. These instructions tell the trainer what modifications must be made concerning job conditions to evaluate the task. Reset the site to its original condition after evaluating each Soldier to ensure that the conditions are the same for each Soldier.
- d.** Advise each Soldier about any special guidance that appears in the evaluation preparation section of the task summary before evaluating.
- e.** Score each Soldier regarding the information in the performance measures and evaluation guidance. Record the date of training and task performance score (GO or NO GO) in the sections training records for each Soldier.

(1) When applicable, conduct an exercise after-action review to allow training participants to discover for themselves what happened, why it happened, and how it can be done better. Once all key points are discussed and linked to future training, the evaluator will make the appropriate notes for inclusion into the score.

(2) Score the Soldier GO if all performance measures pass. Score the Soldier NO GO if the Soldier fails any step. If the Soldier fails, Show the Soldier what they did wrong and allow the Soldiers to take the test again.

Chapter 2

Training Guide

2-1. THE ARMY WARRIOR TRAINING PLAN

a. Army Warrior Training focuses on training Soldiers warrior tasks, battle drills, and tasks from a unit's METL. This chapter and chapter 4 provides information identifying individual tasks to train and assist in the trainer's planning, preparation, training assessment, and monitoring of individual training in units. It lists by general subject area, and skill level, the critical warrior tasks Soldiers must perform, the initial training location, and a suggested expertise of training.

b. The training location column uses brevity codes to indicate where the task is first taught to standard levels. If the task is taught in the unit, the word "UNIT" appears in this column. If the task is trained by a self-development media, "SD" appears in this column. If the task is taught in the training base, the brevity code (BCT, OSUT, and AIT) of the resident course appears. Brevity codes and resident courses are listed below.

Brevity Codes	
BCT	Basic Combat Training
OSUT	One Station Unit Training
AIT	Advanced Individual Training
UNIT	Trained in/by the Unit
SD	Self-Development Training

c. The sustainment-training column lists how often (frequency) Soldiers should train with the task to ensure they maintain their proficiency. This information is a guide for commanders to develop a comprehensive unit training plan. The commander, in conjunction with the unit trainers, is in the best position to determine which tasks, and how often Soldiers should train to maintain unit readiness. (See chapter 4 for a list of individual tasks that support the WTBD to be trained in each Army unit.)

Frequency Codes	
AN	Annually
SA	Semiannually
QT	Quarterly

Army Warrior Training Plan			
Task Number	Title	Training Location	Sustainment Training Frequency
Warrior Skill Level 1			
Subject Area 1: Shoot/Maintain, Employ, and Engage with Assigned Weapon System:			
071-100-0029	Perform a Function Check on an M16-Series Rifle/M4 Series Carbine	BCT/OSUT	QT
071-100-0028	Load an M16- Series/M4 Series Carbine	BCT/OSUT	SA
071-100-0027	Unload an M16- Series Rifle/M4Series Carbine	BCT/OSUT	SA
071-100-0030	Engage Targets with an M16-Series Rifle/ M4 Series Carbine	BCT/OSUT	SA
071-100-0033	Correct Malfunctions of an M16-Series Rifle /M4 Series Carbine	BCT/OSUT	QT
071-100-0031	Zero an M16-Series Rifle/M4 Series Carbine	BCT/OSUT	SA
071-100-0039	Mount an AN/PAQ-4 Series Aiming Light on an M16-Series Rifle/M4 Carbine	Unit	AN
071-100-0042	Zero an AN/PAQ-4 Series Aiming Light on an M16-Series Rifle/M4 Carbine	BCT/OSUT	AN
071-100-0040	Dismount an AN/PAQ-4 Series Aiming Light on an M16-Series Rifle/M4 Carbine	Unit	AN
071-100-0041	Engage Targets with an M16-Series Rifle/ M4 Series Carbine Using an AN/PAQ-4-Series Aiming Light	BCT/OSUT	AN
071-100-0021	Engage Targets with an M16-Series Rifle or M4 Carbine Using an AN/PAS-13-Series Thermal Weapon Sight	Unit	AN
Subject Area 2: Employ Hand Grenades:			
071-325-4401	Perform Safety Checks on Hand Grenades	BCT/OSUT	AN
071-325-4407	Employ Hand Grenades	BCT/OSUT	AN
Subject Area 3: Perform Individual Movement Techniques:			
071-326-0501	Move as a Member of a Fire Team	BCT/OSUT	SA
071-326-0541	Perform Exterior Movement Techniques during an Urban Operation	BCT/OSUT	AN
Subject Area 4: Navigate From One Point To Another:			
071-329-1000	Identify Topographic Symbols on a Military Map	BCT/OSUT	AN
071-329-1001	Identify Terrain Features on a Map	BCT/OSUT	AN
071-329-1008	Measure distance on a Map	BCT/OSUT	AN
071-329-1002	Determine the Grid Coordinates of a Point on a Military Map	BCT/OSUT	AN
071-329-1005	Determine a Location on the Ground by Terrain Association	Unit	AN
071-329-1012	Orient a Map to the Ground by Map-Terrain Association	BCT/OSUT	AN
071-329-1011	Orient a Map Using a Lensatic Compass	BCT/OSUT	AN
071-329-1003	Determine a Magnetic Azimuth Using a Lensatic Compass	BCT/OSUT	AN
071-329-1006	Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Dismounted	BCT/OSUT	SA
071-329-1030	Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Mounted	Unit	SA
113-610-2005	Navigate using the Defense Advanced Global Positioning System (GPS) Receiver (DAGR)	Unit	SA
Subject Area 5: Move under Fire:			
071-326-0502	Move Under Direct Fire	BCT/OSUT	SA
071-326-0503	Move Over, Through, or Around Obstacles (Except Minefields)	BCT/OSUT	SA

Army Warrior Training Plan			
<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Title</i>	<i>Training Location</i>	<i>Sustainment Training Frequency</i>
071-326-0510	React to Indirect Fire While Dismounted	BCT/OSUT	SA
071-326-3002	React to Indirect Fire While Mounted	BCT/OSUT	SA
071-410-0002	React to Direct Fire While Mounted	BCT/OSUT	SA
071-326-0513	Select Temporary Fighting Positions	BCT/OSUT	SA
Subject Area 6: Perform Voice Communications (SITREP/SPOTREP/9-Line MEDEVAC, EXPLOSIVE HAZZARD (EH):			
113-587-2070	Operate SINGGARS Single-Channel (SC)	BCT/OSUT	SA
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications	BCT/OSUT	AN
113-587-2000	Operate Secure SINGGARS	BCT/OSUT	SA
081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation	BCT/OSUT	AN
171-121-4079	Send a Situation Report (SITREP)	BCT/OSUT	AN
071-121-4080	Send a Spot Report (SPOTREP)	BCT/OSUT	AN
093-403-5030	Report Explosive Hazard (EH)	BCT/OSUT	AN
Subject Area 7: Visual Signaling Techniques:			
071-326-0608	Use Visual Signaling Techniques	BCT/OSUT	SA
Subject Area 8: React to Chemical, Biological, Radiological, and Nuclear (CBRN) Attack/Hazard			
031-503-1036	Maintain Your Assigned Protective Mask	BCT/OSUT	AN
031-503-1035	Protect Yourself from Chemical and Biological (CB) Contamination Using Your Assigned Protective Mask	BCT/OSUT	AN
031-503-1019	React to Chemical or Biological (CB) Hazard/Attack	BCT/OSUT	AN
031-503-1040	Protect Yourself from CBRN Injury/Contamination with the JSLIST Chemical-Protective Ensemble	BCT/OSUT	SA
031-503-1013	Decontaminate Yourself and Individual Equipment Using Chemical Decontaminating Kits	BCT/OSUT	AN
031-503-1037	Detect Chemical Agents Using M8 or M9 Detector paper	BCT/OSUT	AN
031-503-1021	Mark CBRN-Contaminated Areas	Unit	AN
Subject Area 9: Perform Immediate Lifesaving Measures:			
081-831-1001	Evaluate a Casualty (Tactical Combat Casualty Care)	BCT/OSUT	AN
081-831-1003	Perform First Aid to Clear an Object Stuck in the Throat of a Conscious Casualty	BCT/OSUT	AN
081-831-1005	Perform First Aid to Prevent or Control Shock	BCT/OSUT	AN
081-831-1023	Perform First Aid to Restore Breathing and/or Pulse	BCT/OSUT	AN
081-831-1032	Perform First Aid for a Bleeding and/or Severed Extremity	BCT/OSUT	AN
081-831-1051	Transport a Casualty using a Military Vehicle	Unit	AN
081-831-1046	Transport a Casualty	BCT/OSUT	AN
081-831-1007	Perform First Aid for Burns	BCT/OSUT	AN
Subject Area 10: Perform Counter IED:			
052-192-1270	React to possible Improvised Explosive Device (IED)	BCT/OSUT	AN
052-192-1271	Identify Visual Indicators of an Improvised Device (IED)	BCT/OSUT	AN
093-89D-1264	Search Suspect Vehicle for Improvised Device (IED)	Unit	AN
Subject Area 11: Maintain Situational Awareness/Every Soldier as Sensor:			
301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information	BCT/OSUT	AN
071-331-0804	Perform Surveillance without the Aid of Electronic Device	Unit	SA

Army Warrior Training Plan			
<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Title</i>	<i>Training Location</i>	<i>Sustainment Training Frequency</i>
301-348-1050	Report Information of Potential Intelligence Value	BCT/OSUT	SA
Subject Area 12: Perform Combatives:			
071-000-0006	React to Man-to-Man Contact	BCT/OSUT	SA
Subject Area 13: Assess and Respond to Threats (Escalation of Force):			
171-300-0011	Employ Progressive Levels of Individual Force when Confronting Civilians	BCT/OSUT	AN
181-105-1001	Comply with the Law of War and Geneva and Hague Conventions	BCT/OSUT	AN
331-202-1049	Comply with the Requirements of the Code of Conduct	BCT/OSUT	AN
191-376-5148	Search an Individual	BCT/OSUT	AN
Subject Area 14: Adapt to Changing Operational Environment:			
224-176-1425	Interact with News Media	BCT/OSUT	SA
301-CAT-1001	See Yourself Culturally	BCT/OSUT	SA
310-CAT-1002	Learn and Understand the culture of the Societies where you are deployed or assigned	Unit	SA
159-200-2025	Perform in Operational Environment Effectively	Unit	SA
Subject Area 15: Grow Professionally and Personally (Build Resilience):			
150-SRT-0001	Develop Professionally	BCT/OSUT	SA
150-SRT-0002	Develop in the Five Dimensions of Comprehensive Soldier Fitness	BCT/OSUT	SA
Subject Area 16: (Battle Drills) React to Contact:			
071-410-0002	React to Direct Fire While Mounted (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	SA
071-326-0513	Select Temporary Fighting Positions (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	SA
071-100-0030	Engage Targets with an M16-Series Rifle/ M4 Series Carbine (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	SA
071-326-0608	Use Visual Signaling Techniques (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	AN
071-326-0502	Move under Direct Fire (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	SA
071-326-0503	Move Over, Through, or Around Obstacles (Except Minefields) (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	SA
071-326-0510	React to Indirect Fire While Dismounted (If Applicable) (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	SA
071-326-3002	React to Indirect Fire While Mounted (If Applicable) (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	SA
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	AN
071-326-0501	Move as a member of a Fire Team (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	SA
071-325-4407	Employ Hand Grenades (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	AN
Subject Area 17: (Battle Drills) Establish Security:			
071-326-0513	Select Fighting Positions (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	SA
113-587-2070	Operate SINCGARS Single-Channel (SC) (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	AN
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	AN
113-587-2000	Operate Secure SINCGARS (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	AN
171-121-4079	Send a Situation Report (SITREP) (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	AN
171-121-4080	Send a Spot Report (SPOTREP) (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	AN
093-403-5030	Report Explosive Hazard (EH) (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	AN
071-331-0801	Challenge Persons Entering Your Area	BCT/OSUT	AN
071-331-1004	Perform Duty as a Guard	BCT/OSUT	AN

Army Warrior Training Plan			
<i>Task Number</i>	<i>Title</i>	<i>Training Location</i>	<i>Sustainment Training Frequency</i>
191-376-4114	Control Entry To and From a Restricted Area	BCT/OSUT	AN
191-376-5140	Search a vehicle for Explosive Devices or Prohibited Items as an Installation Access Control Point	BCT/OSUT	AN
071-331-0815	Practice Noise, Light, and Litter Discipline (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	AN
191-376-5151	Control Access to a Military Installation	Unit	AN
071-326-0608	Use Visual Signaling Techniques (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	AN
Subject Area 18: (Battle Drills) Perform Actions as a member of a Mounted Patrol:			
551-001-1042	Dismount a Vehicle	Unit	SA
551-001-1043	React to a Vehicle Rollover	Unit	SA
551-001-1041	Establish Security while Mounted	BCT/OSUT	AN
551-001-1040	Perform 5/25/200 meter Scan	BCT/OSUT	SA
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	AN
551-88M-1658	Prepare Vehicle for Convoy Operations	Unit	SA
Subject Area 19: (Battle Drills) Evaluate a Casualty:			
081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	SA
081-831-1001	Evaluate a Casualty (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	AN
081-831-1003	Perform First Aid to Clear an Object Stuck in the Throat of a Conscious Casualty (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	AN
081-831-1005	Perform First Aid to Prevent or Control Shock (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	AN
081-831-1023	Perform First Aid to Restore Breathing and/or Pulse (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	AN
081-831-1032	Perform First Aid for Bleeding of an Extremity (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	AN
081-831-1051	Transport a Casualty Mounted using a Military Vehicle (Repeat)	Unit	AN
081-831-1046	Transport a Casualty (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	AN
081-831-1007	Perform First Aid for Burns	BCT/OSUT	AN
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications (Repeat)	BCT/OSUT	AN

This page intentionally left blank.

Chapter 3

Warrior Skills Level 1 Tasks

Subject Area 1: Shoot/Maintain, Employ, and Engage With Assigned Weapon System

071-100-0029

Perform a Function Check on an M16-Series Rifle/M4 Carbine

Conditions: Given an M16-series rifle/M4-series carbine that you must confirm is operable.

Standards: Perform a function check and ensure that the weapon operates well with the selector switch in each position.

Performance Steps

WARNING

Before starting functional check, be sure to clear the weapon.

DO NOT squeeze the trigger until the weapon has been cleared. Inspect the chamber to ensure that it is empty and no ammunition is in position to be chambered.

Note: A function check is the final step of maintaining your weapon. It is also performed anytime the proper operation of a weapon is in question. Stop a function check at anytime the weapon does not function well and turn in the malfunctioning weapon as per unit standard operating procedures.

1. Confirm the weapon is clear.
2. Perform functional check.
 - a. Place selector lever on SAFE.
 - (1) Pull charging handle to rear and release.
 - (2) Pull trigger, hammer should not fall.

Note: Slow is defined as 1/4 to 1/2 the normal rate of bigger release.

- b. Place selector lever on SEMI.
 - (1) Pull trigger, hammer should fall.
 - (2) Hold trigger to the rear and charge the weapon.
 - (3) Release the trigger with a slow, smooth motion, until the trigger is all the way forward.

Note: An audible click should be heard.

- (4) Pull trigger, hammer should fall.
 - c. Place selector lever on BURST. (M16A2, M16A4, and M4 only.)
 - (1) Charge weapon one time.
 - (2) Squeeze trigger, hammer should fall.
 - (3) Hold trigger to the rear.

Performance Steps

- (4) Charge weapon three times.
 - (5) Release trigger.
 - (6) Squeeze trigger, hammer should fall.
- d. Place the selector switch on AUTO. (M16A3 and M4A1 Only.)
- (1) Pull the charging handle to the rear, charging the weapon.
 - (2) Squeeze the trigger; hammer should fall.
 - (3) Hold the trigger to the rear.
 - (4) Cock the weapon again.
 - (5) Release the trigger all the way then squeeze it again.

Note: The hammer should not fall because it should have fallen when the bolt was allowed to move forward during the chambering and locking sequences.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Have Soldiers use their assigned carbines and magazines.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier to perform a function check and to tell the evaluator if the carbine malfunctions.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Confirmed the weapon was clear.	---	---
2. Performed functional check.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-22.9 and TM 9-1005-319-10

071-100-0028

Load an M16 Series Rifle/M4 Carbine

Conditions: Given an M4 or M4A1 carbine with magazines loaded with 5.56-mm ammunition. You must load the M16-series/M4-series carbine so that a round is chambered.

Standards: Ensure the weapon is loaded for the appropriate mode. A magazine is inserted, a round is chambered and the selector lever is placed on SAFE if the weapon is not to be fired at this time.

Performance Steps

1. Determine the mode in which the weapon will be operated.
 - a. Semiautomatic mode.
 - b. Automatic mode for M16A1, M16A3, and M4A1.
 - c. Burst mode for M16A2, M16A4, M4, and M4 – modular weapon system (MWS).

Performance Steps

2. Point the weapon in a safe direction.

3. Cock the weapon.

- a. Pull the charging handle to the rear.
- b. Check the chamber to ensure it is clear.

Note: The chamber can be checked either by locking the bolt to the rear or by holding the bolt to the rear and then observing the chamber area.

- c. Return the charging handle to the forward position.

4. Place the selector lever on—

- a. SAFE for semiautomatic or automatic fire modes.
- b. BURST for burst fire mode.

5. Select BURST fire mode.

Note: Step 5 should only be performed if you have selected to fire the M16A2, M16A4, M4, or the M4 - MWS in the burst mode. For all other modes and weapons proceed to step 6.

- a. Rotate the BURST cam to the BURST position.
- b. Ensure the bolt is forward and the selector level is on BURST.
- c. Squeeze the trigger and hold it in the rear position.
- d. Squeeze the trigger and hold it in the rear position.
- e. Pull the charging handle to the rear a fourth time and hold it to the rear.
- f. Release the trigger.
- g. Lock the bolt open by pressing the bottom portion of the bolt catch.
- h. Return the charging handle to the forward position.
- i. Place the selector lever on SAFE.

6. Insert the magazine.

- a. Push the magazine upwards until the magazine catch engages.
- b. Tap upward on the bottom of the magazine to ensure the magazine is

seated.

7. Chamber a round.

Note: A round may be chambered with the bolt assembly open or closed.

- a. With the bolt open—

(1) Press the upper portion of the bolt catch allowing the bolt to go forward.

(2) Tap the forward assist to ensure that the bolt is well forward and locked.

- b. With the bolt closed—

(1) Pull the charging handle to the rear as far as it will go.

(2) Release the charging handle.

Note: The charging handle should not be rode forward.

(3) Tap the forward assist to ensure that the bolt is well forward and locked.

Performance Steps

WARNING

The weapon is now loaded and should be pointed in a safe direction.

- Place selector lever on SAFE and close the ejection port cover if the weapon is not to be fired at this time.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Have Soldiers use their assigned weapons and magazines. Provide blank or dummy ammunition.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier to load the carbine.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Determined the mode in which the weapon will be operated.	---	---
2. Pointed the weapon in a safe direction.	---	---
3. Cocked the weapon.	---	---
4. Placed the selector lever on the desired mode.	---	---
5. Rotated the burst cam to the burst position for the BURST mode only.	---	---
6. Inserted the magazine.	---	---
7. Chambered a round.	---	---
8. Placed selector lever on SAFE and closed the ejection port cover if the weapon was not to be fired at this time.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-22.9 and TM 9-1005-319-10

071-100-0027

Unload an M16 Series Rifle/M4 Carbine

Conditions: Given a loaded M16-series rifle or M4-series carbine. You must unload the M16-series rifle or M4-series carbine.

Standards: Unload the M16-series rifle or M4-series carbine so that the magazine and all ammunition are removed from the weapon.

Performance Steps

- Point the weapon muzzle in a safe direction.
- Place the selector lever on SAFE.

Performance Steps

Note: If the weapon is not cocked, you cannot place the selector lever on SAFE.

3. Remove the magazine.
4. Lock the bolt open.
 - a. Pull the charging handle to the rear.
 - b. Press the bottom portion of the bolt catch, locking the bolt open.
 - c. Return the charging handle to the forward position.
 - d. Place the selector lever on SAFE.

Note: If the weapon was cocked before locking the bolt open, then the selector lever should already be on SAFE.

5. Remove any ammunition from the receiver and chamber.
6. Return the bolt to the closed position.
 - a. Press the upper portion of the bolt catch allowing the bolt to go forward.
 - b. Place selector lever on SEMI.
 - c. Pull the trigger to release the pressure on the firing pin spring.
 - d. Close the ejection port cover.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* At a test site, provide an M4 or M4A1 carbine loaded with dummy ammunition.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier to unload the carbine.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Pointed the weapon muzzle in a safe direction.	---	---
2. Placed the selector lever on SAFE.	---	---
3. Removed the magazine.	---	---
4. Locked the bolt open.	---	---
5. Removed any ammunition from the receiver and chamber.	---	---
6. Returned the bolt to the closed position.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-22.9 and TM 9-1005-319-10

071-100-0030

Engage Targets with an M16-Series Rifle/M4 Series Carbine

Conditions: Given a loaded M16/M4-series rifle/carbine, magazines, ammunition, individual combat equipment, and stationary or moving targets (personnel or equipment) at engageable ranges.

Standards: Detect, identify as threat, and determine range to targets in assigned sector of fire. Fire the M16-series rifle/M4-series carbine, while applying correct fundamentals of marksmanship and aiming and engagement techniques so that each target is hit or suppressed.

Performance Steps

1. Detect targets by using one of the following methods:

Note: Detection of targets depends on your position, your skill in scanning, and your ability to observe the area and recognize target indicators.

- a. Self-preservation method.
- b. 50-meter overlapping strip method.
- c. Maintaining observation of the area.

2. Select position.

Note: Your situation should affect your physical positioning and firing stance. Your position should protect you from enemy fire and observation, yet allow you to place effective fire on targets in your sector of fire. Your position may vary from a fixed location to a temporary location during movement.

3. Determine range to targets.

- a. 100-meter unit of measure method.
- b. Appearance of objects method.
- c. Front sight post method.

4. Identify targets in your designated sector of fire.

5. Fire on targets using correct fundamentals of marksmanship and appropriate aiming and engagement techniques.

- a. Apply the fundamentals of marksmanship.

- (1) Steady position.
- (2) Aiming.
- (3) Breath control.
- (4) Trigger squeeze.

- b. Use appropriate aiming and engagement techniques as needed.

- (1) Combat fire techniques.
- (2) Chemical, biological, radiological and nuclear (CBRN) firing.
- (3) Night firing.
- (4) Moving targets.
- (5) Short-range marksmanship techniques.

- c. Fire on the targets until they are destroyed, suppressed, or you receive an order to cease fire.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* On a live-fire range, provide sufficient quantities of equipment and ammunition to support the number of Soldiers tested. Have each Soldier use his own rifle and magazine.

Brief Soldier: Tell Soldier that he/she is to detect and engage targets in his/her sector and, when asked, state the range to the target.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Detected targets by using one of the following methods.	---	---
2. Selected position.	---	---
3. Determined range to a target.	---	---
4. Identified targets in your designated sector of fire.	---	---
5. Fired on targets using correct fundamentals of marksmanship and appropriate aiming and engagement techniques.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-21.75 (FM 21-75), FM 3-22.9, and
TM 9-1005-319-10

071-100-0033

Correct Malfunctions of an M16-Series Rifle/M4 Series Carbine

Conditions: Given a loaded M16-series rifle/M4-series carbine that has stopped firing, magazine, a complete cleaning rod, and a pointed object. You must correct malfunctions on the M16-series rifle/M4-series carbine.

Standards: Eliminate the stoppage so that firing can be resumed.

Performance Steps

1. Perform immediate action.

Note: The key word "SPORTS" will help you remember the steps for immediate action in sequence: slap, pull, observe, release, tap, shoot.

- a. Slap upward on the magazine to ensure it is well seated and that the magazine follower is not jammed.

Note: When slapping up on the magazine, be careful not to knock a round out of the magazine into the line of the bolt carrier.

- b. Pull the charging handle all the way to the rear.
- c. Observe the ejection of a live round or expended cartridge.

Note: If a weapon fails to eject a cartridge, perform remedial action.

Performance Steps

- d. Release the charging handle; do not ride the charging handle.
- e. Tap the forward assist to ensure that the bolt is closed.
- f. Squeeze the trigger and try to fire the rifle.

Note: Apply immediate action only once for a stoppage. If the rifle fails to fire a second time for the same malfunction, remedial action should be performed.

2. Perform remedial action.

- a. Correct an obstructed chamber.

- (1) Lock the charging handle to the rear.
- (2) Place the weapon on SAFE.
- (3) Remove the magazine.
- (4) Inspect the chamber.
- (5) Remove obstructions from the chamber by—

(a) Angling the ejection port downward and shaking the rifle to remove single rounds.

(b) Using a pointed object to lessen jammed rounds then shake out when loose.

(c) Using a cleaning rod to push out a round or cartridge case stuck in the chamber.

- b. Correct a mechanical malfunction.

- (1) Clear the weapon.
- (2) Disassemble the weapon.
- (3) Inspect for dirty, corroded, missing, or broken parts.
- (4) Clean dirty or corroded parts.
- (5) Replace missing or broken parts.
- (6) Assemble the weapon.
- (7) Perform a function check.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide an M4 or M4A1 carbine loaded with dummy ammunition.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier that the rifle has stopped firing. Tell the Soldier that the weapon is cool and that he/she is to perform the immediate or remedial actions on the rifle. All steps must be performed in the proper sequence.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Performed immediate action.	---	---
2. Performed remedial action.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-22.9 and TM 9-1005-319-10

071-100-0031

Zero an M16 Series Rifle/M4 Series Carbine

Conditions: Given an M16-series rifle/M4-series carbine, 18 rounds of 5.56-mm ammunition, the appropriate 25-meter zero target (300-meter for M16A2/M16A3/M16A4/M4/M4A1 or 250-meter for M16A1), sandbags for support, and a requirement to zero your weapon.

Standards: Fire the weapon and adjust the sights so that 5 out of 6 rounds in two consecutive shot groups strike within the 4-centimeter circle on the target using 18 rounds or less. Record your zero.

Performance Steps

1. Set either the battle sight zero or mechanical zero on your weapon.
 - a. Determine whether to set a mechanical zero or the battle sight zero.
 - (1) Set a mechanical zero if—
 - (a) The weapon sights have been serviced.
 - (b) The weapon is just assigned to the unit.
 - (c) The current zero on the weapon is questionable.
 - (2) Set a battle sight zero if a mechanical zero is not required.
 - b. Set a mechanical zero on your weapon.
 - (1) Adjust the front sight.
 - (a) Move the front sight post until the base is flush with the housing.
 - (b) (M16A1 only) Move the front sight post, from the flush position, 11 clicks in the direction of UP.
 - (2) Adjust the rear sight (by weapon type).
 - (a) (M16A1 only) Turn the rear-sight-windage-drum left until it stops.
 - (b) (M16A1 only) Turn the windage drum right 17 clicks to center it.
 - (c) (M16A2/M16A3/M16A4/M4-series) Set rear apertures by positioning the apertures so the unmarked aperture is up and the 0–200 meter aperture is down.
 - (d) (M16A2/M16A3/M16A4/M4-series) Set windage by turning the windage knob to align the index mark on the 0–200 meter aperture with the long center index line on the rear sight assembly.
 - (e) (M16A2/M16A3) Set the elevation of the M16A2/A3 by turning the elevation knob counterclockwise until the rear sight assembly rests flush with the carrying handle and the 8/3 marking is aligned with the index line on the left side of the carrying handle.

Performance Steps

(f) (M16A4 only) Turn the elevation knob counterclockwise until the rear sight assembly rests flush with the carrying handle and the 6/3 marking is aligned with the index line on the left side of the carrying handle.

(g) (M4-series only) Turn the elevation knob counterclockwise until the rear sight assembly rests flush with the detachable carrying handle and the 6/3 marking is aligned with the index line on the left side of the carrying handle.

- c. Set a battle sight zero on your weapon.

Note: No changes are made to the front sight when setting a battle sight zero.

(1) (M16A1 only) Adjust rear sight by flipping the aperture to ensure the aperture marked "L" is visible.

(2) (M16A2/M16A3/M16A4/M4-series only) Adjust rear aperture by positioning the apertures so the unmarked aperture is up and the 0–200 meter aperture is down.

(3) (M16A2/M16A3/M16A4/M4-series only) Adjust windage by turning the windage knob to align the index mark on the 0–200 meter aperture with the long center index line on the rear sight assembly.

- (4) (M16A2/M16A3 only) Adjust elevation by—

(a) Turning the elevation knob counterclockwise until the rear sight assembly rests flush with the carrying handle and the 8/3 marking is aligned with the index line on the left side of the carrying handle.

- (b) Turning the elevation knob one more click clockwise.

- (5) (M16A4 only) Adjust elevation by—

(a) Turning the elevation knob counterclockwise until the rear sight assembly rests flush with the carrying handle and the 6/3 marking is aligned with the index line on the left side of the carrying handle.

(b) Turning the elevation knob two more clicks clockwise so the index line on the left side of the detachable carrying handle is aligned with the "Z" on the elevation knob.

(6) (M4-series only) Adjust elevation by turning the elevation knob counterclockwise until the rear sight assembly rests flush with the detachable carrying handle and the 6/3 marking is aligned with the index line on the left side of the carrying handle.

2. Establish a correct sight picture.

- a. Confirm the correct 25-meter zero target is facing you.
b. Assume a prone supported firing position.
c. Align the sights.

- (1) Center the top of the front sight post in the center of the rear sight.

(2) Visualize imaginary cross hairs in the center of the rear aperture so that the top of the front sight post touches the imaginary horizontal line and the front sight post bisects imaginary vertical line.

- (3) Verify the sight picture.

Performance Steps

d. Align the sights.

(1) Inspect the chamber.

(2) Position the top of the front sight post center mass of the scaled silhouette target.

(3) Confirm that an imaginary vertical line drawn through the center of the front sight post splits the target.

(4) Confirm that an imaginary horizontal line drawn through the top of the front sight post splits the target.

3. Establish a tight shot group.

Note: A tight shot group is three consecutive rounds within a 4-centimeter or less circle.

a. Fire a three round shot group at the 25-meter zeroing target.

b. Identify the shot group on the target.

c. Repeat step 3a and step 3b until two consecutive three-round shot groups fall within a 4-centimeter or less circle.

Note: If a tight shot group is not obtained after 18 rounds, then remedial training must be done.

4. Adjust sights (if required) to obtain a zero.

Note: Do not adjust the sights if your shot groups meet the standard.

a. Determine the necessary sight adjustments by identifying the center of the last fired shot group and identifying the adjustment to move this point to the center of the strike zone (zero offset).

Note: The numbered squares around the edges of the target each represent a click on the sight.

b. Adjust elevation.

Note: One click clockwise moves the strike of the bullet down one square, while one click counterclockwise moves the strike of the bullet up one square.

(1) Find the horizontal line nearest the center of the shot group.

(2) Follow the line either left or right to the nearest edge of the target.

(3) Identify the number of clicks and the direction of adjustment shown at the edge of the target.

(4) Adjust the front sight in the indicated direction by the appropriate number of clicks.

(5) Record the adjustment made on the target.

c. Adjust windage.

Note: Three clicks counterclockwise move the strike of the bullet left one square, while three clicks clockwise move the strike of the bullet right one square.

(1) Find the vertical line (up and down) nearest the center of the shot group.

(2) Follow the line either up or down to the nearest edge of the target.

(3) Identify the number of clicks and the direction of adjustment shown at the edge of the target.

(4) Adjust the rear sight in the indicated direction by the appropriate number of clicks.

(5) Record the adjustment made on the target.

Performance Steps

5. Establish a zero.
 - a. Fire a three-round shot group at the 25-meter zeroing target.
 - b. Identify the location of the shot group on the target.
 - (1) Return to step 4, if two of three rounds do not strike within the strike zone/zero offset.
 - (2) Proceed to step 6 if two of three rounds strike within the strike zone/zero offset.

6. Confirm the zero.

Note: A zero is confirmed when five of six rounds land within the center 4-centimeter center circle or the zero offset circle.

- a. Fire a three round shot group at the 25-meter zeroing target.
 - b. Identify the location of the shot group on the target.
 - (1) Return to step 4, if two of three rounds do not strike within the strike zone/zero offset.
 - (2) Cease fire if two of three rounds strike within the strike zone/zero offset (your zero is confirmed).
7. (M4-series only) Rotate the rear sight elevation knob counterclockwise (down) two clicks to the 300-meter setting.
 8. Record your zero.
 - a. Compute your zero.
 - b. Write your zero on a piece of tape.
 - c. Attach the tape to your weapon.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him/her by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Set either the mechanical zero or the battle sight zero on your weapon.	---	---
2. Established a correct sight picture.	---	---
3. Established a tight shot group.	---	---
4. Adjusted sights (if required) to obtain a zero.	---	---
5. Established a zero.	---	---

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
6. Confirmed the zero.	---	---
7. (M4-series only) Rotated the rear sight elevation knob counterclockwise (down) two clicks to the 300-meter setting.	---	---
8. Recorded your zero.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-22.9 and TM 9-1005-319-10

071-100-0039

Mount an AN/PAQ-4 Series Aiming Light on an M-16 Series Rifle/M4 Carbine

Conditions: Given an M16-series rifle/M4-series carbine, AN/PAQ-4 aiming light, and appropriate mounting bracket (M16A1: Alternate M16 mounting bracket and M16A1 barrel adapter), (M16A2: alternate M16 mounting bracket or the M16A2/M4 mounting bracket), and (M16A4 or M4-Series:M16A2/M4 mounting bracket, standard rail grabber, or insight rail grabber).

Standards: Secure aiming light, AN/PAQ-4, to the M16-series rifle/M4-series carbine so that it is stable and can be used to engage targets well without damage to equipment.

Performance Steps

1. Ensure weapon is clear.
2. Inspect the aiming light and components (figure 071-100-0039-1).

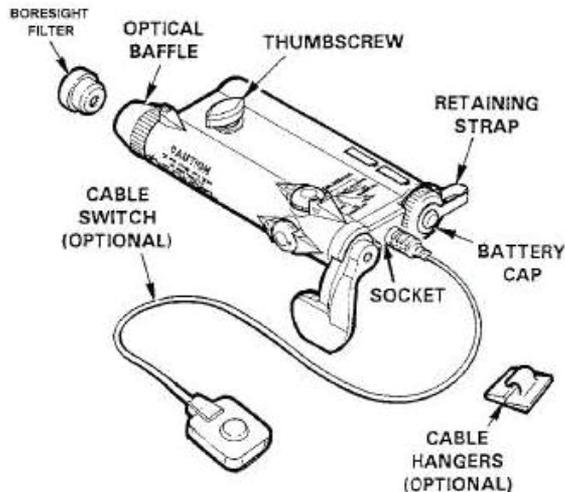


Figure 071-100-0039-1. Aiming light and components

Performance Steps

- a. Inspect the equipment for completeness, a readable data plate, obvious damage, or missing parts.
 - b. Record any deficiencies.
 - c. Turn in to unit maintenance personnel if nonoperational.
3. Install the appropriate AN/PAQ-4 mount on to the weapon.
- a. Determine the mount to use.
 - (1) Use a M16A2/M4 mounting bracket, standard rail grabber, or insight rail grabber on a M16A4 rifle or M4-series carbine.
 - (2) Use a M16A2/M4 mounting bracket or an alternate M16 mounting bracket on an M16A2 rifle.
 - (3) Use an alternate M16 mounting bracket (with M16A1 barrel adapter) on an M16A1 rifle.
 - b. Attach a M16A2/M4 mounting bracket (figure 071-100-0039-2).

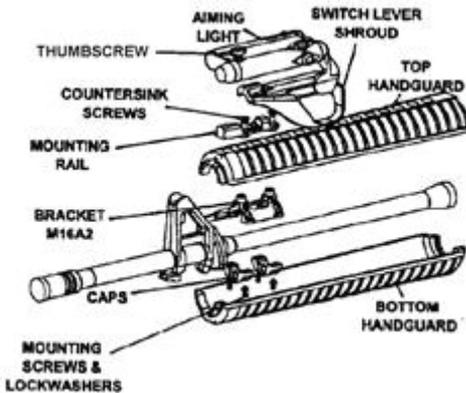


Figure 071-100-0039-2. M16A2/M4 mounting bracket

Note: The M16A2/M4 mounting bracket is attached to the barrel under the handguards. It is installed by the unit armorer.

- (1) Remove the top and bottom handguards.
- (2) Align bracket on barrel (ensure notch on underside of bracket fits over the gas tube and locating arm touches the inside of handguard cap).
- (3) Secure bracket to rifle barrel using caps, lock washers, and mounting screws.
- (4) Hand tighten using a 3-mm allen wrench.
- (5) Ensure mounting rail is not attached to bracket.

CAUTION

The M4A1 top inner heat shield must be removed from the handguard, modified and re-installed in the upper handguard prior to completing bracket installation. See TM for modification instructions.

- (6) Reinstall the top and bottom handguards.

Performance Steps

- (7) Attach the mounting rail to the mounting bracket.
- (8) Hand tighten using a 3-mm allen wrench.

c. Attach a M16A4/M4 standard rail grabber or insight rail grabber (figure 071-100-0039-3).

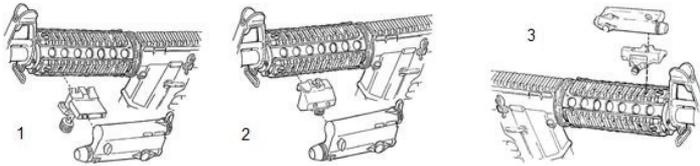


Figure 071-100-0039-3. M16A4/M4 standard rail grabber or insight rail grabber

- (1) Loosen the clamping knob.
- (2) Position the rail grabber on the rail—left side (standard or insight) or top (insight only).
- (3) Tighten (hand tight) the clamping knob until it clicks once (standard) or twice.

Note: The AN/PAQ-4B/C will not retain zero if the rail grabber extends beyond the end of the integrated rail when mounted.

d. Attach an alternate M16 mounting bracket (figure 071-100-0039-4).

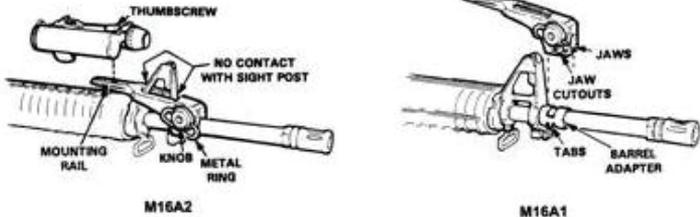


Figure 071-100-0039-4. Alternate M16 mounting bracket

- (1) Attach the M16A1 barrel adapter (M16A1 only).
 - (2) Loosen the bracket knob.
 - (3) Position the bracket over the front sight post and around the barrel.
 - (4) Tighten (hand tight) the bracket knob.
 - (5) Fold down metal ring.
4. Install the AN/PAQ-4 aiming light onto the mount.
- a. Place the switch lever shroud over the mounting rail if using the M16A2/M4 mounting bracket (figure 071-100-0039-5).

Performance Steps

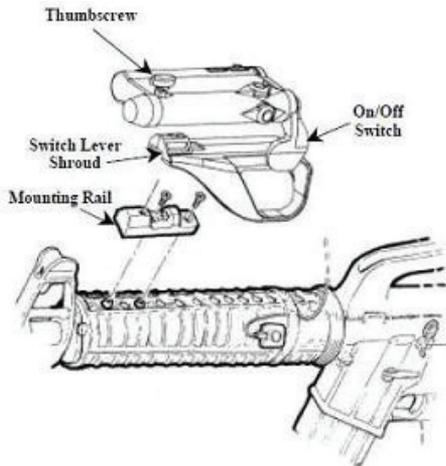


Figure 071-100-0039-5. M16A2/M4 mounting bracket

- b. Rotate the aiming light switch to 'OFF'.
 - c. Position the aiming light onto the mounting rail.
 - d. Secure aiming light to mount with thumbscrew (hand tight).
5. Install the remote switch using cable hangers (optional).

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Ensured weapon was cleared.	---	---
2. Inspected the aiming light and components.	---	---
3. Installed the appropriate AN/PAQ-4 mount.	---	---
4. Installed the AN/PAQ-4 aiming light onto the mount.	---	---
5. Installed the remote switch using cable hangers (optional).	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-22.9 and TM 11-5855-301-12&P

071-100-0042

Zero an AN/PAQ-4-Series Aiming Light to an M16-Series Rifle/M4 Carbine

Conditions: Given an AN/PAQ-4-series aiming light mounted on M16-series rifle/M4-series carbine, 18 rounds of 5.56-mm ammunition, a target (300-meter zero target preferred) at 25 meters, night vision goggles (NVG), sandbags for support, and a requirement to zero the rifle.

Standards: Fire the weapon and adjust the AN/PAQ-4 so that five out of six rounds strike within the 4-centimeter designated strike zone, using 18 rounds or less. Bullets that break the line of the 4-centimeter circle are accepted.

Performance Steps

1. Boresight the weapon (optional).

Note: Identify the need to boresight the aiming light to the weapon. Boresighting saves time and ammunition when conducting a 25-meter live fire zero; however, it is not a requirement.

2. Prepare the zeroing target.
 - a. Select an appropriate zero target (M16A2 25-meter target for a 300-meter zero is preferred).
 - b. Cut out the 4-centimeter center mass aiming circle/square from the target (optional).

Note: This allows for easier sighting of the beam as the beam will appear dimmer when it passes through the hole.

- c. Mark the 25-meter zero offset on the target. (Based on weapon type and mounting location [table 071-100-00-42-1].)
- c. Mark the 25-meter zero offset on the target. (Based on weapon type and mounting location [table 071-100-00-42-1].)

Table 071-100-00-42-1. AN/PAQ-4 25-Meter Zero Offsets

AN/PAQ-4 25 Meter Zero Offsets		
Weapon Mount Location	Left / Right	Up / Down
M16A1/A2 Alternate Mount Front Sight Post	1.5 cm Right	0.5 cm Up
M16A2/M16A4/M4 M16A2/M4 bracket Handguard Top	1.5 cm Right	0.5 cm Up
M16A4/M4 Picatinny Rail Grabber Handguard Top	4.9 cm Right	6.1 cm Up
M16A4/M4 (spacer) Picatinny Rail Grabber Handguard Left Side	6.5 cm Right	8.1 Up

Note. Offsets as per FM 3-22.9 and/or TM 11-5855-301-12&P.

- d. Draw 4-centimeter strike zone centered on the offset point.
- e. Attach the target to a flat surface at a distance of 25 meters.

Performance Steps

3. Prepare the sight.

Note: The AN/PAQ-4 is a laser and, as such, you must be aware of the dangers and safety procedures for lasers. Although this laser is eye-safe, it is a safe practice to treat all lasers as not eye-safe.

DANGER

Do not stare into the IR laser beam with the naked eye or through binoculars or telescopes.

DANGER

Do not point the IR laser beam at mirror-like surfaces or other individuals' eyes.

DANGER

The 3x extenders magnify the laser aiming light. When using the 3x extenders, the AN/PAQ-4B/C is not considered eye-safe at any distance.

CAUTION

Do not store the AN/PAQ-4B/C with the batteries installed.

- a. Place the AN/PAQ-4 into operation by turning the switch to ON.
 - b. Attach the target to a flat surface at a distance of 25 meters.
 - c. Set the aiming light to the neutral position (skip if AN/PAQ-4 was boresighted).
 - (1) Turn each adjuster CW to the end of travel.
 - (2) Rotate each adjuster back (counterclockwise) three turns and align the white dot with the line on the flange (AN/PAQ-4B) or with the aperture in the cover (AN/PAQ-4C).
4. Establish a good zero firing position and sight picture.
- a. Assume a prone supported firing position.
 - b. Employ night vision goggles (NVG).
- Note:* You must use NVG to see the infrared aiming light.
- c. Identify the aiming point on 25-meter zero target.
 - d. Aim the AN/PAQ-4 aiming light at the target aiming point by aligning the beam to the aiming point (if using a cutout aiming point you will notice the beam appearing dimmer).
5. Establish a zero.
- a. Fire a three-round shot group at the target.

Note: After the first shot group is fired, the mounting screws and knobs may need retightened to ensure the sight is well seated.

Performance Steps

b. Implement corrections to the fundamentals of marksmanship, as needed, to ensure a tight shot group.

Note: A tight shot group is two of three consecutive rounds within a 2-centimeter or less circle.

c. Identify the location of the shot group on the target.

(1) Proceed to step 6, adjust the AN/PAQ-4 to obtain a zero if two of three rounds do not strike within the 4-centimeter strike zone (zero offset).

(2) Proceed to step 7, confirm zero if two of three rounds strike within the 4-centimeter strike zone (zero offset).

6. Adjust the AN/PAQ-4 to obtain a zero.

a. Determine the necessary sight adjustments by identifying the center of the last fired three-round shot group and identifying the adjustment to move this point to the center of the strike zone (zero offset).

Note: One click moves the strike of the bullet one square on the standard 300-meter zero targets. At 25-meter each click moves the shot group 1 centimeter.

b. Turn the adjuster knobs to move the next shot group to the center of the zero offset strike zone.

Note: Movement of the adjuster produces an audible and tactile click. The arrow on either side of the adjuster knob indicates the direction of shot group movement.

c. Return to step 5, establish a zero.

7. Confirm the zero.

a. Fire a three-round shot group at the target.

(1) Return to step 6, adjust the AN/PAQ-4 to obtain a zero, if two of three rounds do not strike within the 4-centimeter strike zone (zero offset).

(2) Cease fire, zero is confirmed, if two of three rounds strike within the 4-centimeter strike zone (zero offset).

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Boresighted the weapon (optional).	---	---
2. Prepared the zeroing target.	---	---
3. Prepared the sight.	---	---
4. Established a good zero firing position and sight picture.	---	---

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
5. Established a zero.	---	---
6. Adjusted the AN/PAQ-4 to obtain a zero.	---	---
7. Confirmed the zero.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-22.9 and TM 11-5855-301-12&P

071-100-0040

Dismount an AN/PAQ-4 Series Aiming Light on an M-16 Series Rifle/M4 Carbine

Conditions: Given an M16-series rifle/M4-series carbine with a mounted AN/PAQ-4-series aiming light, an AN/PAQ-4 aiming light carrying case, and a requirement to remove the AN/PAQ-4 from the weapon.

Standards: Remove the AN/PAQ-4 aiming light, from the weapon without damage to the weapon, mounting bracket, or aiming light. Inspect and stow the AN/PAQ-4 well in the carrying case.

Performance Steps

1. Ensure that the weapon is clear.
2. Remove (if installed) the remote switch and cable hangers.
3. Remove the AN/PAQ-4 aiming light from the mount.
 - a. Loosen thumbscrew on the aiming light.
 - b. Remove the aiming light from the mount.
 - c. Remove the switch lever shroud over the mounting rail (M16A2/M4 mounting bracket only).
4. Remove the AN/PAQ-4 mount from the weapon.

Note: There are three types of mounts—the M16A2/M4 mounting bracket, the rail grabber (standard or insight), and the alternate M16 mounting bracket.

- a. Remove the M16A2/M4 mounting bracket.

Note: The M16A2/M4 mounting bracket is attached to the barrel under the handguards. It is only uninstalled by a unit armorer.

- (1) Remove the mounting rail using a 3-millimeter allen wrench.
- (2) Remove the top and bottom handguards.
- (3) Remove bracket from rifle barrel using a 3-millimeter allen wrench.
- (4) Reattached mounting rail and all screws, cap, and lock washers.
- (5) Reinstall the top and bottom handguards.

Performance Steps

- b. Remove the rail grabber (standard or insight).
 - (1) Loosen the clamping knob.
 - (2) Remove the rail grabber.
 - (3) Retighten the knob.
- c. Remove the alternate M16 mounting bracket (mounted around the front sight).
 - (1) Loosen the knob.
 - (2) Remove the mount.
 - (3) Retighten the knob.
 - (4) Remove the M16A1 barrel adapter (M16A1 only).
5. Inspect the aiming light and components.
 - a. Inspect, by sight, the equipment for completeness, obvious damage, a readable data plate, or missing parts.
 - b. Record deficiencies.
 - c. Report any deficiencies to unit maintenance, if applicable.
6. Stow aiming light and accessories.
 - a. Ensure the batteries are removed.
 - b. Ensure that the aiming light is in the OFF position.
 - c. Place aiming light and components into carrying bag or carrying case.
 - d. Secure the carrying bag (or carrying case).

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Ensured weapon was cleared.	---	---
2. Removed (if installed) the remote switch and cable hangers.	---	---
3. Removed the aiming light from the mount.	---	---
4. Removed the AN/PAQ-4 mount from the weapon.	---	---
5. Inspected the aiming light and components.	---	---
6. Stowed aiming light and accessories.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-22.9 and TM 11-5855-301-12&P

071-100-0041

Engage Targets with an M16-Series Rifle/M4 Series Carbine Using an AN/PAQ-4-Series Aiming Light

Conditions: Given an M16-series rifle/M4-series carbine with a mounted, zeroed, and operational AN/PAQ-4 aiming light, at least one magazine with ammunition, engage able targets, and a requirement to engage such targets.

Standards: Detect, identify as threat, and determine range to targets in assigned sector of fire; fire the M16-series rifle/M4-series carbine using the AN/PAQ-4 aiming light and appropriate engagement techniques so that each target is hit or suppressed.

Performance Steps

1. Ensure the ON/OFF switch is set to the correct position.
 - a. Activate the AN/PAQ-4 in the #4 ON MOMENTARY position when using the M16A1/A2.
 - b. Activate the AN/PAQ-4 in the #2 ON MOMENTARY position when using the M4.

2. Detect targets.

Note: Detection of targets depends on your position, your skill in scanning, and your ability to observe the area and recognize target indicators. The three methods of search are the self-preservation method, the 50-meter overlapping strip method, and by maintaining observation of the area.

3. Assume an appropriate firing position.

Note: Assuming an appropriate firing position includes selecting the best available cover the situation allows. The firing position selected should protect you from enemy fire and observation, yet allow you to place effective fire on targets in your sector of fire.

4. Determine range to targets.
5. Identify targets by distinguish between threat and non-threat targets.
6. Fire on targets using the AN/PAQ-4.

- a. Use the AN/PAQ-4 by—

- (1) Pressing the ON/OFF switch against the weapon handguard to activate the infrared aiming light (IAL) and project an infrared pulsing spot toward the target.
- (2) Firing the weapon when the IAL is on the desired point of impact.
- (3) Releasing the ON/OFF switch to deactivate the IAL.

- b. Use appropriate aiming and engagement techniques.

Note: Aiming and engagement techniques include combat fire techniques, CBRN firing, night firing, moving targets, and short-range marksmanship techniques.

Performance Steps

c. Fire on the targets until they are destroyed, suppressed, or you receive an order to cease fire.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Ensured the ON/OFF switch was set to the correct position.	---	---
2. Detected targets.	---	---
3. Assumed an appropriate firing position.	---	---
4. Determined range to targets.	---	---
5. Identified targets by distinguishing between threat and non-threat targets.	---	---
6. Fired on targets using the AN/PAQ-4.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-21.75 (FM 21-75) and FM 3-22-9

071-100-0021

Engage Targets with the M16-Series Rifle/M4 Carbine Using an AN/PAS-13-Series Thermal Weapon Sight

Conditions: Given a loaded M16-series rifle/M4-series carbine with a mounted, zeroed and operational AN/PAS-13 series thermal weapon sight (TWS), threat targets, and a requirement to engage such targets.

Standards: Detect and determine range to targets, fire the weapon to engage targets in the assigned sector of fire using appropriate engagement techniques so that each target will be hit or suppressed.

Performance Steps

1. Detect targets.

Note: Detection of targets depends on your position, your skill in scanning, and your ability to observe the area and recognize target indicators.

2. Assume an appropriate firing position.

Performance Steps

Note: Assuming an appropriate firing position includes selecting the best available cover the situation allows. The firing position selected should protect you from enemy fire and observation, yet allow you to place effective fire on targets in your sector of fire.

3. Acquire targets using TWS reticule.

Note: Use the small dots shown in a horizontal row to the right of the reticule center as aiming points for M16-series rifles or M4-series carbine.

- a. Place the target on the horizontal line.
- b. Match its height with one of the vertical lines.

4. Determine range to targets.

5. Identify targets by distinguishing between threat and non-threat targets.

6. Fire on targets using the TWS and appropriate aiming and engagement techniques until they are destroyed or until you receive an order to cease fire.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Detected targets.	---	---
2. Assumed an appropriate firing position.	---	---
3. Acquired targets using TWS reticule.	---	---
4. Determined range to targets.	---	---
5. Identified targets by distinguishing between threat and non-threat.	---	---
6. Fired on target(s) until they were destroyed or until the order to cease fire was received.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-21.75 (FM 21-75), FM 3-22.9,
TM 11-5855-301-12&P, and TM 11-5855-312-10

071-325-4401

Perform Safety Checks on Hand Grenades

Conditions: Given any standard issue U.S. hand grenade, a shipping container, canister, and a load bearing vest (LBV); load bearing equipment

Performance Steps

- a. Inspect the canister for damage.
 - (1) Check to see if the seal on the canister has been tampered with, or is missing.
 - (2) Ensure canister is not dented or punctured.
 - (3) Inform supervisor of any deficiencies found.
- b. Inspect the canister for damage.
 - (1) Check to see if the grenade is upside down inside of the shipping canister.

WARNING

Do not attempt to remove the grenade found upside down in its packing container.

- (a) Replace canister top and tape in place if grenade is found upside down.
- (b) Report deficiencies to supervisor.
- (c) Return canister to ammunition disposal personnel.
- (2) Check to see if the grenade is upside down inside of the shipping canister.

Note: Perform step 2c only if necessary.

- (a) Ensure that safety pin is in place and undamaged.
- (b) Check that the legs of the safety pin have either angular spread or diamond crimp.
- (3) Ensure safety clip (when installed) is in place and undamaged.
- c. Replace missing safety clips.
 - (1) Slide the clip onto the handle.
 - (2) Attach the loop portion of the clip around the fuse.
 - (3) Snap the clip end around the safety lever.
- d. Check the safety pin.
 - (1) Ensure the clip is in the correct position. If not in position, push it into place with care while holding the safety lever down.
 - (2) Ensure the clip is not bent. If it is bent, bend it back in position with care.
- e. Check the safety ring for cracking and reject the grenade with a cracked safety ring.
- f. Check grenades for dirt, wiping dirty or grimy grenades with a cloth.
- g. Turn in defective grenades.

WARNING

Do not attempt to modify a grenade. Do not attempt to defuse a grenade. Do not attempt to 4 a grenade found upside down in its packing container. Do not handle a dud grenade. Do not attach grenades to clothing or equipment by the pull ring.

Performance Steps

3. Inspect the hand grenade.
 - a. Remove the packing material and the hand grenade from the canister.
 - (1) Check for rust on the body or the fuse.
 - (2) Ensure holes are not visible in the body or the fuse.
 - (3) Check hand grenade for cracked body.
 - (4) Place back in canister if any defect(s) are found, if applicable.
 - b. Ensure the safety pin (1) is secured well (figure 071-325-4401-3).

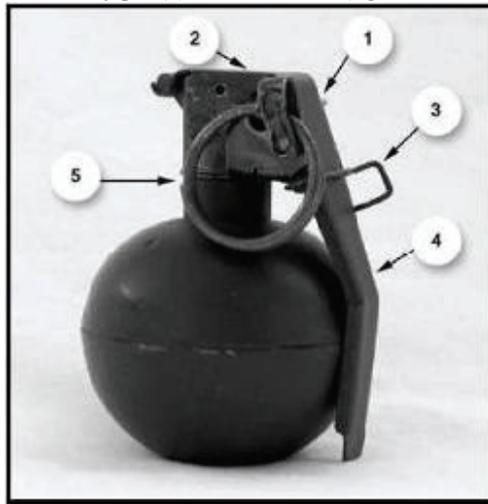


Figure 071-325-4401-3. Grenade components

Note: If not well secured, push it into place while holding the safety lever down with care.

- (1) Slip the safety lever over the strap and push the grenade down until it is well seated against the side of the pouch.
- (2) Ensure the pull ring is pointed downward, wrapping the carrying strap around the fuse, including the safety lever and pull ring.
 - c. Ensure the confidence clip (2) is present and well secured to the pull ring.
 - d. Ensure the safety clip (3) is present and well secured to the safety lever (4).

Note: If not well secured, push it into place while holding the safety lever down with care.

- e. Check the hand grenade fuse assembly (5) for tightness.

WARNING

Never remove the fuse from a live grenade.

- f. Ensure the safety lever (4) is not bent or broken.
- g. Turn in defective hand grenade, if applicable.

Performance Steps

4. Secure the grenade.
 - a. Carry hand grenades using the proper procedures.

WARNING

Never carry the grenades suspended by the safety pull ring or safety lever. Do not attach grenades to clothing or equipment by the pull ring. Do not tape hand grenades to Soldier's gear. Do not attempt to modify a grenade.

- b. Ensure that the grenade is all the way inside the carrying pouch.
 - c. Secure pouch flap.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Inspected hand grenade shipping container, if applicable. <ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Fragmentation grenade.b. Riot control grenade.c. White phosphorus (WP) grenade.d. HC (white) smoke grenade.e. Colored smoke grenade.f. Incendiary grenade.	--	--
2. Inspected the hand grenade canister, if applicable. <ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Checked the fuse was screwed in hard on the body of the grenade.b. Checked the position of the safety clip.c. Checked the safety pin. If positioned by mistake, pushed it into place with care while holding the lever down safe. If bent, bent it back into position with care.	--	--

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
d. Checked the safety ring for cracking and rejected the grenade with a cracked safety ring.		
e. Checked for dirt and wiped the grenade, if dirty.		
f. Turned in defective grenades.		
3. Inspected the hand grenade.	--	--
a. Checked the fuse for tightness.		
b. Slipped the grenade's safety lever over the strap on the side of the ammunition pouch with the pull ring or safety pin pointing downward.		
c. Checked the safety pin. If positioned by mistake, pushed it into place with care while holding the lever down safe. If bent, bent it back into position with care.		
d. Wrapped the carrying strap around the neck of the fuse including the safety lever and the pulled ring, snapped the carrying strap to the carrying sleeve.		
4. Secured the hand grenade.	--	--

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: TM 9-1330-200-12

071-325-4407

Employ Hand Grenades

Conditions: Given a fragmentation, concussion, riot control, smoke, or incendiary grenade with a time-delay fuse; target to engage and load bearing vest (LBV); load bearing equipment (LBE); modular, lightweight, load-bearing, equipment (MOLLE) or interceptor body armor (IBA).

Standards: Select appropriate hand grenade based on type of target. Throw the hand grenade using the proper throwing position and prevent endangering yourself.

Performance Steps

1. Assume proper throwing position (prone, kneeling or standing).
 - a. Ensure proper covered position.
 - b. Determine the distance to the target.
 - c. Align your body with the target.

Performance Steps

2. Grip the hand grenade.

- a. Place the hand grenade in the palm of the throwing hand with the safety lever placed between the first and second joints of the thumb.

Note: For left-handed throwers the grenade is inverted with the top of the fuse facing downwards in the throwing hand.

- b. Keep the pull ring away from the palm of the throwing hand so that the pull ring can be removed without difficulty by the index or middle finger of the free hand.

3. Prepare the hand grenade.

- a. Remove the safety clip.

- (1) Tilt the grenade forward to observe the safety clip.

- (2) Remove the safety clip by sweeping it away from the grenade with the thumb of the opposite hand.

- b. Ready the pull ring.

- (1) Insert the index or middle finger of the nonthrowing hand in the pull ring until it reaches the knuckle of the finger.

- (2) Twist the pull ring toward the body (away from the body for left-handed throwers) to release the pull ring from the confidence clip.

- c. Pull the safety pin.

Note: The index or middle finger of the nonthrowing hand should still be inserted in the pull ring.

- (1) Ensure that you are holding the safety lever down hard.

- (2) Remove the safety clip by sweeping it away from the grenade with the thumb of the opposite hand.

4. Throw the hand grenade.

Note: Soldiers can use five positions to throw grenades—standing, prone-to-standing, kneeling, prone-to-kneeling, and alternate prone. However, if a Soldier can achieve more distance and accuracy using his own personal style, he should be allowed to do so as long as his body is facing sideways and toward the enemy's position, and he throws the grenade overhand.

- a. Observe the target to estimate the distance between the throwing position and the target area.

Note: In observing the target, minimize exposure time to the enemy (no more than 3 seconds).

- b. Grip the hand grenade in the right or left throwing hand.

- c. Look at the target.

- d. Remove the grenade's safety pin.

- e. Cook off the hand grenade (optional).

Note: Cooking off uses enough of the grenade's 4- to 5-second delay (about 2 seconds) to cause the grenade to detonate above ground or soon after impact with the target.

- (1) Remove the grenade's safety pin.

- (2) Release the safety lever.

- (3) Count "One thousand one, one thousand two."

Performance Steps

f. Throw the grenade overhand so that the grenade arcs, landing on or near the target.

Note: To be effective the target must be within the bursting radius of the grenade.

g. Allow the motion of the throwing arm to continue in a natural manner once the grenade is released.

h. Seek cover to avoid being hit by fragments or direct enemy fire.

Note: If no cover is available, drop to the prone position with your protective head gear facing the direction of the grenade's detonation.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Assumed proper throwing position (prone, kneeling, or standing).	---	---
2. Gripped the hand grenade.	---	---
3. Armed the grenade.	---	---
4. Confirmed body target alignment.	---	---
5. Threw the grenade using an overhand movement.	---	---
6. Engaged the target within the effective bursting radius of the grenade.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-23.30 and TM 9-1330-200-12

Subject Area 2: Move

071-326-0501

Move as a Member of a Fire Team

Conditions: You are a member of a dismounted fire team. You are not the fire team leader. Given an individual weapon and individual combat equipment. The fire team is moving tactically.

Standards: Assume your position in the fire team's current formation, maintain proper distance between you and other fire team members, follow the team leader's example and maintain security of your sector.

Performance Steps

Note: The standard fire team is composed of four personnel: fire team leader, automatic rifleman, grenadier, and rifleman. The fire team leader designates positions based on the mission variables.

1. Assume your position in the fire team's current formation.

Note: Specific positions vary based on the type of movement formation selected by the fire team leader.

a. Assume your position within the fire team wedge formation (figure 071-326-0501-1).

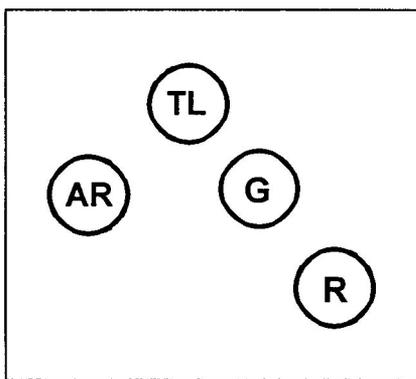


Figure 071-326-0501-1. Fire team wedge

Note: This is the basic fire team formation. It is easy to control, flexible, allows immediate fires in all directions, and offers all-round local security.

b. Assume your position within the fire team modified wedge formation (figure 071-326-0501-2).

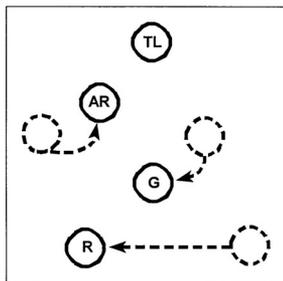


Figure 071-326-0501-2. Modified fire team wedge

Note: The modified wedge is easier to control in reduced visibility or rough terrain than other formations.

Performance Steps

c. Assume your position within the fire team diamond formation (figure 071-326-0501-3).

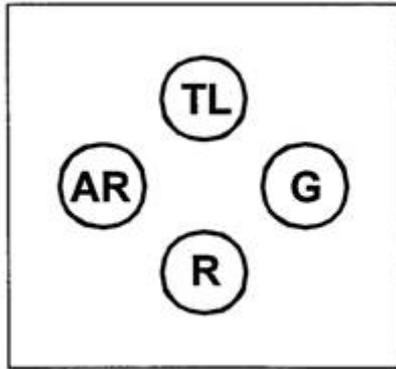


Figure 071-326-0501-3. Fire team diamond

Note: The diamond is a variation of the wedge. It is most often used when the fire team is operating alone or is the lead security element for a column or file.

d. Assume your position within the fire team file formation (figure 071-326-0501-4).

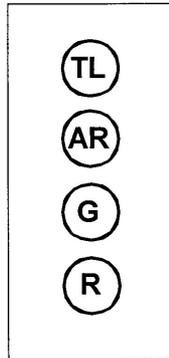


Figure 071-326-0501-4. Fire team file

Note: The fire team uses the file formation when team is not in the diamond, wedge, or modified wedge.

2. Maintain proper distance between you and other fire team members.

Note: The normal distance between Soldiers is 10 meters. When enemy contact is possible, the distance between teams should be 50 meters. In open terrain such as desert, the interval may increase. The distance between individuals is determined by how much command and control the team leader can still exercise over his team members.

3. Maintain visual contact with your team leader.

Note: When the fire team leader moves left, you move to the left. When the fire team leader gets down, you get down.

Performance Steps

Note: When the fire team leader moves left, you move to the left. When the fire team leader gets down, you get down.

4. Follow the fire team leader's example.
5. Adjust your position within the fire team as designated by the fire team leader.
6. Maintain security of your sector (to the flanks, front, or rear of the team).

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Assumed position in the fire team's current formation.	---	---
2. Maintained proper distance from other fire team members.	---	---
3. Maintained visual contact with the team leader.	---	---
4. Followed the fire team leader's example..	---	---
5. Changed position within the fire team as designated by the team leader.	---	---
6. Maintained security of assigned sector	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-21.8 (FM 7-8) and FM 3-21.75 (FM 21-75)

071-326-0541

Perform Exterior Movement Techniques during an Urban Operation

Conditions: Given an individual weapon with ammunition, individual protective equipment, and a requirement to move in urban terrain with the enemy's location and strength uncertain.

Standards: Move within an urban area using proper urban movement techniques while minimizing exposure to enemy fire.

Performance Steps

Note: Outdoor movement in urban terrain is best conducted as part of a buddy team, a fire team, or a squad. This ensures at least one Soldier is providing overwatch of another Soldier's movement, either from a stationary position or as both are moving, and prevents individual Soldiers from being isolated. This allows for a rapid engagement of any enemy that either exposes themselves (such as by leaning out of or by silhouetting themselves in a window) or by firing.

1. Assume proper throwing position (prone, kneeling or standing).

Note: Open areas include parks, plazas and large intersections, as well as streets, open air buildings, and large rooms that are much exposed to exterior view. It is ideal to avoid these open areas as they are potential killing zones for the enemy, above all crew-served weapons and snipers; however, operations often require movement across these areas. Cross these areas using the same basic techniques used to cross any danger area.

- a. Identify the far side position before moving with a clear understanding of how it will be occupied or cleared.
- b. Conduct a visual reconnaissance of all the dimensions of urban terrain to identify probable threat positions.
- c. Select a position on the far side that provides the best available cover.
- d. Select the best route to the far side position that minimizes the time exposed.

Note: Obscurants, such as smoke, are an option to conceal movement. However, thermal sighting systems can see through smoke, and when smoke is thrown in an open area. The enemy may fire into the smoke cloud in anticipation of movement through or behind the smoke.

- e. Cross fast along the selected route to the selected position.

2. Move parallel to buildings.

Note: Moving parallel to buildings is the movement most associated with moving down a roadway, but also includes movement in plazas or other open areas that are between buildings. During contact, utilize smoke, suppressive fires, and individual movement techniques. In moving to adjacent buildings, team members should keep a distance of 3 to 5 meters between themselves, leapfrogging along each side of the street and from cover to cover.

- a. Soldier moves parallel to the side of a building.
- b. Use existing cover and concealment.
- c. Stay in the shadows.
- d. Present a low silhouette.
- e. Use proper techniques to cross door and window openings.
- f. Move fast to the next position.

3. Move past building opening (windows and doors).

Note: The most common mistakes at windows are exposing the head in a first-floor window and not being aware of basement windows.

- a. Move past an above-knee window.
 - (1) Stay near the side of the building.
 - (2) Stay below the level of the window.

Performance Steps

- (3) Avoid silhouetting self in window (figure 071-326-0541-1).



Figure 071-326-0541-1. Avoid silhouetting self in window

- b. Move past a below-knee window (basement).

(1) Stay near the side of the building.

(2) Step or jump past the window without exposing legs (figure 071-326-0541-2).



Figure 071-326-0541-2. Step or jump past the window without exposing legs

- c. Move past a full-height window (store type) or open door.

Note: A Soldier should not just walk past an adjacent full height window, as he/she presents a good target to an enemy inside the building.

(1) Identify a position on the far side of the window.

(2) Determine which technique to use to cross the opening.

(a) Run across the opening to the far side.

(b) Arc around the opening while covering the opening with your weapon while moving.

(3) Move fast to the far side position.

Performance Steps

4. Move around corners.

Note: Before moving around a corner, the Soldier must first observe around the corner. The most common two mistakes Soldiers make at corners are exposing their head and upper body where it is expected and flagging their weapon.

a. Move around a corner by first observing around the corner.

(1) Lie flat on the ground, weapon at your side, ensuring that your weapon is not forward of the corner.

Note: Do not show your head below at the height an enemy would expect to see it.

(2) Expose your head (with helmet) only enough to observe around the corner (figure 071-326-0541-3).



Figure 071-326-0541-3. Expose your head (with helmet) only enough to observe around the corner

Note: When speed is required the pie-ing method is applied.

(3) Continue movement around the corner, if clear.

b. Move around a corner by first observing around the corner.

(1) Aim the weapon beyond the corner (without flagging) into the direction of travel.

(2) Side-step around the corner in a semi-circular fashion with the muzzle as the pivot point (figure 071-326-0541-4).

(3) Continue movement around the corner, if clear.



Figure 071-326-0541-4. Side-step around the corner in a semi-circular fashion with the muzzle as the pivot point

Performance Steps

5. Cross a wall.

- a. Reconnoiter the other side.

Note: The far side must be quite safe from enemy fire, as once across the wall the Soldier is altogether exposed. In addition, the immediate opposite side of the wall must be safe for landing for long drops and debris can cause injury.

- b. Identify a far side position.

Note: Once across the wall, you will then move to this far side position. This position may be at the wall, near the wall, or away from the wall.

- c. Crouch near the wall.

d. Hold your weapon with one hand while grabbing the top of the wall with the other hand.

e. Pull with the hand on the wall while at the same time swinging both legs over the wall, one right after the other.

f. Roll your whole body fast over the wall while keeping a low silhouette (figure 071-326-0541-5).



Figure 071-326-0541-5. Roll your whole body fast over the wall while keeping a low silhouette

Note: Speed of movement and a low silhouette deny the enemy a good target.

- g. Move to your next position once on the far side.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* At the test site, provide all materials and equipment given in the task condition statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier to move as a designated member of an assault element in urban terrain. The enemy strength and location are unknown.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Moved across a street or open area.	---	---
2. Moved parallel to a building.	---	---

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
3. Moved passed a building opening (window or open door).	---	---
4. Moved around a corner.	---	---
5. Crossed a wall.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-06 and FM 3-21.75 (FM 21-75)

071-329-1000

Identify Topographic Symbols on a Military Map

Conditions: Given a 1:50,000-scale military map and a requirement to identify topographic symbols on the map.

Standards: Identify topographic symbols, colors, and marginal information on a military map.

Performance Steps

- Identify the six basic colors on a military map (figure 071-329-1000-1).

COLORS	SYMBOLS
Black	Cultural (man-made) features other than roads
Blue	Water
Brown	All relief features - contour lines on old maps - cultivated land on red-light readable maps
Green	Vegetation
Red	Major roads, built-up areas, special features on old maps
Red-brown	All relief features and main roads on red-light readable maps

Figure 071-329-1000-1. Colors

- Identify the features that the color black represents.

Note: Indicates cultural (manmade) features such as buildings and roads, surveyed spot elevations, and all labels.

- Identify the features that the color blue represents.

Note: Indicates hydrography or water features such as lakes, swamps, rivers, and drainage.

- Identify the features that the color green represents.

Note: Indicates vegetation with military significance such as woods, orchards, and vineyards.

- Identify the features that the color brown represents.

Note: Brown identifies all relief features and elevation such as contours on older edition maps and cultivated land on red light readable maps.

Performance Steps

- e. Identify the features that the color red represents.

Note: Classifies cultural features, such as populated areas, main roads, and boundaries on older maps.

- f. Identify the features that the color red-brown represents.

Note: These colors are combined to identify cultural features, all relief features, non-surveyed spot elevations, and elevation such as contour lines on red light readable maps.

- g. Identify all other features and the colors they represent, if applicable.

Note: Other colors may be used to show special information. These are indicated in the marginal information as a rule.

2. Identify the symbols on the map (figure 071-329-1000-2).

FEATURES	COLORS	DESCRIPTION
Drainage	Blue	These symbols include lakes, streams, rivers, marshes, swamps, and coastal waters.
Relief	Brown	These features are normally shown by contour lines, intermediate contour lines, and form lines. In addition to contour lines, there are relief symbols to show cuts, levees, sand, sand dunes, ice fields, strip mines, and glaciers.
Vegetation	Green	These symbols include woods, scrub, orchards, vineyards, tropical grass, mangrove and marshy areas, or tundra.
Roads	Red, Black, or Red-brown	These symbols show hard-surface, heavy-duty roads; hard surface, medium-duty roads; improved light-duty roads; unimproved dirt roads; and trails. On foreign road maps, symbols may differ slightly; check the map legend for proper identification of roads.
Railroads	Black	These symbols show single-track railroads in operation; single-track railroads not in operation; double- or multiple-track railroads.
Buildings	Black, Yellow, Red, or Pink	These symbols show built-up areas, schools, churches, ruins, lighthouses, windmills, and cemeteries.

Figure 071-329-1000-2. Symbols

- a. Use the legend, which should identify most of the symbols used on the map.

- b. Identify each object by its shape on the map.

Note: For example, a black, solid square represents a building or a house; a round or irregular blue item is a lake or pond.

- c. Use logic and color to identify each map feature.

Note: For example, blue represents water. If you see a symbol that is blue and has clumps of grass, this would be a swamp.

3. Identify the marginal information (figure 071-329-1000-3).

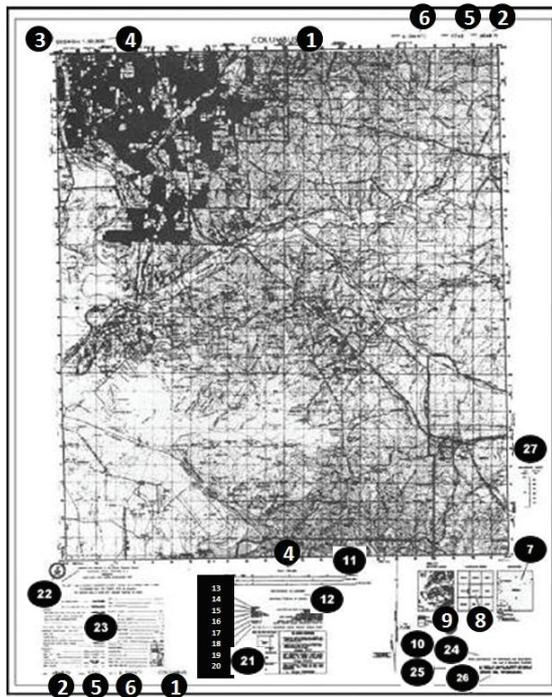


Figure 071-329-1000-3. Topographical map

- a. Identify the sheet name (1).
- b. Identify the sheet number (2).
- c. Identify the series name (3).
- d. Identify the scale (4).
- e. Identify the series number (5).
- f. Identify the edition number (6).
- g. Identify the index to boundaries (7).
- h. Identify the adjoining sheets diagram (8).
- i. Identify the elevation guide (9).
- j. Identify the declination diagram (10).
- k. Identify the bar scales (11).
- l. Identify the contour interval note (12).
- m. Identify the spheroid note (13).
- n. Identify the grid note (14).
- o. Identify the projection note (15).
- p. Identify the vertical datum note (16).
- q. Identify the horizontal datum note (17).
- r. Identify the control note (18).
- s. Identify the preparation note (19).

Performance Steps

- t. Identify the printing note (20).
- u. Identify the grid reference box (21).
- v. Identify the unit imprint and symbol (22).
- w. Identify the legend (23).

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him/her by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Identified the six basic colors on a military map.	---	---
2. Identified the symbols on a military map.	---	---
3. Identified the marginal information on a military map.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-25.26

071-329-1001

Identify Terrain Features on a Map

Conditions: Given a 1:50,000-scale military map and a requirement to identify terrain features on the map.

Standards: Identify the five major and the three minor terrain features on a military map.

Performance Steps

1. Detect targets.

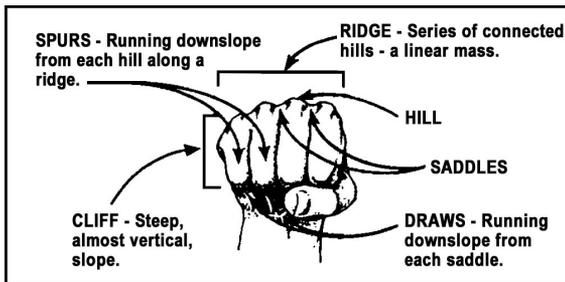
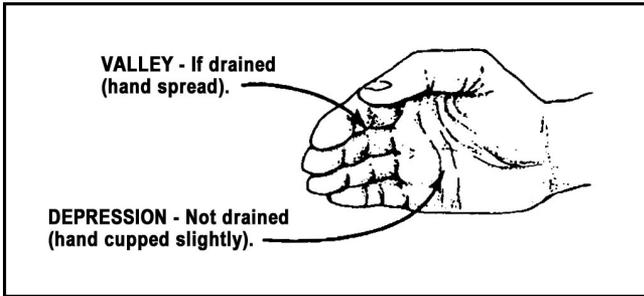


Figure 071-329-1001-1. Using fist to explain terrain features



071-329-1001-2. Using hand to explain terrain features

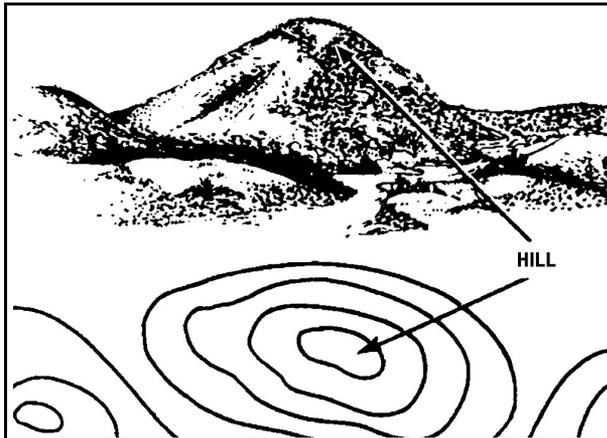


Figure 071-329-1001-3. A hill

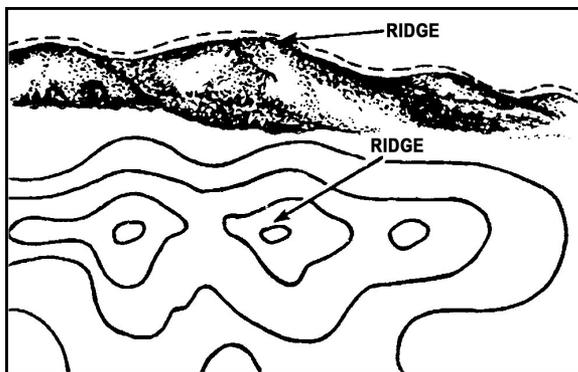


Figure 071-329-1001-4. A Ridge

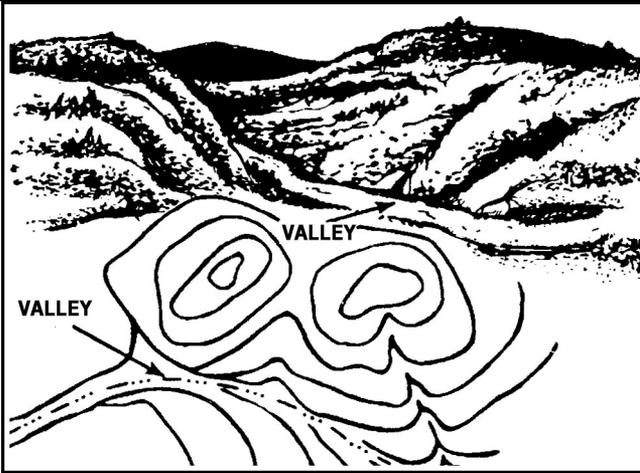


Figure 071-329-1001-5. A valley

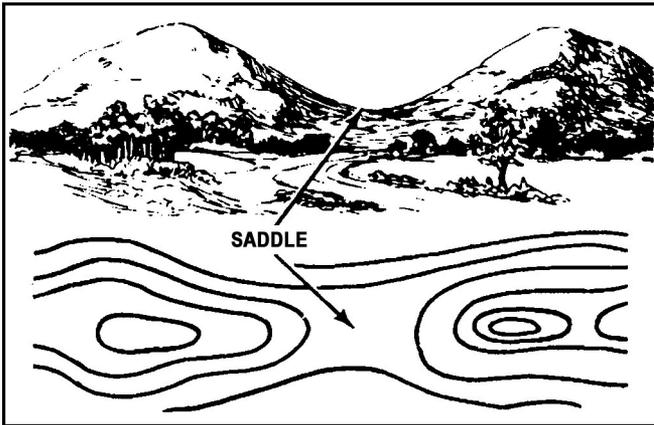


Figure 071-329-1001-6. A saddle

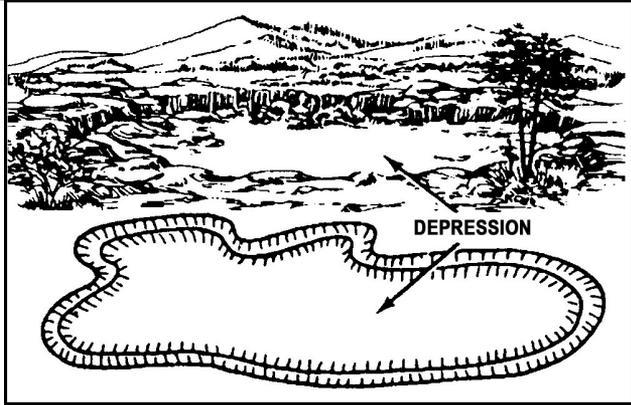


Figure 071-329-1001-7. A depression

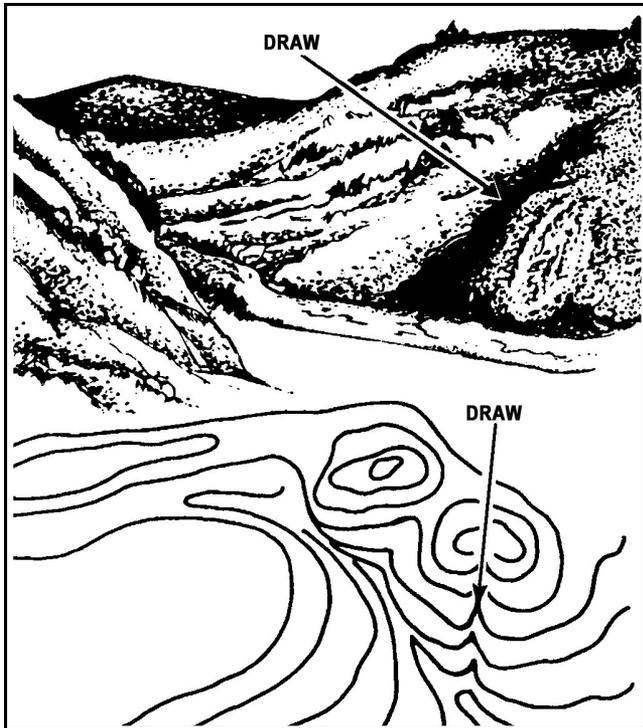


Figure 071-329-1001-8. A draw

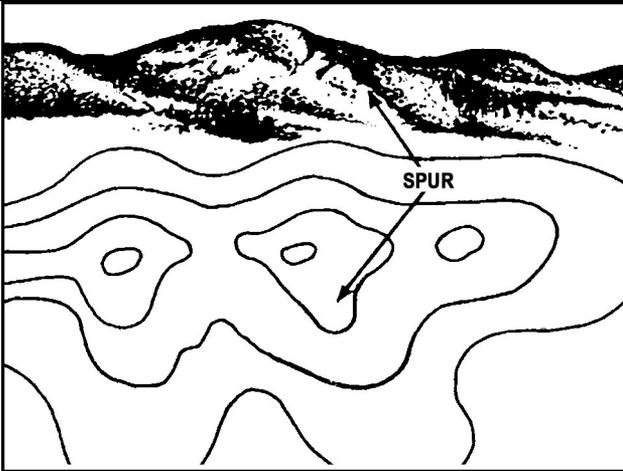


Figure 071-329-1001-9. A spur

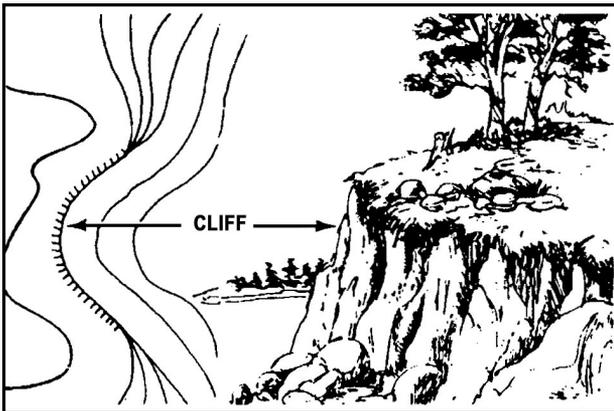


Figure 071-329-1001-10. A cliff

Table 071-329-1001-1

FEATURE	CHARACTERISTICS	MAP SYMBOL
Hill Figure 3 Major	A point or small area of high ground from which the ground slopes down in all directions.	Contour lines forming concentric circles.
Ridge Figure 4 Major	A line of high ground with height variations along its crest.	Contour lines forming a U or V; closed end points away from high ground.
Valley Figure 5 Major	Reasonably level ground bordered on the sides by higher ground. Generally has maneuver room. Contains a stream.	Contour lines form U. Lines tend to parallel stream before crossing. Contour line crossing a stream always points upstream.
Saddle Figure 6 Major	A dip/low point along a ridge crest; either lower ground between two hill tops or a break in the level crest.	A saddle is normally represented as an hourglass.
Depression Figure 7 Major	Low point or hole in the ground with higher ground on sides.	Closed contour lines that have tick marks pointing toward low ground.
Draw Figure 8 Minor	Like a valley, but normally has less developed stream course. No level ground and little or no maneuver room. Ground slopes upward on the sides and toward the head of the draw.	Contour lines are V-shaped with the point of the V toward the head of the draw (high ground).
Spur Figure 9 Minor	Short, continuously sloping line of higher ground jutting out the side of a ridge. Often formed by parallel streams cutting draws down a ridge.	Contour lines depict a spur with the U or V pointing away from high ground.
Cliff Figure 10 Minor	A vertical or near vertical slope.	Contour lines are close together or a ticked or "carrying" contour line (ticks point to lower ground).

Performance Steps

- a. Identify a hill (figure 071-329-1001-11).

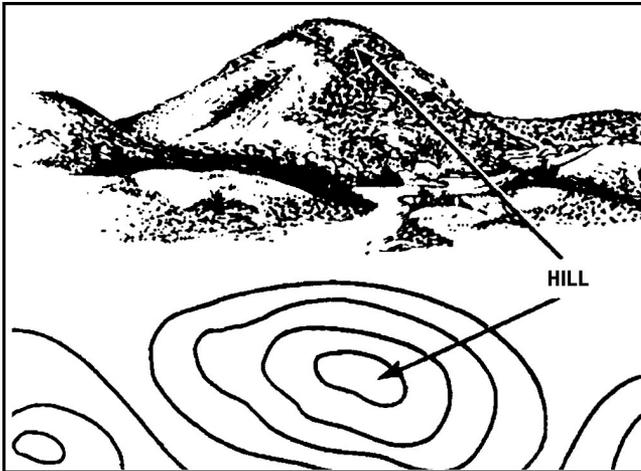


Figure 071-329-1001-11. Hill

- b. Identify a saddle (figure 071-329-1001-12).

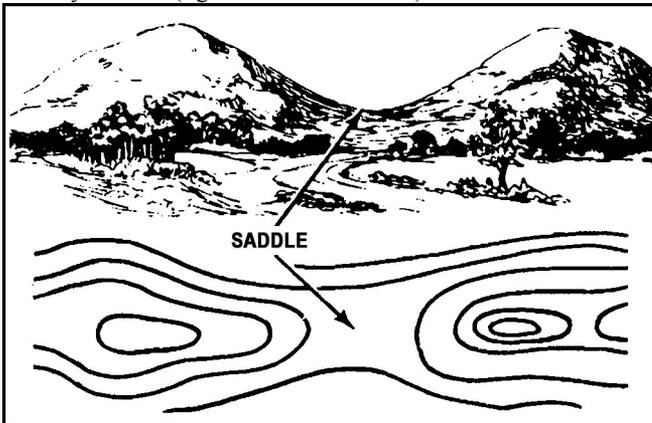


Figure 071-329-1001-12. Saddle

Performance Steps

- c. Identify a valley (figure 071-329-1001-13).

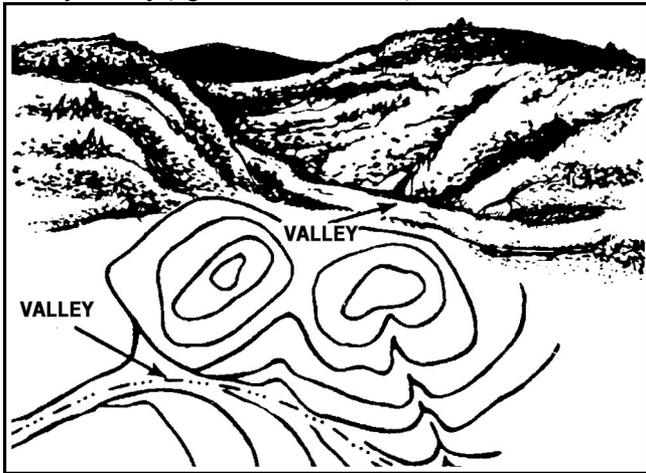


Figure 071-329-1001-13. Valley

- d. Identify a ridge (figure 071-329-1001-14).

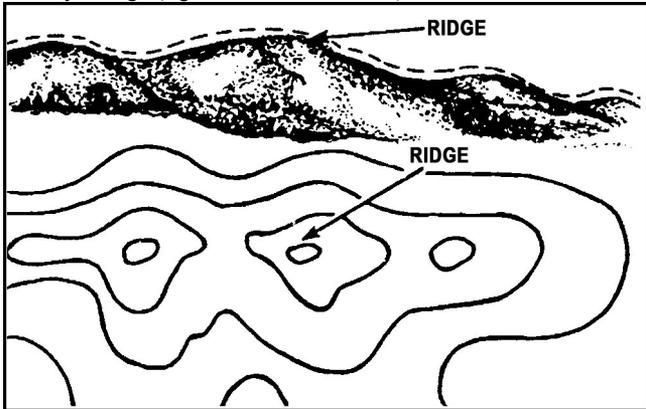


Figure 071-329-1001-14. Ridge

Performance Steps

- e. Identify a depression (figure 071-329-1001-15).

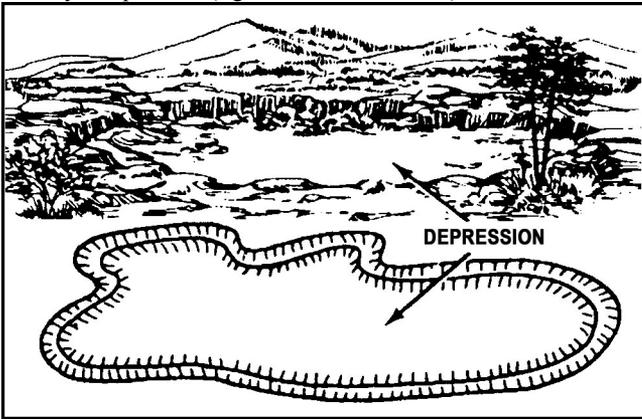


Figure 071-329-1001-15. Depression

2. Identify three minor terrain features.

- a. Identify a draw (figure 071-329-1001-16).

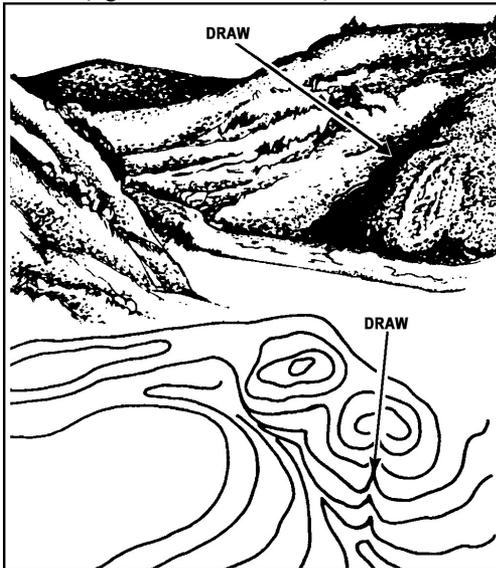


Figure 071-329-1001-16. Draw

- b. Identify a spur (figure 071-329-1001-17).

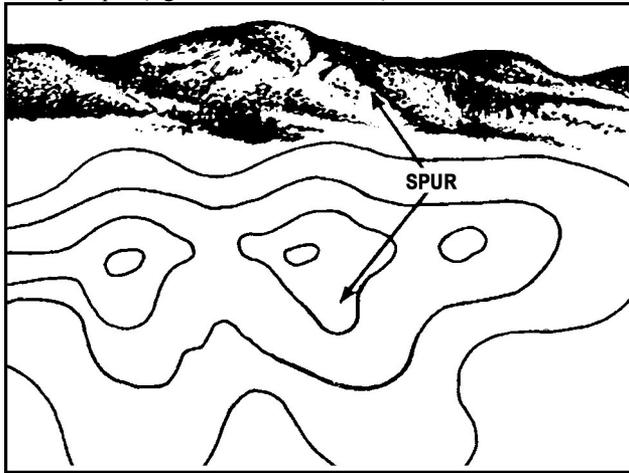


Figure 071-329-1001-17. Spur

- c. Identify a cliff (figure 071-329-1001-18).

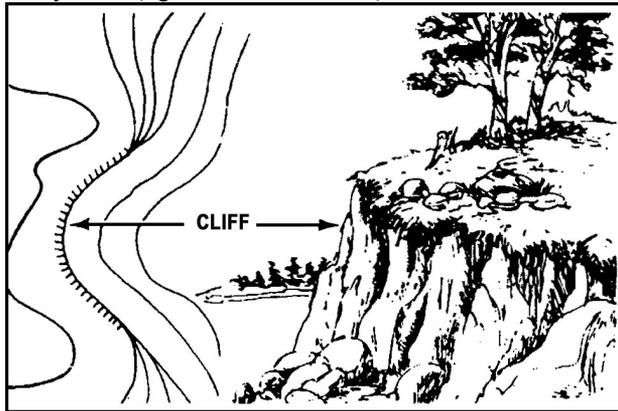


Figure 071-329-1001-18. Cliff

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him/her by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Identified the five major terrain features.	---	---
2. Identified the three minor terrain features.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-25.26

071-329-1008

Measure Distance on a Map

Conditions: Given a 1:50,000-scale military map, a strip of paper with a straight edge, and a pencil.

Standards: Determine the straight-line distance between two points in meters, with no more than 5-percent error and the road (curved line) distance between two points in meters, with no more than 10-percent error.

Performance Steps

1. Identify the scale of the map.
2. Convert a straight-line map distance to miles, meters, or yards using the map's bar scale for map distances equal to or less than 1 inch (figure 071-329-1008-1).

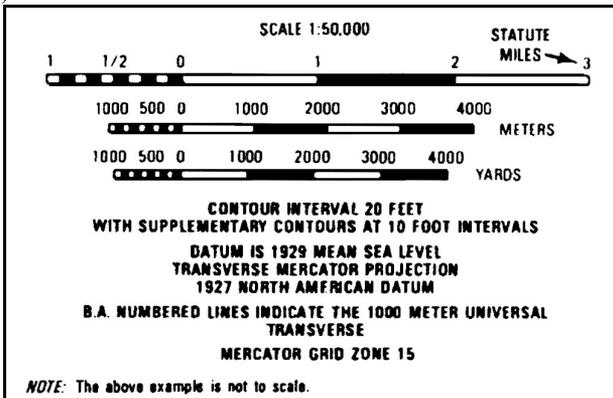


Figure 071-329-1008-1. Map bar scales

- a. Align the edge of a strip of paper with the beginning and ending points on the map.
- b. Mark on the straight edge of the paper the beginning and ending points (figure 071-329-1008-2).

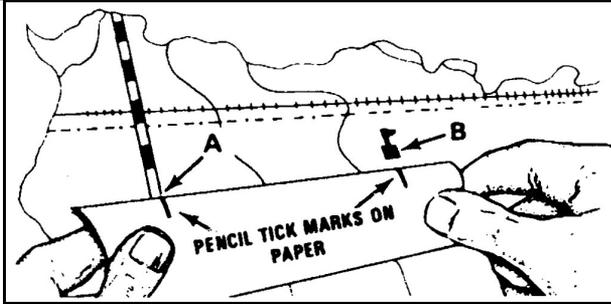


Figure 071-329-1008-2. Beginning and ending points

- c. Align the marks on the paper with the appropriate bar scale (figure 071-329-1008-3).

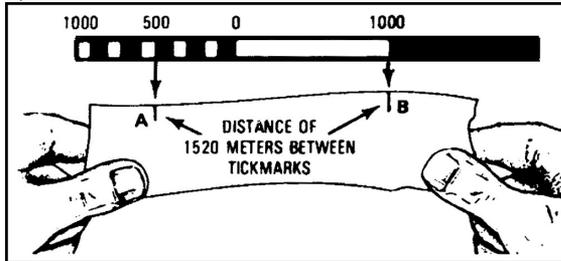


Figure 071-329-1008-3. Distance between beginning and ending points

- d. Determine the distance on the scale that compares to the distance on the paper.
3. Convert a straight-line map distance to miles, meters, or yards using the map's bar scale for map distances greater than 1 inch.
 - a. Line up the straight edge of a strip of paper with the beginning and ending points on the map.
 - b. Mark the beginning and ending points on the straight edge of the paper (figure 071-329-1008-4).

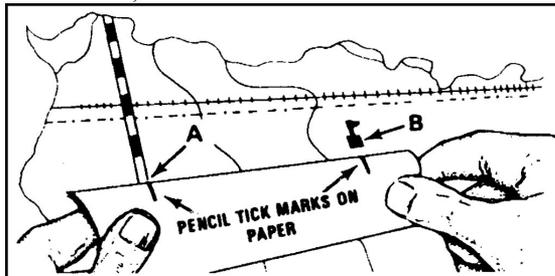


Figure 071-329-1008-4. Beginning and ending points

Performance Steps

- c. Place the starting point on the paper under the zero on the bar scale.
- d. Measure off 4,000 meters and place a new tick mark on the paper.
- e. Place the new tick mark under the zero on the bar scale.
- f. Determine if the end point falls within the bar scale.
 - (1) Record the value on the scale of the end-point if the end-point fits on the scale.
 - (2) Add 4,000 meters to this value (a) to get the total difference.
- g. Determine if the end-point falls outside the bar scale.
 - (1) Repeat steps 3d and 3e until the end-point falls within the bar.
 - (2) Add 4,000 meters to the value you derived in step 3f(1) for each time you performed step 3d to achieve the total distance.
4. Convert a road map distance to miles, meters, or yards using the map's bar scale for distances equal to or less than 1 inch.
 - a. Align the edge of a strip of paper with the beginning point and the point where the road makes the first curve on the map.
 - b. Mark on the straight edge of the paper the beginning and curve points.
 - c. Repeat steps 4a and b, each time using the point of the curve as the next beginning point, until you reach the end-point.
 - d. Align the marks on the paper with the appropriate bar scale (figure 071-329-1008-5).

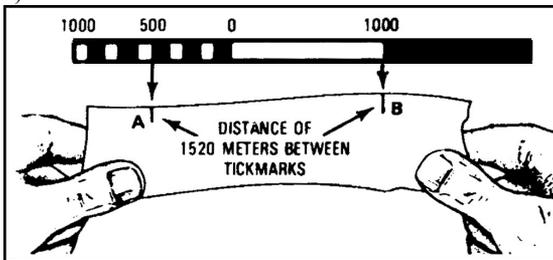


Figure 071-329-1008-5. Distance between beginning and ending points

- e. Determine the distance on the scale that compares to the distance on the paper.
5. Convert a road map distance to miles, meters or yards using the map's bar scale for distances greater than 1 inch.
 - a. Align the edge of a strip of paper with the beginning point and the point where the road makes the first curve on the map.
 - b. Mark on the straight edge of the paper the beginning and curve points.
 - c. Repeat steps 5a and b, each time using the point of the curve as the next beginning point, until you reach the end-point.
 - d. Place the starting point on the paper under the zero on the bar scale.
 - e. Measure off 4,000 meters and place a new tick mark on the paper.
 - f. Place the new tick mark under the zero on the bar scale.

Performance Steps

- g. Determine if the end-point falls within the bar scale.
 - (1) Record the value on the scale of the end-point if the end-point fits on the scale.
 - (2) Add 4,000 meters to this value (a) to get the total difference.
- h. Determine if the end-point falls outside the bar.
 - (1) Repeat steps 5d and 5e until the end-point falls within the bar.
 - (2) Add 4,000 meters to the value you derived in step 5g(1) for each time you performed step 5d to achieve the total distance.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Identified the scale of the map.	---	---
2. Converted a straight-line map distance to miles, meters, or yards using the map's bar scale for map distances equal to or less than 1 inch.	---	---
3. Converted a straight-line map distance to miles, meters, or yards using the map's bar scale for map distances greater than 1 inch.	---	---
4. Converted a road map distance to miles, meters, or yards using the map's bar scale for distances equal to or less than 1 inch.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-25.26

071-329-1002

Determine the Grid Coordinates of a Point on a Military Map

Conditions: Given a 1:50,000-scale military map, a 1:50,000 grid coordinate scale, a pencil, paper, and a point on the map with a requirement to determine the grid coordinates.

Standards: Determine the coordinates of the grid square, determine coordinates using coordinate scale and without use of coordinate scale. Add the two-letter 100,000 meter square identifier to determine grid coordinate.

Performance Steps

1. Determine the coordinates of the grid square (figure 071-329-1002-1).

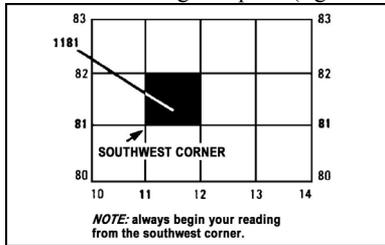


Figure 071-329-1002-1. Identifying the grid square

- a. Select the grid square that contains the identified point on the map (see figure 071-329-1002-1).
- b. Read the north-south grid line that precedes the desired point (see figure 071-329-1002-1).
- c. Record the number associated with that line.
- d. Read the east-west grid line that precedes the desired point (see figure 071-329-1002-1).
- e. Record the number associated with that line.

Note: The number of digits represents the degree of precision to which a point has been located and measured on a map the more digits the more precise the measurement. In the above example the four digits 1181 identify the 1,000 meter grid square to be used.

2. Determine point grid coordinates without coordinate scale (figure 071-329-1002-2).

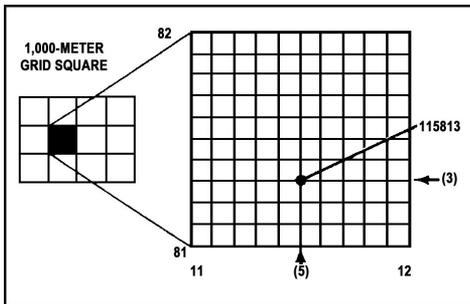


Figure 071-329-1002-2. Grid square 1181 divided

- a. Allocate the grid square into a 10 by 10 grid.
- b. Read right (from the lower left corner) to the imaginary grid line nearest the identified point.

Note: The north-south imaginary line nearest the point is halfway or 5 lines out of 10 lines. Therefore, the first half of your grid coordinate is 115.

- c. Read up (from the point reached in step 3b) to the imaginary grid line nearest the identified point.

Note: The east-west imaginary line nearest the point is one-third of the way up or 3 lines out of 10 lines. Therefore the second half of your grid coordinate is 813.

Performance Steps

- Determine point grid coordinates with coordinate scale (figure 071-329-1002-3).

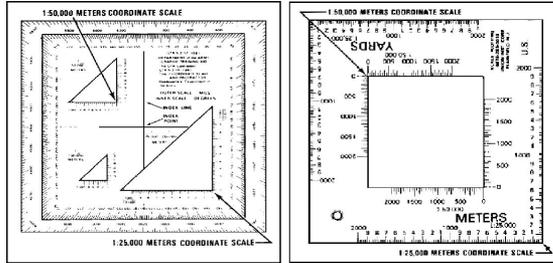


Figure 071-329-1002-3. Coordinate scale and protractor (left) and plotting scale (right)

Note: The most accurate way to determine the coordinates of a point on a map is with a coordinate scale. You need not imagine lines because you can find the exact coordinates using the coordinate scale, protractor, or the plotting scale. Each device, in fact, includes two coordinate scales, 1:25,000 and 1:50,000 meters. Make sure that, regardless which device you use, you choose the correct scale.

- Locate the grid square where the point is located.

Note: The number of the vertical grid line on the left (west) side of the grid square gives the first and second digits of the coordinate. The number of the horizontal grid line on the bottom (south) side of the grid square gives the fourth and fifth digits of the coordinate.

- Place a coordinate scale and protractor or a plotting scale (see figure 071-329-1002-3) on the bottom horizontal grid line of the grid square containing Point A to determine the third and sixth digits of the coordinate.

- Check to see that the zeros of the coordinate scale are in the lower left-hand (southwest) corner of the grid square where Point A is located (figure 071-329-1002-4).

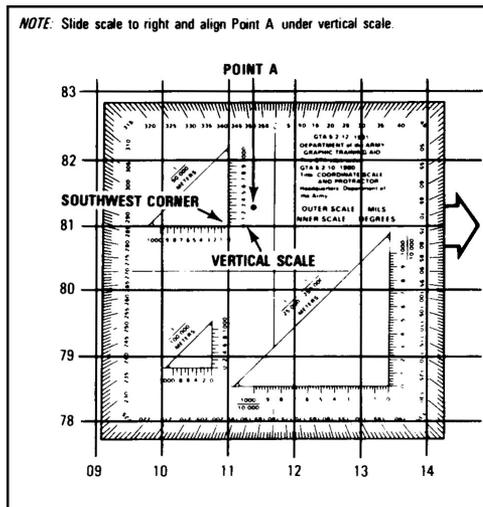


Figure 071-329-1002-4. Placement of the coordinate scale

Performance Steps

d. Slide the scale to the right, keeping the bottom of the scale on the bottom grid line until Point A is under the vertical (right-hand) scale (figures 071-329-1002-5 and 071-329-1002-6).

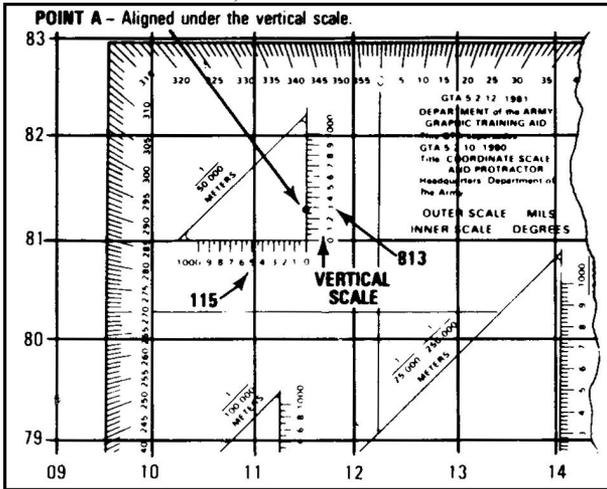


Figure 071-329-1002-5. Aligning the coordinate scale

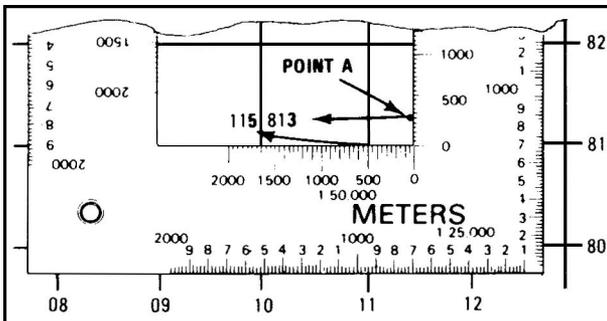


Figure 071-329-1002-6. Aligning the plotting scale

Note: To determine the six-digit coordinate, look at the 100-meter mark on the bottom scale, which is nearest the vertical grid line. This mark is the third digit of the number 115. The 100-meter mark on the vertical scale nearest to Point A gives you the sixth digit of the number 813. The complete grid coordinate is 115813. Always read right, and then up.

4. Add the two-letter 100,000-meter-square identifier to determined grid coordinate.

a. Identify the two-letter 100,000-meter-square identifier by looking at the grid reference box in the margin of the map (figure 071-329-1002-7).

Performance Steps

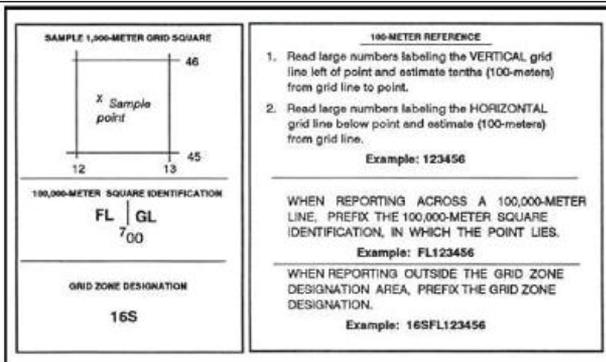


Figure 071-329-1002-7. Grid reference box

b. Place the 100,000-meter-square identifier in front of the grid coordinate.

Note: In the example given the final grid coordinate becomes GL115813.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Determined the coordinates of the grid square.	---	---
2. Determined point grid coordinates without coordinate scale.	---	---
3. Determined point grid coordinates with coordinate scale.	---	---
4. Added the two-letter 100,000-meter-square identifier to the determined grid coordinate.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-25.26 and GTA 05-02-012

071-329-1005

Determine a Location on the Ground by Terrain Association

Conditions: Given a standard 1:50,000-scale military map of the area, pencil, paper, a coordinate scale, compass and a requirement to determine a location on the ground by terrain association.

Standards: Determine the coordinates of the identified location within 100 meter.

Performance Steps

1. Identify the location to be determined.

Note: In general, terrain association is used to determine an individual's current physical location; however, terrain association maybe used to determine any location that is identifiable on the map.

2. Point the weapon in a safe direction.

Note: There are two ways to orient a map: (1) Using a compass. The magnetic arrow of the compass points to magnetic north. As such, pay special attention to the declination diagram. (2) Using terrain association. This method is, as a rule, used when a compass is not available or when the user has to make many quick references as he moves across country.

3. Determine the type of terrain feature on which you are located (or the identified location).

4. Determine the types of terrain features that surround your location (or the identified location).

5. Correlate the terrain features on the ground to those shown on the map.

6. Determine your location.

7. Determine the coordinates of your location.

Note: Determine your location using a coordinate scale and protractor, a plotting scale, or by visualizing a 10 by 10 grid box inside the appropriate grid square.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Identified the location to be determined.	---	---
2. Oriented the map.	---	---
3. Determined the type of terrain feature on which you were located (or the identified location).	---	---
4. Determined the types of terrain features that surround your location (or the identified location).	---	---
5. Correlated the terrain features on the ground to those shown on the map.	---	---
6. Determined location.	---	---
7. Determined the coordinates of your location.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required: GTA 05-02-012

Related: FM 3-25.26

071-329-1012

Orient a Map to the Ground by Map-Terrain Association

Conditions: Given a standard 1:50,000-scale military map of the area, and a requirement to orient the map.

Standards: Orient the map to within 30 degrees of magnetic north.

Performance Steps

1. Hold the map in a horizontal position.
2. Match terrain features appearing on your map with terrain features you can see on the ground (figure 071-329-1012-1).

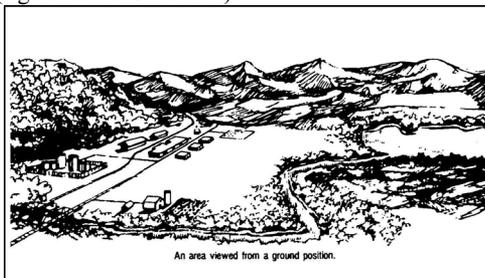


Figure 071-329-1012-1. Features used to orient map

3. Align the map such that the terrain features on the map line up with the terrain features on the ground.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Held the map in a horizontal position.	--	--
2. Matched terrain features appearing on map with physical features on the ground.	--	--
3. Aligned the map such that the terrain features appearing on map lined up with the physical features on the ground to within 30 degrees.	--	--

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required: GTA 05-02-012

Related: FM 3-25.26

071-329-1011

Orient a Map Using a Lensatic Compass

Conditions: Given a 1:50,000-scale topographic map of the area and compass.

Standards: Orient the map to the ground using a compass. The north-seeking arrow of the compass must fall within 3 degrees (50 mils) of the angle shown in the grid-magnetic (G-M) angle on the map's declination diagram.

Performance Steps

1. Place the cover side of the compass pointing towards the top of the level map.
2. Align the compass parallel to a north-south grid line.
Note: This will place the black index line on the dial of the compass parallel to grid north. Since the needle on the compass points to magnetic north, a declination diagram on the face of the compass is formed by the index line and the compass needle.
3. Rotate map and compass until the directions of the declination diagram formed by the black index line and the compass needle match the direction shown in the declination diagram printed on the margin of the map.

Notes:

1. If the magnetic north arrow on the map is to the left of the grid north, the compass reading equals the G-M angle (given the declination diagram). If the magnetic north is the right of the grid north, the compass reading equals 360 degrees (6,400 mils) minus the G-M angle.
2. The compass reading (equal to the G-M angle or the 360 degrees [6,400 mils] minus the G-M angle) will be apparent.
3. If the G-M angle is less than 3 degrees (50 mils), do not line up the north arrow.
4. Some maps have a built-in protractor consisting of a pivot point "P" on the south neat line of the map and several degrees of arc along the north neat line of the map. Obtain the G-M line by connecting pivot "P" with the appropriate value of the G-M angle (taken from the declination diagram) on the arc. Place the compass parallel on this line. Rotate the map and compass until the needle point aligns with the continuous line formed by the index line and the sighting wire. Orient the map.
5. An alternate method is to draw a magnetic north line on the map from any N-S and E-W grid line intersection using the protractor.
 - a. Align the straightedge of the compass along this magnetic north line.
 - b. Rotate the map and compass together, until the north arrow falls beneath the fixed black index line on the compass.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Placed the cover side of the compass pointing towards the top of the level map.	---	---
2. Aligned the compass parallel to a north-south grid line.	---	---
3. Rotated map and compass until the directions of the declination diagram formed by the black index line and the compass needle matched the direction shown in the declination diagram printed on the margin of the map.	---	---
4. Oriented the map.	---	---
5. Corrected the orientations of the map when the G-M angle exceeded 3 degrees (50 mils) using one of the following methods:	---	---
a. Formed the G-M angle with the black index line and the needle on the compass.		
b. Used the pivot point "P" on the south neat line and the degrees of arc along the north neat line; placed the compass along this line.		
c. Drew a magnetic north line from any N-S and E-W grid line intersection using a protractor and placed the compass along this line.		
<i>Note:</i> Steps 5 were only required when the G-M angle was greater than 3 degrees or 50 mils. Step 5b was only tested if the map had the built-in protractor.		

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-25.26

071-329-1003

Determine a Magnetic Azimuth Using a Lensatic Compass

Conditions: Given a compass and a designated point on the ground.

Standards: Determine the correct magnetic azimuth to the designated point within 3 degrees using the compass-to-cheek method, and within 10 degrees using the center-hold method.

Performance Steps

1. Inspect the compass (figure 071-329-1003-1).

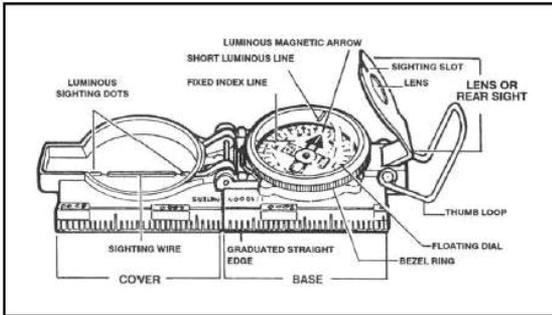


Figure 071-329-1003-1. Lensatic compass

- a. Ensure floating dial, which contains the magnetic needle, moves without restraint and does not stick.
 - b. Ensure the sighting wire is straight.
 - c. Ensure glass and crystal parts are not broken.
 - d. Ensure numbers on the dial are readable.
2. Determine direction (figure 071-329-1003-2).

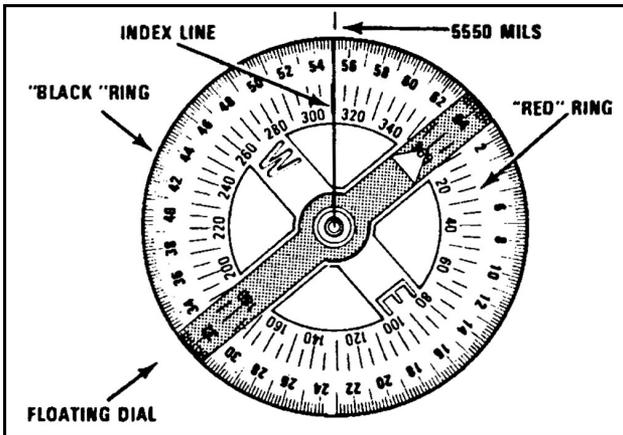


Figure 071-329-1003-2. Lensatic compass floating dial

- a. Align the compass to the direction you want to go or want to determine.
- b. Locate the scale beneath the index line on the outer glass cover.
- c. Determine to the nearest degree, or 10 mils, the position of the index line over the red or black scale.

Performance Steps

Note: Effects of Metal and Electricity. Metal objects and electrical sources can affect the performance of a compass. However, nonmagnetic metals and alloys do not affect compass readings. The following separation distances are suggested to ensure proper functioning of a compass:

High-tension power lines	55 meters.
Field gun, truck, or tank.....	18 meters.
Telegraph or telephone wires and barbed wire.....	10 meters.
Machine gun.....	2 meters.
Steel helmet or rifle.....	1/2 meter.

3. Determine an azimuth with the compass-to-cheek method (figure 071-329-1003-3).

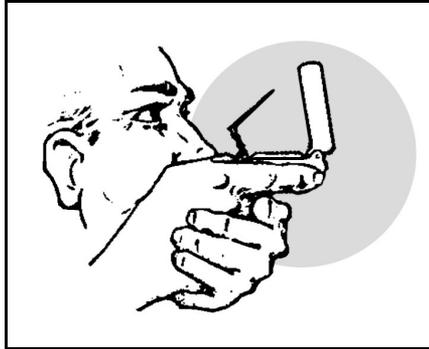


Figure 071-329-1003-3. Compass-to-cheek method

- a. Open the cover to a 90-degree angle to the base.
 - b. Position the eyepiece at a 45-degree angle to the base.
 - c. Place your thumb through the thumb loop.
 - d. Establish a steady base with your third and fourth fingers.
 - e. Extend your index finger along the side of the compass base.
 - f. Place the hand holding the compass into the palm of the other hand.
 - g. Move both hands up to your face.
 - h. Position the thumb that is through the thumb loop against the cheekbone.
- Note:** If the dial is not in focus, move the eyepiece up or down until the dial is in focus.
- i. Align the sighting slot of the eyepiece with the sighting wire in the cover on the desired point.
 - j. Read the azimuth under the index line.

Note: If the dial is not in focus, move the eyepiece up or down until the dial is in focus.

Performance Steps

- Determine an azimuth with the center-hold method (figure 071-329-1003-4).

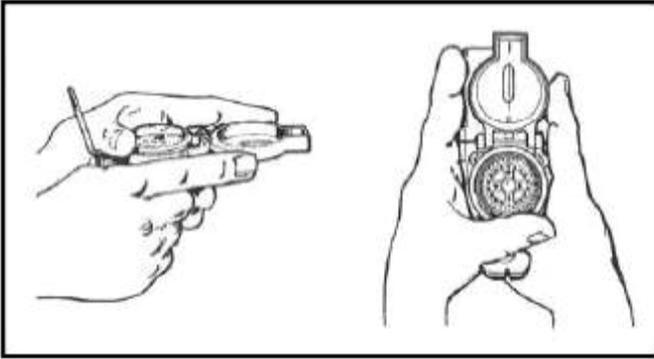


Figure 071-329-1003-4. Centerhold technique

Note: This method offers the following advantages over the sighting technique:

- It is faster and easier to use.
- It can be used under all conditions of visibility.
- It can be used when navigating over any type of terrain.
- It can be used without putting down the rifle; however, the rifle must be slung well back over either shoulder.

-It can be used without removing eyeglasses.

- Open the compass so that the cover forms a straight edge with the base.
- Position the eyepiece lens to the full upright position.
- Place your thumb through the loop.
- Establish a steady base with your third and fourth fingers.
- Extend your index finger along the side of the compass.
- Place the thumb of your other hand between the eyepiece and lens.
- Extend the index finger along the remaining side of the compass.
- Secure the remaining fingers around the fingers of the other hand.
- Place your elbows hard into your side.

Note: This will place the compass between your chin and your belt.

- Align the compass cover straight at the object.
- Read the azimuth from beneath the fixed black index line.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Inspected the compass.	---	---
2. Determined direction.	---	---
3. Determined an azimuth using the compass-to-cheek method.	---	---
4. Determined an azimuth using the center-hold method.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-25.26

071-329-1006

Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Dismounted

Conditions: Given a 1:50,000-scale topographic map of the area, a coordinate scale, a protractor, a magnetic compass, a designated point on the ground, and a requirement to conduct dismounted movement to the designated point.

Standards: Navigate to the designated point using terrain association, dead reckoning, or a combination of the two.

Performance Steps

1. Navigate using terrain association.
 - a. Identify the start point and destination point on the map.
 - b. Analyze the terrain between these two points for both movement and tactical purposes.
 - c. Identify terrain features that can be recognized during movement, such as hilltops, roads, rivers, and such.
 - d. Plan the best route, including checkpoints, if needed.
 - e. Determine the map distances between identified checkpoints and the total distance to be traveled.
 - f. Determine the actual ground distance by adding 20 percent to the map distance.

Note: Twenty percent is a general rule of thumb for cross country terrain; however, road movement and flat terrain do not require this 20 percent increase.

- g. Move to the designated end-point (or intermediate point) using identified terrain features as aiming points or handrails.

2. Navigate using dead reckoning.

Note: The use of steering marks is recommended when navigating by dead reckoning. A steering mark is a distant feature visible along one's route that is used as distant aiming point that one moves towards. Once reached another steering point is identified until a change of direction or the final destination is reached.

Performance Steps

- a. Identify the start point and destination point on the map.
 - b. Analyze the terrain between these two points for both movement and tactical purposes.
 - c. Plan the best route, including checkpoints, if needed.
 - d. Determine the grid azimuths between identified checkpoints (if any) and the final point.
 - e. Convert the grid azimuth(s) taken from the map to a magnetic azimuth(s).
 - f. Determine the map distances between identified checkpoints and the total distance to be traveled.
 - g. Determine the direction of movement using the compass.
 - h. Move in the identified direction of travel or towards the identified steering mark.
 - i. Determine a new steering mark or confirm direction of travel as needed.
- Note:* The direction of movement, when not using a steering mark, must be confirmed at regular intervals.
3. Navigate using a combination of dead reckoning and terrain association.
 - a. Follow the procedures outlined for both techniques.
 - b. Use each technique to reinforce the accuracy of the other technique.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Navigated using terrain association..	---	---
2. Navigated using dead reckoning.	---	---
3. Navigated using a combination of dead reckoning and terrain association.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required: FM 3-25.26

Related: GTA 05-02-012

071-329-1030

Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point while Mounted

Conditions: Given a 1:50,000-scale topographic map of the area, a coordinate scale, a protractor, a magnetic compass, a vehicle with cross-country capability, a designated point on the ground, and a requirement to conduct mounted movement to the designated point.

Standards: Navigate to the designated point using terrain association, dead reckoning, or combination of the two.

Performance Steps

1. Navigate using terrain association.
 - a. Identify the start point and destination point on the map.
 - b. Analyze the terrain between these two points for both movement and tactical purposes.
 - c. Identify terrain features that can be recognized during movement, such as hilltops, roads, rivers, and such.
 - d. Plan the best route, including checkpoints, if needed.
 - e. Determine the map distances between identified checkpoints and the total distance to be traveled.
 - f. Determine the actual ground distance by adding 20 percent to the map distance.

Note: Twenty percent is a general rule of thumb for cross country terrain; however, road movement and flat terrain do not require this 20 percent increase.

- g. Move to the designated end-point (or intermediate point) using identified terrain features as aiming points or handrails.

2. Navigate using dead reckoning.

Note: The use of steering marks is recommended when navigating by dead reckoning. A steering mark is a distant feature visible along one's route that is used as distant aiming point that one moves towards. Once reached another steering point is identified until a change of direction or the final destination is reached.

- a. Identify the start point and destination point on the map.
 - b. Analyze the terrain between these two points for both movement and tactical purposes.
 - c. Plan the best route, including checkpoints, if needed.
 - d. Determine the grid azimuths between identified checkpoints (if any) and the final point.
 - e. Convert the grid azimuth(s) taken from the map to a magnetic azimuth(s).
 - f. Determine the map distances between identified checkpoints and the total distance to be traveled.
 - g. Determine the direction of movement using the compass.

Note: A compass direction taken on or near a vehicle will provide an inaccurate reading due to the metal of the vehicle.

- (1) Dismount the vehicle.
- (2) Move about 25 meters to the front of the vehicle.

Performance Steps

(3) Determine the direction of travel using the compass.

(4) Identify a steering mark, if possible.

h. Position the vehicle in the direction of travel if no steering mark is used.

(1) Make a 180-degree turn from the original direction (face the back azimuth).

(2) Direct the vehicle driver to move to your position in a straight line with the desired direction of travel.

(3) Mount the vehicle.

(4) Determine the basic vehicle compass deviation by shooting the same azimuth while mounted on the vehicle as shot on the ground.

Note: The compass may swing off the desired azimuth, but it should pick up a constant deviation. For example, the azimuth to the next point was 75 degrees, taken away from the vehicle, you moved the vehicle to its start position, mounted, and the compass showed 67 degrees. The mounted deviation of minus 8 degrees. All that is needed is to hold the 67-degree heading.

i. Move in the identified direction of travel or towards the identified steering mark.

j. Determine a new steering mark or confirm direction of travel as needed.

Note: The direction of movement, when not using a steering mark, must be confirmed at regular intervals.

3. Navigate using a combination of dead reckoning and terrain association.

a. Follow the procedures outlined for both techniques.

b. Use each technique to reinforce the accuracy of the other technique.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Navigated using terrain association.	---	---
2. Navigated using dead reckoning..	---	---
3. Navigated using a combination of dead reckoning and terrain association.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References**Required:** GTA 05-02-012**Related:** FM 3-25.26**113-610-2005****Navigate using the Defense Advanced Global Positioning System (GPS) Receiver (DAGR)**

Conditions: Given a DAGR GPS in a hostile environment where the Soldier has to maintain constant awareness at all times. The student will be aware of contemporary operational environment factors such as extreme temperature differences, unstable political state and hostile locals are of the essence to maintain vital communications.

Standards: Are met when the Soldier successfully navigates using the DAGR GPS in the hostile environment while observing the contemporary operational environment.

Performance Steps

1. Enter or verify the correct setup displays.
 - a. Select setup mode.
2. Enter crypto keys.
3. Enter or verify initialization displays.
 - a. Verify position and time by acquiring satellites.
4. Enter, edit, or review waypoint data.
 - a. Mark present position waypoint.
 - b. Create a new waypoint.
 - c. Clear waypoints.
5. Navigate to five waypoints.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Entered or verified correct setup displays.	---	---
2. Entered crypto keys.	---	---
3. Entered and verified initialization displays.	---	---
4. Entered waypoint information.	---	---
5. Navigated to five waypoints.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References**Required:** TB 11-5820-1172-10 and TM 11-5820-1172-13**Related:**

071-326-0502

Move Under Direct Fire

Conditions: You are under fire from at least one enemy. Given an individual weapon, individual combat equipment, and a current firing position that provides cover from the enemy's direct fire. You must approach the enemy position, from across varied terrain, starting from at a distance of 250 to 300 meters. You may be a member of a fire team or two-man buddy team.

Standards: Move within 100 meters of the enemy position using the appropriate movement techniques for the terrain.

Performance Steps

Note: While this task may be performed by an individual Soldier, it is best performed as a member of a fire team or as part of a two-man buddy team.

1. Select an individual movement route that adheres to any instructions provide by your team leader, minimizes your exposure to enemy fire, and does not require you to cross in front of another team member (figure 071-326-0502-1).

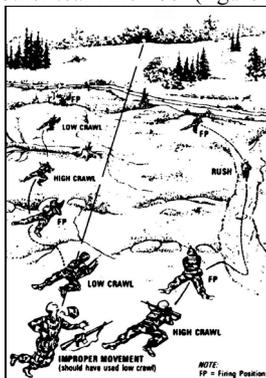


Figure 071-326-0502-1. Select route

Note: If a member of a fire team, your team leader will select the best available route for the team and you must select an appropriate individual route within this team route.

- a. Suppress the enemy as required.

Note: Do not expose yourself to fire unless the enemy is suppressed. Suppression of the enemy may be accomplished by another element, a buddy, or by yourself. With the enemy suppressed you can select an individual movement route or initiate movement.

- b. Search the terrain to your front for both good firing positions and movement routes to those positions.

Note: A gully, ravine, ditch, or wall at a slight angle to your direction of travel may provide cover and concealment when using the low or crawl movement techniques. Large trees, rocks, stumps, fallen timber, rubble, vehicle hulks, and folds or creases on the ground may provide both cover and concealment and can be used as fighting positions. Hedgerows or a line of thick vegetation may provide concealment only when using the low or high crawl technique.

Performance Steps

- c. Select your next position.

Note: Select your next position based on the cover and concealment of the next position and the route(s) to it.

- d. Select the best route to your next position.
- e. Determine the movement technique(s) you will use to your next position.

Note: Select the based movement technique. Considerations include—

- Selecting the high crawl when the route provides cover and concealment, poor visibility reduces enemy observation, and speed is required but the terrain and vegetation are suitable only for the low crawl.
- Selecting the low crawl when the route provides cover and concealment less than 1 foot high, visibility provides the enemy with good observation, and speed is not required.
- Selecting the rush when you must cross an open area and time is critical.

2. Communicate your movement intent to your buddy and team leader, as appropriate, using hand and arm signals.

Note: When part of a fire team your movement route and general firing positions may be determined by your team leader. When moving as part of a fire team you must be prepared to follow your team leader's example.

3. Move using the high crawl movement technique (figure 071-326-0502-2).



Figure 071-326-0502-2. High crawl

- a. Keep your body off of the ground.
 - b. Rest your weight on your forearms and lower legs.
 - c. Cradle your weapon in your arms.
 - d. Keep the muzzle of the weapon off the ground.
 - e. Keep your knees well behind your buttocks so it stays low.
 - f. Move forward by alternating your right elbow and left knee, and left elbow and right knee.
4. Move using the low crawl technique (figure 071-326-0502-3).

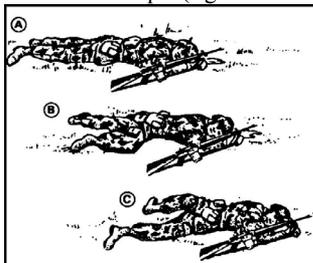


Figure 071-326-0502-3. Low crawl

Performance Steps

- a. Keep your body as flat as possible to the ground.
 - b. Grasp the sling of the weapon at the upper sling swivel with your right hand.
 - c. Let the hand guard rest on your forearm.
 - d. Keep the muzzle of the weapon off the ground.
 - e. Move forward.
 - (1) Push both arms forward while pulling your right leg forward.
 - (2) Pull on the ground with both arms while pushing with your right leg.
 - (3) Repeat steps 9e(1) and 9e(2) until you reach your next position.
5. Move using the rush movement technique (figure 071-326-0502-4).

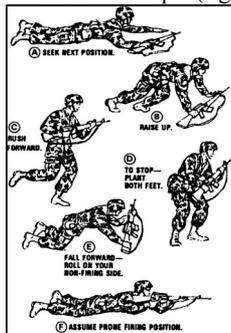


Figure 071-326-0502-4. Rush

- a. Raise your head.
- b. Select your next position.
- c. Lower your head.
- d. Draw your arms into your body.
- e. Pull your right leg forward.
- f. Raise your body.
- g. Get up fast.
- h. Run to your next position.
 - (1) Keeping the distance short.
 - (2) Run for 3 to 5 seconds.
- i. Plant both feet just before hitting the ground.
- j. Fall forward.
 - (1) Drop to your knees.
 - (2) Slide your right hand down to the heel of the butt of your weapon.
 - (3) Break your fall with the butt of your weapon.
- k. Fall forward.
 - (1) Roll on your side.
 - (2) Place the butt of your weapon in the hollow of your shoulder.
 - (3) Roll or crawl to a covered or concealed firing position.

Performance Steps

- l. Engage the enemy with your individual weapon.
 - m. Repeat steps a through l until you reach your next position.
6. Occupy your identified firing position.
7. Repeat steps 1 through 6 until you move within 100 meters of the enemy position.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Explain what is expected from the Soldier by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Selected an individual movement route that adhered to any instructions provided by the team leader, minimized exposure to enemy fire, and did not require crossing in front of another team member.	---	---
2. Communicated movement intent to buddy and team leader, as appropriate, using hand and arm signals.	---	---
3. Moved using the high crawl movement technique.	---	---
4. Moved using the low crawl technique.	---	---
5. Moved using the rush technique.	---	---
6. Occupied the identified firing position.	---	---
7. Repeated steps 1 through 6 until within 100 meters of the enemy position.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-21.75 (FM 21-75)

071-326-0503

Move Over, Through, or Around Obstacles (Except Minefields)

Conditions: Given an individual weapon and individual protective equipment. You are moving and encounter a natural or manmade obstacle. You must move over, through, or around the obstacle.

Standards: Identify chain of command of obstacle encountered; evaluate obstacle; identify nearest covered position on far side of obstacle;

negotiate a wall obstacle, a wire obstacle, a ditch type obstacle; and cover buddy during crossing of obstacle.

Performance Steps

Note: An obstacle is any obstruction designed or employed to disrupt, fix, turn, or block the movement of an opposing force, and to impose additional losses in personnel, time, and equipment on the opposing force. Obstacles can be natural, manmade, or a combination of both.

1. Notify your chain of command of the presence and type of obstacle encountered.

Note: Most obstacles, for maximum effectiveness, are covered by either fire or observation. Many obstacles, due to enemy fire or complexity of the obstacle, require a unit breaching operation and the appropriate collective task should also be followed.

2. Evaluate the obstacle, from a covered position, to determine whether to move around, through, or over the obstacle.

Note: By and large, it is best to move around (or bypass) an obstacle; however, this is not always possible.

3. Identify the nearest covered position on the far side of the obstacle.

4. Ensure a buddy, if present, covers your movement as you negotiate the obstacle.

5. Negotiate a wall obstacle.

a. Identify your immediate landing position on the far side of the wall.

Note: The far side must be quite safe from enemy fire, as once across the wall, you are all exposed. Moreover, the immediate opposite side of the wall must be safe for landing as long drops and debris can cause injury.

b. Assume a crouching position near the wall, while holding your weapon with one hand and grabbing the top of the wall with the other hand.

c. Pull with the hand on the wall while at the same time swinging both legs over the wall, one right after the other.

d. Roll fast over the top to the other side, keeping a low silhouette.

e. Move to the identified covered position on the far side.

6. Negotiate a wire obstacle.

WARNING

An enemy may attach booby traps or tripwire-activated mines to wire obstacles.

a. Move to your designated crossing position.

b. Check for booby traps or early warning devices.

c. Cross over a wire obstacle.

(1) Place an object, such as a piece of wood, metal, or mats, over the wire.

(2) Move over the wire by stepping on this object to avoid the wire entanglements.

Performance Steps

- d. Cross under a wire obstacle.
 - (1) Slide head first on your back under the bottom strands.
 - (2) Push yourself forward with your shoulders and heels, carrying your weapon lengthwise on your body and holding the barbed wire with one hand while moving.
 - (3) Let the barbed wire slide on the weapon to keep wire from catching on clothing and equipment.
- e. Cut through a wire obstacle.

Note: If stealth is not needed, cut all wires fast and proceed through the gap.

- (1) Wrap cloth around the barbed wire between your hands.
- (2) Cut in part through the barbed wire.

Note: Cutting the wire near a picket reduces the noise of a cut.

- (3) Bend the barbed wire back and forth in silence until it separates.
 - (4) Cut only the lower strands.
 - (5) Cross under the remaining top wires.
7. Cross a ditch type obstacle.
- a. Select a point that has cover and concealment on both sides, such as a bend in the ditch.
 - b. Move to your designated crossing site.
 - c. Crawl up to the edge of the open area.
 - d. Observe both the floor of the ditch and the far side for dangers.
 - e. Move fast and quiet across the exposed area.
 - f. Assume a covered position on the far side.
8. Cover your buddy, if present, as he or she crosses the obstacle.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Notified the chain of command of the presence and type of obstacle encountered.	---	---
2. Evaluated the obstacle, from a covered position, to determine whether to move around, through, or over the obstacle.	---	---
3. Identified the nearest covered position on the far side of the obstacle.	---	---
4. Ensured a buddy, if present, was covering his movements.	---	---

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
5. Negotiated a wall obstacle.	---	---
6. Negotiated a wire obstacle.	---	---
7. Negotiated a ditch type obstacle.	---	---
8. Covered his buddy, if present, as the buddy crossed the obstacle.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-21.75 (FM 21-75)

071-326-0510

React to Indirect Fire while Dismounted

Conditions: You are a member of a dismounted element, you are not the leader, and the element is moving or stationary. You hear indirect fire rounds exploding or passing overhead, or someone shouting "incoming."

Standards: Obtain the best available cover while following the leader's directions. Assess and report the situation to higher. Continue the mission.

Performance Steps

1. Shout "Incoming!" in a loud, recognizable voice.
2. React to the instructions of your leader by listening and looking for guidance.

Note: In general, if moving, the leader will give a direction and distance to move to. If possible, follow your leader; if you cannot see or hear your leader, follow other team members.

3. Seek the nearest appropriate cover.
 - a. Remain in your defensive position if it has appropriate cover.

Note: Prepared defensive positions include overhead cover to protect against indirect fires. As necessary adjust your position to maximize the protection of your available cover.

- b. Avoid the impact area if not already in it.
 - c. Run out of the impact area in a direction away from the incoming fire.
4. Assess your situation.
5. Report your situation to your leader.
6. Continue the mission.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldiers: Explain what is expected from the Soldier by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings,

and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Shouted "Incoming!" in a loud, recognizable voice.	---	---
2. Reacted to the instructions of your leader by listening and looking for instructions.	---	---
3. Sought the nearest appropriate cover.	---	---
4. Assessed the situation.	---	---
5. Reported the situation to the leader.	---	---
6. Continued the mission.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-21.8

071-326-3002

React to Indirect Fire while Mounted

Conditions: You are mounted in a moving or stationary vehicle and you hear indirect fire rounds exploding or passing overhead, or someone shouting "incoming."

Standards: Seek cover, as appropriate, while following the chain of command's orders, assess and report the situation to the chain of command, and continue the mission as directed by the chain of command.

Performance Steps

Note: If a member of an established vehicle crew, such as a Bradley, M1 tank, or Stryker, then execute the appropriate crew drill, battle drill, or collective task.

1. Shout "Incoming" in a loud, recognizable voice.

Note: If available, use the vehicle communications system. All Soldiers repeat the alert.

2. (LEADER) Issue orders after fast assessing the initial situation.

Note: Typical orders include—

- Directing the driver to accelerate through the impact area.
- Directing the driver to move a specific direction and distance.
- Directing an assault on the enemy position.

3. React to the instructions of your leader by listening and looking for guidance.

4. Seek the nearest appropriate cover.

a. (DRIVER ONLY) Remain in a defensive position if it has appropriate cover.

b. (DRIVER ONLY) Avoid the impact area if not already in it.

Performance Steps

- c. (DRIVER ONLY) Drive out of the impact area in a direction away from the incoming fire or as specified by the leader.
 - d. Occupy a covered position within the vehicle.
 - e. Close personnel hatches, if present.
 - f. Remain in the vehicle unless directed to dismount by the vehicle commander.
5. Analyze your situation.
- Note:* The leader checks the status of the vehicle and all occupants by sight or by calling out. If the vehicle is disabled, then the leader must consider the option of dismounting the vehicle and seeking cover away from the vehicle.
6. Report your situation to your chain of command.
7. Continue the mission as directed by the chain of command.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Shouted "Incoming" in a loud, and recognizable voice.	---	---
2. (LEADER) Issued orders after fast assessing the initial situation.	---	---
3. Reacted to the instructions of the leader by listening and looking for guidance.	---	---
4. Sought the nearest appropriate cover.	---	---
5. Analyzed the situation.	---	---
6. Reported the situation to the chain of command.	---	---
7. Continued the mission as directed by the chain of command.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-21.9

071-410-0002

React to Direct Fire while Mounted

Conditions: You are mounted in a vehicle; the vehicle is moving or stationary. An enemy engages the vehicle with direct fire.

Standards: Return fire and seek cover, as appropriate, while following the chain of command's orders, assess and report the situation to the chain of command; continue the mission as directed by the chain of command.

Performance Steps

Note: If a member of an established vehicle crew, such as a Bradley, M1 tank, or Stryker, then execute the appropriate crew drill, battle drill, or collective task.

1. Return fire, as appropriate, to destroy or suppress enemy.
2. (LEADER) Issue orders after fast assessing the initial situation.

Note: Typical orders include—

- Directing the driver to a position that provides cover.
- Directing the driver to accelerate in a safe manner through the engagement area.
- Directing the gunner (if present) to engage the enemy.
- Directing an assault on the enemy position.

3. React to the instructions of the leader by listening and looking for guidance.
4. Seek the nearest appropriate cover (based on orders from the leader).
 - a. (DRIVER) Remain in a defensive position if there is appropriate cover.
 - b. (DRIVER) Drive in the direction designated by the leader or towards the nearest appropriate cover.
 - c. Occupy a covered position within the vehicle.
 - d. Close personnel hatches, if present.
 - e. Remain in the vehicle unless directed to dismount by the vehicle commander.
5. Analyze your situation.

Note: The leader checks the status of the vehicle and all occupants by sight or by calling out.

6. Develop the situation based on orders from the chain of command.

Note: If the vehicle is disabled, the leader must consider the option of dismounting some or all of the vehicle occupants to engage the enemy from outside the vehicle.

7. Report your situation to your chain of command.
8. Continue the mission as directed by the chain of command.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Returned fire, as appropriate, to destroy or suppress enemy.	---	---
2. (LEADER) Issued orders after fast assessing the initial situation.	---	---
3. Reacted to the instructions of the leader by listening and looking for guidance.	---	---
4. Sought the nearest appropriate cover (based on orders from the leader).	---	---
5. Analyzed the situation.	---	---
6. Developed the situation based on orders from the chain of command.	---	---
7. Reported the situation to the chain of command.	---	---
8. Continued the mission as directed by the chain of command.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-21.9

071-326-0513

Select Temporary Fighting Positions

Conditions: Given a requirement to occupy an area, an individual or crew-served weapon, combat equipment, and a requirement to select a temporary fighting position.

Standards: Select a fighting position that protects you from enemy observation and fire, and allows effective fires to be placed on enemy positions without exposing yourself or your equipment.

Performance Steps

1. Select a position that maximizes available cover.

Note: Cover, made of natural or fabricated materials, gives protection from bullets, fragments of exploding rounds, flame, nuclear effects, biological and chemical agents, and enemy observation.

2. Select a position that maximizes available concealment.

Note: Concealment is anything that hides personal, equipment and/or vehicles from enemy observation. Concealment does not protect you from enemy fire.

- a. Use natural, undisturbed concealment, if available.
- b. Ensure fabricated concealment blends with surroundings.

Performance Steps

3. Maintain camouflage.

Note: Camouflage is anything you use to keep yourself, your equipment, and your position from being identified.

- a. Prevent attention by controlling movement and activities.
 - b. Avoid putting anything where the enemy expects to find it.
 - c. Break up outlines and shadows.
 - d. Conceal shining objects.
 - e. Break up familiar shapes to make them blend in with their surroundings.
 - f. Camouflage yourself and your equipment to blend with the surroundings.
 - g. Ensure proper dispersion.
 - h. Study the terrain and vegetation of the area in which you are operating.
 - i. Use camouflage material that best blends with the area.
4. Select a position that allows effective weapon emplacement.
- a. Ensure proper sector of fires for appropriate weapon system.
 - b. Ensure proper field of fires.
 - (1) Avoid disclosing your position by careless or excessive clearing.
 - (2) Leave a thin, natural screen of vegetation to hide your position.
 - (3) Cut off lower branches of large, scattered trees, in thin wooded areas.
 - (4) Clear underbrush only where it blocks your view.
 - (5) Remove cut brush, limbs, and weeds so the enemy will not spot them.
 - (6) Cover cuts on trees and bushes forward of your position with mud, dirt, or snow.
 - (7) Leave no trails as clues for the enemy.
5. Continue to follow the leader's directions after selection of a fighting position.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Selected a position that maximized available cover.	---	---
2. Selected a position that maximized available concealment.	---	---

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
3. Maintained camouflage.	---	---
4. Selected a position that allowed effective weapons emplacement.	---	---
5. Continued to follow the leader's directions after selecting a fighting position.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-21.8 and FM 3-21.75 (FM 21-75)

Subject Area 3: Communicate

113-587-2070

Operate SINCGARS single channel (SC)

Conditions: Given an operational SINCGARS, KYK-13/TSEC with keys or AN/CYZ-10, distant station, TM 11-5820-890-10-8, TM 11-5820-890-10-3, ACP 125 US Suppl-1, DA Pam 738-750, FM 24-19, FM 24-18, and unit SOI or ANCD w/SOI data loaded.

Standards: The standards are met when a secure communications check is conducted in SC mode with a distant station.

Performance Steps

1. Perform starting procedures.
2. Load the traffic encryption key (TEK).
3. Enter the net.
 - a. Use the correct procedures.
 - b. Conduct a secure communications check.
4. Prepare the control monitor for operation.
5. Change the radio functions using the control monitor.
6. Perform stopping procedures.

Evaluation Preparation: *Brief Soldier:* Tell the Soldier to prepare and transmit a MEDEVAC request. State that the communication net is secure.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Performed starting procedures.	---	---
2. Loaded traffic encryption key (TEK).	---	---

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
3. Entered net.	---	---
a. Used correct procedures.		
b. Conducted secure communications check.		
4. Exited net.	---	---
5. Performed stopping procedures.	---	---
6. Exited the net.	---	---
7. Performed stopping procedures.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required: ACP 125 US Suppl-1, TM 11-5820-890-10-1,
TM 11-5820-890-10-3, and TM 11-5820-890-10-8

Related:

113-571-1022

Perform Voice Communications

Conditions: Given: (1) One operational radio set for each net member, warmed up and set to the net frequency. (2) A call sign information card (5 x 8) consisting of net member duty position (S-1, S-2), net call sign (letter-number-letter), suffix list (Net Control Station [NCS] - 46, S-1 - 39, S-2 - 13), and a message to be transmitted. (3) Situation: The net is considered secure, and authentication is not required.

Note: This task may have as many net members as there is equipment available. Each net member must have a different suffix and message to transmit.

Standards: Enter a radio net, send a message, and leave a radio net using the proper call signs, call sign sequence, prowords, and phonetic alphabet and numerals with 100-percent accuracy.

Performance Steps

1. Enter the net.
 - a. Determine the abbreviated call sign and answering sequence for your duty position.
 - b. Respond to the NCS issuing a net call.
 - c. Answer in alphanumeric sequence.

Note: At this time, the NCS acknowledges and the net is open.

Performance Steps

2. Send a message.
 - a. Listen to make sure the net is clear. Do not interrupt any ongoing communications.
 - b. Call the NCS and tell the operator the priority of the message you have for his or her station.
 - c. Receive a response from the NCS that he or she is ready to receive.
 - d. Send your message using the correct prowords and pronunciation of letters and numbers.
 - e. Get a receipt for the message.
3. Leave the net in alphanumeric sequence.

Note: The NCS acknowledges and the net is closed.

Note: The following call signs are used in this task as an example: Net call sign - E3E, NCS - E46, S-1 - E39, S-2 - E13.

- a. Answer in alphanumeric sequence.
- b. You receive a call from the NCS who issues a close down order.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Position operational radio sets in different rooms, tents, or at least 70 feet apart outside. Obtain call signs, suffixes, and a radio frequency through the normal command chain. Select a message 15–25 words in length, containing some number groups such as map coordinates and times. Print the call signs for the sender and the receiver, along with the message to be sent, on 5 x 8 cards. Perform a communications check to ensure operation of the radios. Have an assistant who is proficient in radio operation man the NCS. Provide the assistant with the call signs. If the Soldier has not demonstrated sufficient progress to complete the task within 5 minutes, give him or her a NO GO. This time limit is an administrative requirement, not a doctrinal one, so if the Soldier has almost completed the task, you may decide to allow him or her to finish.

Brief Soldier: Give the Soldier to be tested the card containing the message and call signs. Tell him or her the radio is ready for operation, the net is considered to be secure and authentication is not required, and to send the message to the NCS and get a receipt. Tell the Soldier, if sufficient progress in completing the task within 5 minutes has not been demonstrated, he or she will receive a NO GO for the task.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Entered the net in alphanumeric sequence.	---	---
2. Sent a message of 15 to 25 words using the correct prowords and phonetic alphabet and numerals.	---	---
3. Left the net in alphanumeric sequence.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related:

113-587-2000

Operate Secure SINCGARS

Conditions: Given an operational SINCGARS, transfer fill device with cable, distant end station, TM 11-5820-890-10-8, TM 11-5820-890-10-3, TM 11-5820-890-10-1, ACP 125 US Suppl-1, DA Pam 738-750, DA Form 2404 (*Equipment Inspection and Maintenance Worksheet*), FM 24-19, FM 24-18, and unit signal operating instructions (SOI).

Standards: Standard is met when secure communications is continued in single channel or frequency hopping mode of operation with the distant end station, using the LCD display and the "during" operation check results are recorded on DA Form 2404.

Performance Steps

1. Perform start-up procedures (set radio to GPS time).
2. Load the traffic encryption key (TEK).
3. Enter the net.
 - a. Use the correct procedures.
 - b. Conduct a secure communications check.
4. Prepare the control monitor for operation.
5. Perform net member CUE late net entry.
 - a. Use the correct procedures.
 - b. Conduct a secure communication check.
6. Change the radio functions using the control monitor.
7. Exit the net.
8. Perform stopping procedures.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Performed start-up procedures (radio set to GPS time).	---	---
2. Loaded TEK.	---	---

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
3. Entered net.	---	---
a. Used correct procedures.		
b. Conducted secure communications check.		
4. Prepared the control monitor for operation.	---	---
5. Performed net member CUE late net entry.	---	---
a. Used correct procedures.		
b. Conducted secure communications check.		
6. Changed radio functions using the control monitor.	---	---
7. Exited the net.	---	---
8. Performed stopping procedures.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required: DA Form 2404, TM 11-5820-890-10-1,
TM 11-5820-890-10-3, and TM 11-5820-890-10-8

Related:

081-831-0101

Request Medical Evacuation

Conditions: You have a casualty requiring medical evacuation (MEDEVAC) and you will need a patient pickup site. You will need operational communications equipment, MEDEVAC request format, and unit signal operation instructions (SOI).

Standards: Transmit a MEDEVAC request, providing all necessary information as fast as possible. Transmit, as a minimum, line numbers 1 through 5 during the initial contact with the evacuation unit. Transmit lines 6 through 9 while the aircraft or vehicle is en route, if not included during the initial contact. (See table 081-831-0101-1 and table 081-831-0101-2.)

Table 081-831-0101-1. Line numbers 1–6

LINE	ITEM	EXPLANATION	WHERE/HOW OBTAINED	WHO NORMALLY PROVIDES	REASON
1	Location of pickup site	Encrypt the grid coordinates of the pickup site. When using the DRVAD Numerical Cipher, the same "SET" line will be used to encrypt the grid zone letters and the coordinates. To preclude misunderstanding, a statement is made that grid zone letters are included in the message (unless unit SOP specifies its use at all times).	From map	Unit leader(s)	Required so evacuation vehicle knows where to pick up patients so that the unit coordinating the evacuation mission can plan the route for the evacuation vehicle. (If the evacuation vehicle must pick up from more than one location).
2	Radio frequency, call sign, and suffix	Encrypt the frequency of the radio at the pickup site, not a relay frequency. The call sign (and suffix if used) of person to be contacted at the pickup site may be transmitted in the clear.	From SICI	RTO	Required so that evacuation vehicle can contact requesting unit while en route (obtain additional information for change in situation or direction).
3	Number of patients by precedence	Report only applicable information and encrypt the brevity codes. A - URGENT B - URGENT-SURG C - PRIORITY D - ROUTINE E - CONVENIENCE If two or more categories must be reported in the same request, insert the word "BREAK" between each category.	From evaluation of patient(s)	Medic or senior person present	Required by unit controlling vehicles to assist in prioritizing missions.
4	Special equipment required	Encrypt the applicable brevity codes. A - None B - Hoist C - Extraction equipment D - Ventilation	From evaluation of patient/situation	Medic or senior person present	Required so that the equipment can be placed on board the evacuation vehicle prior to the start of the mission.
5	Number of patients by type	Report only applicable information and encrypt the brevity codes. If requesting medical evacuation for both types, insert the word "BREAK" between the litter entry and ambulatory entry. L = # of patients - Litter A = # of patients - Ambulatory (sitting)	From evaluation of patient(s)	Medic or senior person present	Required so that the appropriate number of evacuation crews may be dispatched to the pickup site. They should be configured to carry the patients requiring evacuation.
6	Security of pickup site (wartime)	N - No enemy troops in area (approach with caution) E - Enemy troops in area (approach with caution) X - Enemy troops in area (armed escort required)	From evaluation of situation	Unit leader	Required to assist the evacuation crew in assessing the situation and determining if assistance is required. More definitive guidance can be furnished the evacuation vehicle while it is en route (specific location of enemy to assist an aircraft in planning its approach).

Table 081-831-0101-2. Line numbers 6–9

LINE	ITEM	EXPLANATION	WHERE/HOW OBTAINED	WHO NORMALLY PROVIDES	REASON
6	Number and type of wound, injury, or illness (peacetime)	Specific information regarding patient wounds by type (gunshot or shrapnel). Report serious bleeding, along with patient's blood type, if known.	From evaluation of patient(s)	Medic or senior person present	Required to assist evacuation personnel in determining treatment and special equipment needed.
7	Method of marking pickup site	Encrypt the brevity codes. A - Panels B - Pyrotechnic signal C - Smoke signal D - None E - Other	Based on situation and availability of materials	Medic or senior person present	Required to assist the evacuation crew in identifying the specific location of the pickup. Note that the color of the panels or smoke should not be transmitted until the evacuation vehicle contacts the unit (just prior to its arrival). For security, the crew should identify the color and the unit verifies it.
8	Patient nationality and status	The number of patients in each category need not be transmitted. Encrypt only the applicable brevity codes. A - US military B - US citizen C - Non-US military D - Non-US citizen E - Enemy prisoner of war (EPW)	From evaluation of patient(s)	Medic or senior person present	Required to assist in planning for destination facilities and need for guards. Unit requesting support should ensure that there is an English-speaking representative at the pickup site.
9	CBRN contamination (wartime)	Include this line only when applicable. Encrypt the applicable brevity codes. C - Chemical B - Biological R - Radiological N - Nuclear	From situation	Medic or senior person present	Required to assist in planning for the mission (determine which evacuation vehicle will accomplish the mission and when it will be accomplished).
9	Terrain description (peacetime)	Include details of terrain features in and around proposed landing. If possible, describe relationship of site to prominent terrain feature (lake, mountain, tower).	From area survey	Personnel present	Required to allow evacuation personnel to determine relative venue of approach into area. Of particular importance if hoist operation is required.

Performance Steps

1. Collect all applicable information needed for the MEDEVAC request.
 - a. Determine the grid coordinates for the pickup site. (See STP 21-1-SMCT, task 071-329-1002.)
 - b. Obtain radio frequency, call sign, and suffix.
 - c. Obtain the number of patients and precedence.
 - d. Determine the type of special equipment required.
 - e. Determine the number and type (litter or ambulatory) of patients.

Performance Steps

- f. Determine the security of the pickup site.
- g. Determine how the pickup site will be marked.
- h. Determine patient nationality and status.
- i. Obtain contamination information as a rule obtained from the senior person or medic.

Note: CBRN line 9 information is only included when contamination exists.

2. Record the gathered MEDEVAC information using the authorized brevity codes. (See table 081-831-0101-1 and table 081-831-0101-2.)

Note: Unless the MEDEVAC information is transmitted over secure communication systems, it must be encrypted, except as noted in step 3b(1).

- a. Location of the pickup site (line 1).
- b. Radio frequency, call sign, and suffix (line 2).
- c. Numbers of patients by precedence (line 3).
- d. Special equipment required (line 4).
- e. Number of patients by type (line 5).
- f. Security of the pickup site (line 6).
- g. Method of marking the pickup site (line 7).
- h. Patient nationality and status (line 8).
- i. CBRN contamination (line 9).

3. Transmit the MEDEVAC request. (See STP 21-1-SMCT, task 113-571-1022.)

- a. Contact the unit that controls the evacuation assets.
 - (1) Make proper contact with the intended receiver.
 - (2) Use effective call sign and frequency assignments from the SOI.
 - (3) Give the following in the clear "I HAVE A MEDEVAC

REQUEST," wait 1 to 3 seconds for a response. If no response, repeat the statement.

- b. Transmit the MEDEVAC information in the proper sequence.
 - (1) State all line item numbers in clear text. The call sign and suffix (if needed) in line 2 may be transmitted in the clear.

Note: Line numbers 1 through 5 must always be transmitted during the initial contact with the evacuation unit. Lines 6 through 9 may be transmitted while the aircraft or vehicle is en route.

(2) Follow the procedure provided in the explanation column of the MEDEVAC request format to transmit other required information.

(3) Pronounce letters and numbers according to appropriate radiotelephone procedures.

(4) End the transmission by stating "OVER."

(5) Keep the radio on and listen for additional instructions or contact from the evacuation unit.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Evaluate this task during a training exercise involving a MEDEVAC aircraft or vehicle, or simulate it by creating a scenario and providing the information as the Soldier requests it. You or an assistant will act as the radio contact at the evacuation unit during "transmission" of the request. Give a copy of the MEDEVAC request format to the Soldier.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier to prepare and transmit a MEDEVAC request. State that the communication net is secure.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Collected all information needed for the MEDEVAC request line items 1 through 9.	--	--
2. Recorded the information using the authorized brevity codes.	--	--
3. Transmitted the MEDEVAC request as fast as possible, following appropriate radio/telephone procedures.	--	--

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 4-02.2

171-121-4079

Send a Situation Report (SITREP)

Conditions: You are an element leader with an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO), map, overlay or sketch map with graphic control measures, and an operational vehicle. You may be digitally equipped. Your current situation requires you to send a SITREP.

Standards: Prepare a SITREP in standard format and send to the next higher element. Maintain situational awareness (SA).

Performance Steps

Note: The operational environment must be considered at all times during this task. All Army elements must be prepared to enter any environment and perform their missions while, at the same time, dealing with a wide range of unexpected threats and other influences. Units must be ready to counter these threats and influences and, at the same time, be prepared to deal with various third-party actors, such as international humanitarian relief agencies, news media, refugees, and civilians on the battlefield. These groups may or may not be hostile to us, but they can, if given a chance, affect the unit's ability to accomplish its mission.

Note: Units equipped with digital communication systems will use these systems to maximize information management, maintain SA, and minimize electronic signature.

1. Prepare a SITREP in standard format as follows:

Note: The SITREP is used to report any change since the last report, to request resupply, and to report the current location of the element; only lines or parts of lines that contain new information will be sent. It may require additional follow-up reports.

Performance Steps

Note: Apt and accurate reporting of friendly elements locations, obstacles, and contacts are essential to maintaining SA and the reduction of potential fratricide incidents.

- a. Line 1: Report as-of date time group (DTG).
- b. Line 2: Give a brief summary of enemy activity, casualties inflicted, and prisoners captured.
- c. Line 3: Provide encoded information about friendly locations using control measures or terrain index reference system (TIRS) points.
 - (1) Provide command post (CP), observation post (OP) locations, or your own location.
 - (2) Provide first sub-element(s) center of mass.
 - (3) Provide second sub-element(s) center of mass.
 - (4) Provide third sub-element(s) center of mass.
 - (5) Provide locations for any additional elements as necessary.
- d. Line 4: Provide encoded information on the operational status of combat vehicles.
 - e. Line 5: Provide encoded information about defensive obstacles.
 - (1) Give type and coordinates of obstacles, list as—
 - (a) MF (minefield).
 - (b) TD (tank ditch).
 - (c) AB (abatis).
 - (d) CW (concertina wire).
 - (2) Give type and coordinates of executed demolition targets.
 - (3) Give type and coordinates of reserved demolition targets.
 - f. Line 6: Compute percentage and assign the following color codes to indicate personnel strength:

Note: Commander's guidance or unit standing operating procedure (SOP) may vary about reporting percentages.

- (1) GREEN: Full strength (90 percent or more fit for duty).
 - (2) AMBER: Reduced strength (80 to 89 percent fit for duty).
 - (3) RED: Reduced strength (60 to 79 percent fit for duty; the vehicle and crew are mission capable).
 - (4) BLACK: Reduced strength (59 percent or less fit for duty).
- g. Line 7: Compute percentages and assign color codes to indicate status of Class III (petroleum, oils, and lubricants [POL]) and Class V (ammunition) supplies.
 - (1) GREEN: Full strength (90 percent or better on hand).
 - (2) AMBER: Reduced strength (80 to 89 percent on hand).
 - (3) RED: Reduced strength (60 to 79 percent on hand; the vehicle is mission capable).
 - (4) BLACK: Reduced strength (59 percent or less on hand).

Note: If an item is reported as status level BLACK on lines 6 or 7, the appropriate yellow report (logistics) must follow.

- h. Line 8: Provide a summary of tactical intentions.

Performance Steps

2. Send the SITREP to the next higher element.
3. Maintain SA.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the condition statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions and warnings to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Prepared the SITREP in standard format.	---	---
2. Sent the SITREP.	---	---
3. Maintained SA.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 6-99.2

171-121-4080

Send a Spot Report (SPOTREP)

Conditions: You are an element leader within an operational environment. You may be digitally equipped. Your current situation requires you to send a spot report (SPOTREP).

Standards: Prepare a SPOTREP in standard format and send to the next higher element.

Performance Steps

Note: The operational environment must be considered at all times during this task. All Army elements must be prepared to enter any environment and perform their missions while, at the same time, dealing with a wide range of unexpected threats and other influences. Units must be ready to counter these threats and influences and, at the same time, be prepared to deal with various third-party actors, such as international humanitarian relief agencies, news media, refugees, and civilians on the battlefield. These groups may or may not be hostile to us, but they can, if given a chance, affect the unit's ability to accomplish its mission.

Note: A spot report is a concise narrative report of essential information covering events or conditions that may have an immediate and significant effect about current planning and operations that is afforded the most expeditious means of transmission consistent with requisite security. In reconnaissance and surveillance usage, a spot report is not to be used. The format is, as a rule, established by the unit standard operating procedure.

Performance Steps

Note: Observed enemy force locations, neutral organizations, civilians, and other battlefield hazards are not always updated about Force XXI Battle Command Brigade-and-Below (FBCB2); these inputs must be updated by the observing FBCB2 operator. Battlefield handoff to adjacent elements must be coordinated to keep an accurate situational awareness (SA) of activities in your sector of responsibility.

Note: The military is fielding new digital systems to communicate. Command Post of the Future (COPF) is a system now fielded, which enables commanders to discuss and collaborate information, share ideas, and attend virtual meetings without assembling in one place.

Note: Format of the SPOTREP may change due to unit standing operating procedures (SOP).

1. Prepare SPOTREP.

- a. LINE 1 – date time group (DTG) of report submission.
- b. LINE 2 – reporting unit (unit making report).

Note: After the unit designation, the method of observation must be indicated: unaided, binoculars, infrared, thermal, night vision device (NVD), unmanned aircraft system (UAS), or other. Follow with narrative if needed.

- c. LINE 3 – size of detected element.
 - (1) Persons: military, civilian.
 - (2) Vehicles: military, civilian.
 - (3) Equipment: military, civilian
- d. LINE 4 - activity of detected element at DTG of report.

Note: The activity type or types must be indicated and an amplifying sub-type if applicable. If necessary, add a narrative to clarify, describe, or explain the type of activity.

- (1) Attacking (direction from).
 - (a) Air defense artillery (ADA) (engaging).
 - (b) Aircraft (engaging) (rotary wing [RW], fixed wing [FW]).
 - (c) Ambush (IED [exploded], IED [unexploded], sniper, anti-armor, other).
 - (d) Indirect fire (point of impact, point of origin).
 - (e) Chemical, biological, radiological or nuclear (CBRN).
 - (2) Defending (direction from).
 - (3) Moving (direction from).
 - (4) Stationary.
 - (5) Cache.
 - (6) Civilian (criminal acts, unrest, infrastructure damage).
 - (7) Personnel recovery (isolating event, observed signal).
 - (8) Other (give name and description).
- e. LINE 5 - location (universal transverse mercator [UTM] or grid coordinate with military grid reference system [MGRS] grid zone designator of detected element activity or event observed).

Performance Steps

- f. LINE 6 - unit (detected element unit, organization, or facility).

Note: The type of unit must be indicated. The organization, or facility detected. If it cannot be identified without a doubt, describe in as much detail as possible, including uniforms, vehicle markings, and other identifying information.

- (1) Conventional.
- (2) Irregular.
- (3) Coalition.
- (4) Host nation.
- (5) Nongovernmental organization (NGO).
- (6) Civilian.
- (7) Facility.

- g. LINE 7 – time (DTG of observation).

- h. LINE 8 – equipment (equipment of element observed).

Note: The equipment type or types, and amplifying sub-type if applicable, must be indicated. Add a narrative if necessary to clarify, describe, or explain the type of equipment. The nomenclature, type, and quantity of all equipment observed must be provided. If equipment cannot be identified without a doubt, describe in as much detail as possible.

- (1) ADA (missile (man-portable air defense system [MANPADS]), missile [other], gun).
- (2) Arty (gun (self-propelled [SP]), gun (towed), missile or rocket, mortar).
- (3) Armored track vehicle (tank, armored personnel carrier [APC], command and control [C2], engineer, transport, other).
- (4) Armored wheel vehicle (gun, APC, C2, engineer, transport, other).
- (5) Wheel vehicle (gun, C2, engineer, transport, other).
- (6) INF weapon (WPN) (anti-armor missile, anti-armor gun, rocket-propelled grenade [RPG], heavy [HVY] machine gun [MG], grenade launcher [GL], small arms, other).
- (7) Aircraft (RW (attack helicopter [AH]), RW (utility helicopter [UH]), RW (observation helicopter), FW (atk), FW (trans), UAS, other).
- (8) Mine or IED (buried, surface, vehicle-borne improvised explosive device [VBIED], person-borne improvised explosive device [PBIED], other).
- (9) CBRN.
- (10) Supplies (Class III, Class V, other).
- (11) Civilian.
- (12) Other.

i. LINE 9 – assessment (apparent reason for or purpose of the activity observed, and apparent threats to or opportunities for friendly forces).

- j. LINE 10 –narrative (free text for clarifying report).

Note: The actions that you have taken that are related to the detected activity: attack, withdraw, continue to observe, or other. When feasible, state potential for subsequent reports such as air support request, battle damage assessment (BDA) report, call for fire, casualty report, explosive ordinance disposal (EOD) support, or medical evacuation (MEDEVAC).

- k. LINE 11 – authentication (report authentication) per SOP.

Performance Steps

2. Send SPOTREP to next higher element.

Note: The unit SOP may have additional guidance about who receives the SPOTREP.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the condition statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions and warnings to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Prepared SPOTREP.	--	--
2. Sent SPOTREP to higher headquarters.	--	--

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 6-99.2

093-403-5030

Report Explosive Hazard (EH)

Conditions: Given an item of unexploded ordnance UXO), FM 4-30.51, binoculars, a UXO report, all necessary safety measures taken, and the status of protective works.

Standards: Complete the UXO report using all available required information and pertinent information. View the UXO from the greatest distance possible, using binoculars if necessary. Observe all safety precautions applicable to UXO.

Performance Steps

1. Report the incident. UXO reporting provides a means for the chain of command to evaluate each incident and develop plans for the effective development of the explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) detachment. Experience has shown that the most reliable method of obtaining accurate information concerning a particular incident is by means of a written report prepared at the site of the incident. The report must contain an accurate estimate of the situation made by the Soldier and must be sent by the fastest means available. Regardless of the means of communication, the information forwarded in the written report must include the following:

- a. The date and time of the fall, impact, or finding.
- b. The exact location, including streets or map reference points.

Performance Steps

- c. The name and call sign or phone number of the person reporting the incident.
- d. Identify the UXO by type (dropped, projected, thrown or placed), and by subgroup.
 - e. Any NBC contamination present.
 - f. Are any resources threatened?
 - g. Does the UXO have a bad affect on the mission? If yes, how?
 - h. The safety measures that have been taken to include evacuation of personnel or troops under cover.
 - i. The requested priority for receiving EOD/Engineer support (immediate, indirect, minor or no-threat), based upon tactical situation.
- 2. Observe all safety precautions. Do not touch or move the UXO. The slightest movement can cause the UXO to detonate. If the UXO is suspected of having a toxic chemical filler, stay upwind. Observe and evaluate the UXO from the maximum distance possible using binoculars.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Place an item of UXO on the ground in such a manner that it is visible from at least several yards away. A large item of UXO may be buried in part.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier to record as much information about the item of UXO as possible without touching it. Also, tell the Soldier that all recording and observation should be accomplished from the maximum distance possible. Brief the Soldier about any safety precautions associated with the specific UXO item.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Recorded the date and time of the fall, impact, or finding.	---	---
2. Recorded the exact location of the UXO.	---	---
3. Recorded the name and call sign or phone number of the person reporting incident.	---	---
4. Identified the type of UXO.	---	---
a. Dropped.		
b. Projected.		
c. Thrown.		
d. Placed.		
5. Recorded NBC contamination presents.	---	---

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
6. Recorded any potential threat to resources.	---	---
7. Listed how UXO has adverse affects on mission completion.	---	---
8. Listed how UXO has adverse affects on mission completion.	---	---
9. Recommended priority (immediate, indirect, minor or no-threat) based upon tactical situation.	---	---
10. Followed all safety precautions.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required: FM 4-30.51 and GTA 09-12-001

Related:

071-326-0608

Use Visual Signaling Techniques

Conditions: Given a flashlight (night only), signaling flags (mounted signals only), and a requirement to perform visual signals or identify visual signals performed by another.

Standards: Give the proper procedures for each required action.

Performance Steps

1. Ensure that the Soldiers you are signaling can see you.
2. Perform the visual signals for combat formations, battle drills, and movement techniques as follows:
 - a. Perform formation signals coil and herringbone (figure 071-326-0608-1 and figure 071-326-0608-2).

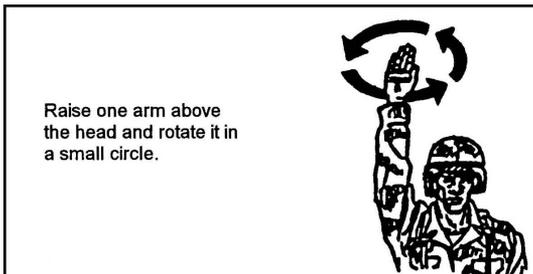


Figure 071-326-0608-1. Coil

Performance Steps

Extend the arms parallel to ground. Bend the arms until the forearms are perpendicular.



Figure 071-326-0608-2. Herringbone

b. Perform the following drill signals: contact left, contact right, action right, action left, action front (right, left, or rear), air attack, and nuclear, biological, or chemical attack (figure 071-326-0608-3 through figure 071-326-0608-9).

Extend the left arm parallel to the ground. Bend the arm until the forearm is perpendicular. Repeat.

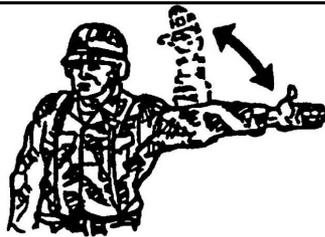


Figure 071-326-0608-3. Contact left

Extend the right arm parallel to the ground. Bend the arm until the forearm is perpendicular. Repeat.



Figure 071-326-0608-4. Contact right



Extend both arms parallel to the ground. Raise the right arm until it is overhead. Repeat.

Figure 071-326-0608-5. Action left

Performance Steps



Extend both arms parallel to the ground. Raise the left arm until it is overhead. Repeat.

Figure 071-326-0608-6. Action right



Raise the fist to shoulder level and thrust it several times in the desired direction of action.

Figure 071-326-0608-7. Action front (right, left, or rear), fight on foot, or assault fire (dismounted troops)



Bend the arms with fore-arms at a 45-degree angle. The forearms are crossed. Repeat.

Figure 071-326-0608-8. Air attack

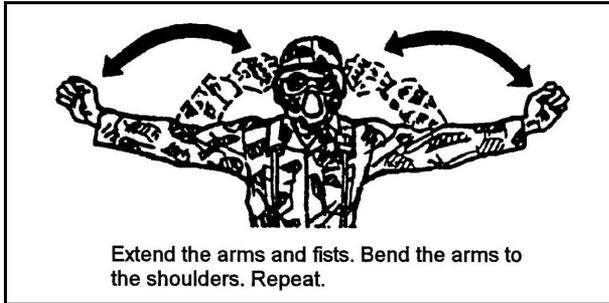


Figure 071-326-0608-9. Chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear attack

c. Perform the following movement technique signals: traveling, traveling overwatch, bounding overwatch (figure 071-326-0608-10 through figure 071-326-0608-12).

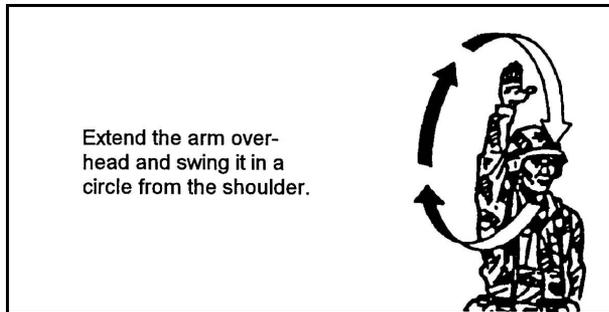


Figure 071-326-0608-10. Traveling

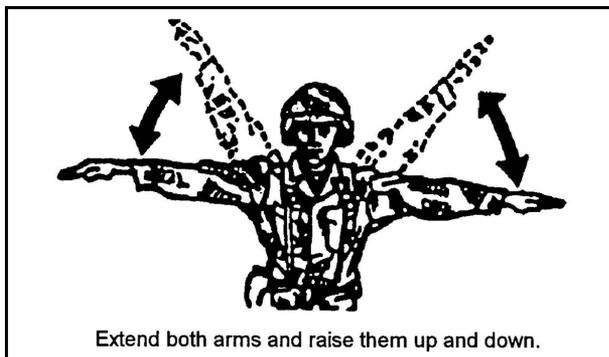


Figure 071-326-0608-11. Traveling overwatch

Performance Steps

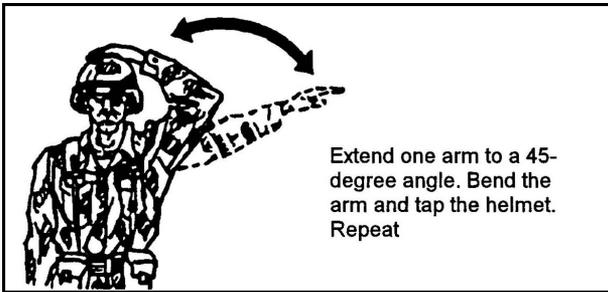


Figure 071-326-0608-12. Bounding overwatch, cover my move

d. Perform vehicle signals: move to the left, move to the right, move forward, attention, I am ready, or ready to move, are you ready, mount, disregard previous command, or as you were, I do not understand, start engine or prepare to move, halt or stop, increase speed, advance or move out, open up, close up, right or left turn, slow down, move in reverse, close distance between vehicles and stop, stop engines, dismount, neutral steer, stop, button up or unbutton, and message acknowledged (figures 071-326-0608-13 through 071-326-0608-36).

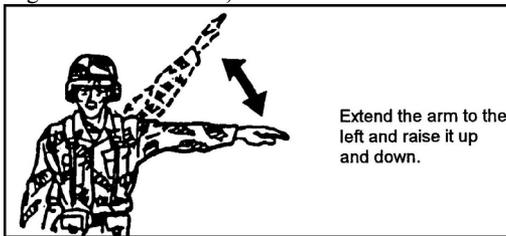


Figure 071-326-0608-13. Move to the left

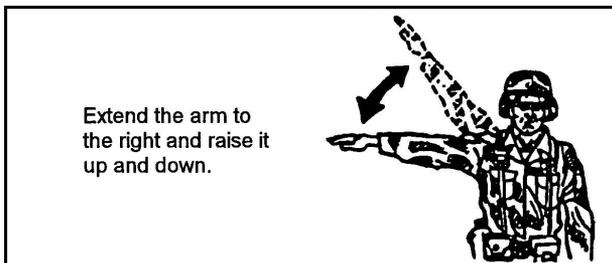


Figure 071-326-0608-14. Move to the right

Performance Steps

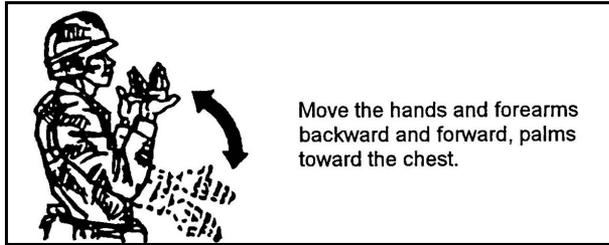


Figure 071-326-0608-15. Move forward

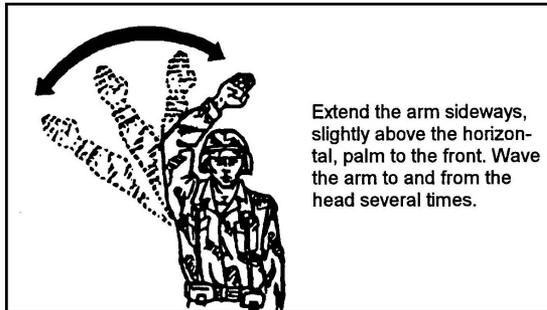


Figure 071-326-0608-16. Attention!

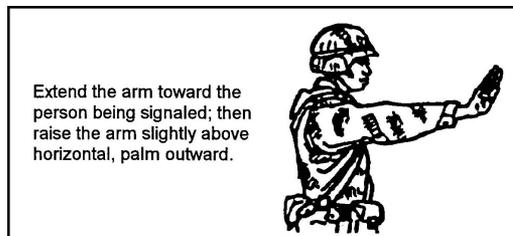


Figure 071-326-0608-17. I am ready, or ready to move, are you ready?

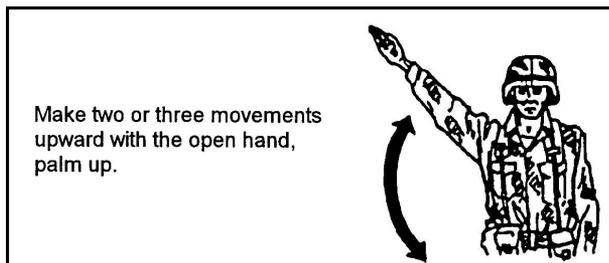


Figure 071-326-0608-18. Mount

Performance Steps

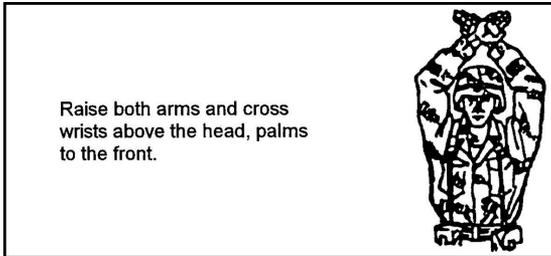


Figure 071-326-0608-19. Disregard previous command, or as you were

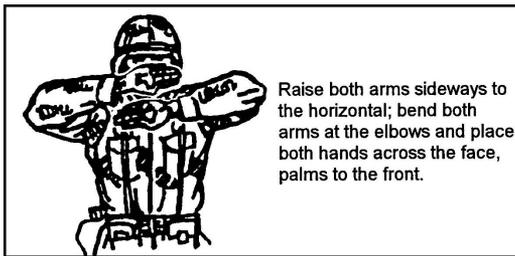


Figure 071-326-0608-20. I do not understand

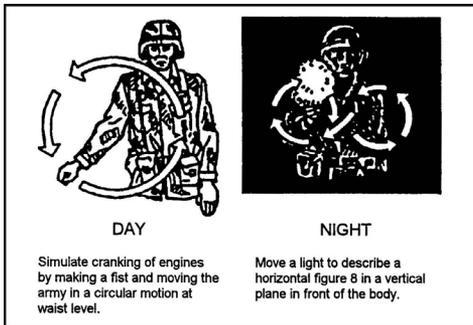


Figure 071-326-0608-21. Start engine, or prepare to move

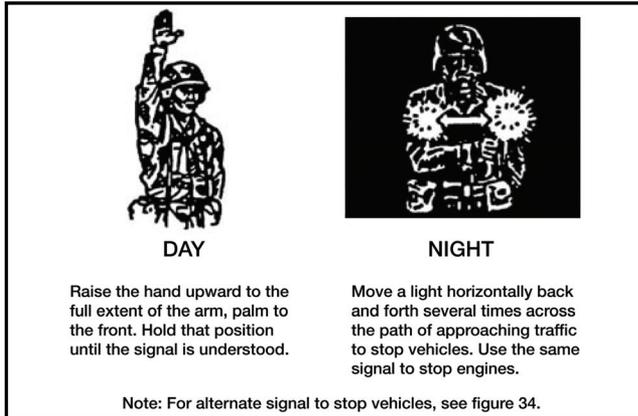


Figure 071-326-0608-22. Halt or stop

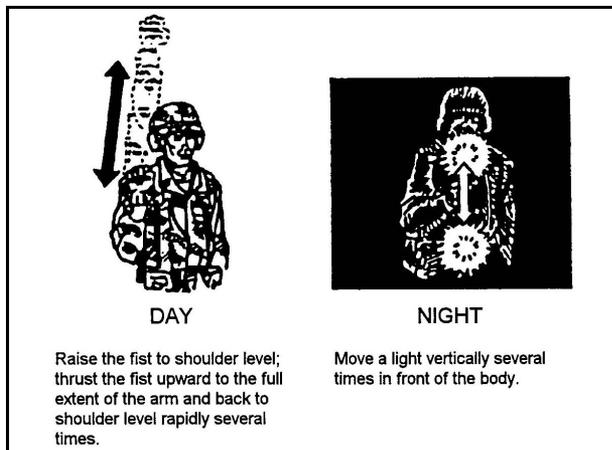


Figure 071-326-0608-23. Increase speed

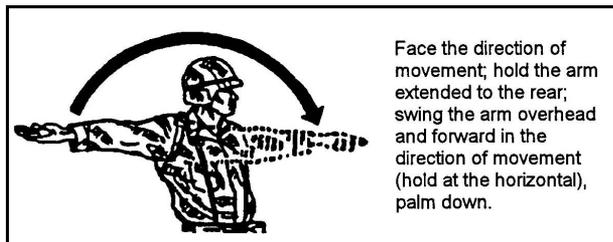


Figure 071-326-0608-24. Advance or move out

Performance Steps

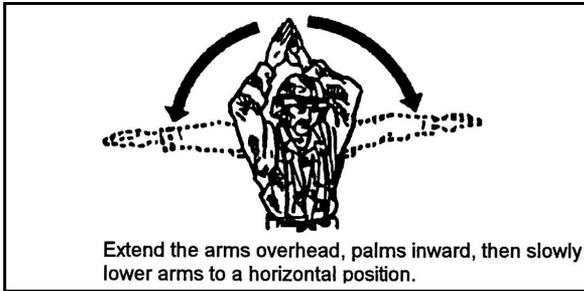


Figure 071-326-0608-25. Open up

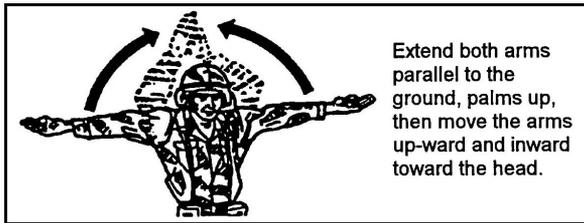


Figure 071-326-0608-26. Close up

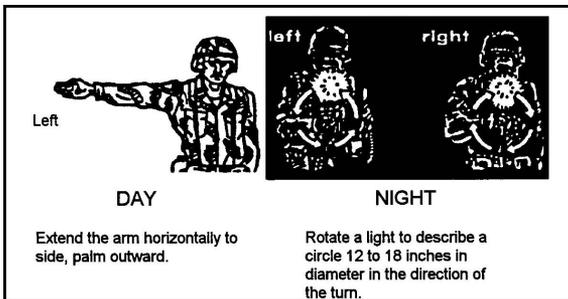


Figure 071-326-0608-27. Right or left turn

Performance Steps

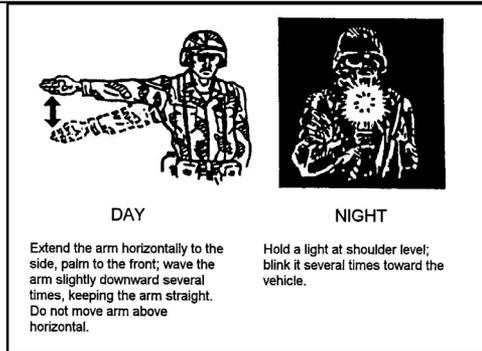


Figure 071-326-0608-28. Slow down

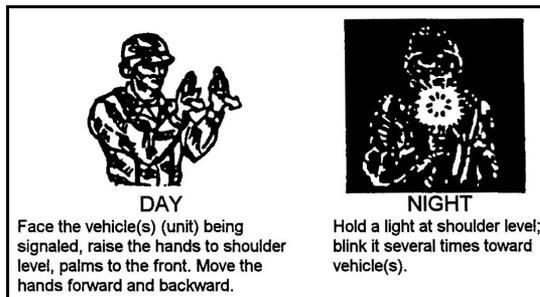


Figure 071-326-0608-29. Move in reverse (for stationary vehicles)

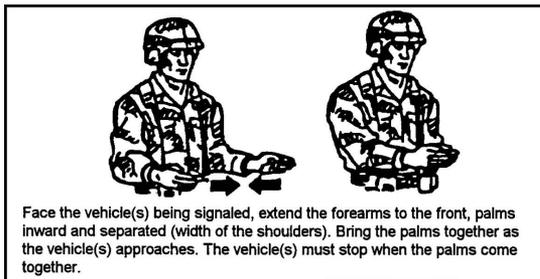


Figure 071-326-0608-30. Close distance between vehicles and stop

Performance Steps

Extend the arm parallel to the ground, hand open, and move the arm across the body in a throat-cutting action.



Figure 071-326-0608-31. Stop engines



Extend the arms, make two or three movements up and down, hands open toward ground.

Figure 071-326-0608-32. Dismount

Cross the wrists at the throat; point the index finger in direction of steer. Make a fist of the other hand.



Figure 071-326-0608-33. Neutral steer (tracked vehicles)

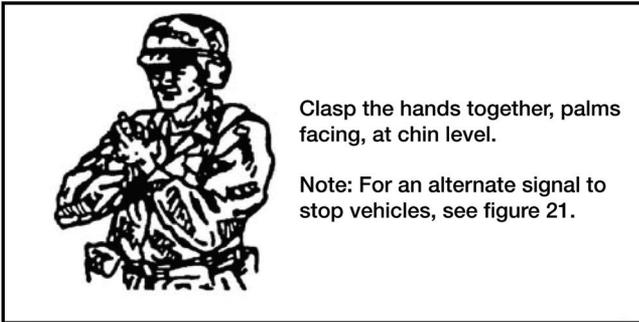


Figure 071-326-0608-34. Stop (alternate signal to stop tracked vehicle)

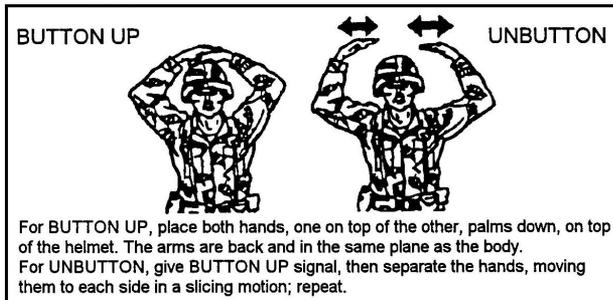


Figure 071-326-0608-35. Button up or unbutton

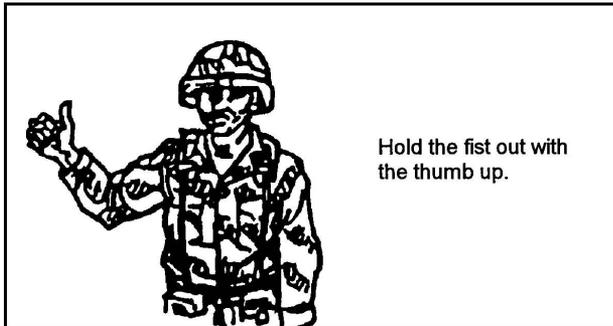


Figure 071-326-0608-36. Message acknowledged

Performance Steps

3. Perform flag signals: Single signal flag, mount or dismount, dismount and assault, assemble or close, move out, and nuclear, biological or chemical hazard present (figure 071-326-0608-37 through figure 071-326-0608-43).



Figure 071-326-0608-37. Single signal flag

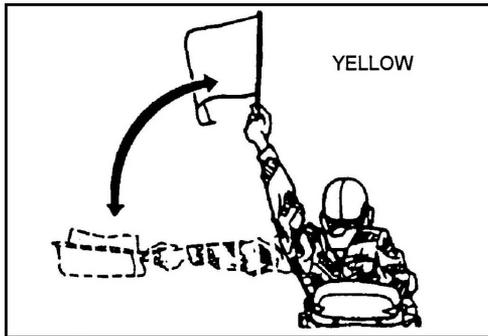


Figure 071-326-0608-38. Mount



Figure 071-326-0608-39. Dismount

Performance Steps



Figure 071-326-0608-40. Dismount and assault

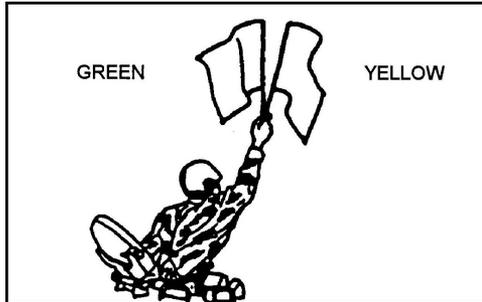


Figure 071-326-0608-41. Assemble or close

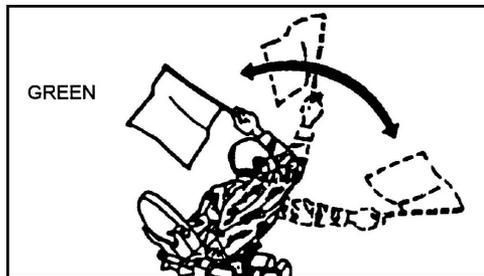


Figure 071-326-0608-42. Move out

Performance Steps

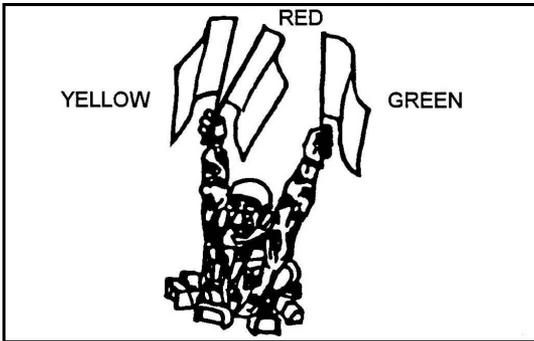


Figure 071-326-0608-43. Chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear or hazard present

Note: When used alone, flag colors have the following meanings:

- Red —danger or enemy in sight.
- Green —all clear, ready, or understood.
- Yellow —disregard or vehicle out of action.

Note: In poor visibility, you can use colored chemical lights or flashlights with colored filters in place of flags.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* At the test site, provide a set of vehicle-signaling flags and flashlight. From the signals shown in the task, pick 10 to test.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier you will give the 10 signals, and he or she must execute each one.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Executed proper formation signals.	---	---
2. Executed proper drill signals.	---	---
3. Executed proper movement technique signals.	---	---
4. Executed proper signals to control vehicle drivers and crews.	---	---
5. Executed proper flag signals.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related:

Subject Area 4: Survive

031-503-1036

Maintain Your Assigned Protective Mask

Conditions: You have used your assigned protective mask or must conduct a scheduled mask inspection. You are given your assigned protective mask (with authorized accessories and components), cleaning materials in accordance with (IAW) the applicable operator's technical manual (TM), a preventive maintenance checks and services (DA Form 2404, *Equipment Inspection and Maintenance Worksheet*) IAW Department of the Army Pamphlet (DA Pam) 750-8, mask replacement parts, and a new filter. This task cannot be performed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

Standards: Maintain your assigned protective mask by performing operator level PMCS on your protective mask IAW the PMCS table located in your mask's operator's TM, cleaning your protective mask IAW your mask's operator's TM, recording uncorrected deficiencies on DA Form 2404 IAW DA Pam 750-8, providing the completed DA Form 2404 to your supervisor for his/her review and guidance, and performing all maintenance without damaging your protective mask.

Performance Steps

WARNING

Read and adhere to all safety notes in your mask's operator's TM prior to beginning mask maintenance.

1. Inspect your protective mask, carrier, hood, and accessories according to the PMCS tables located in your mask's operator's TM.
 - a. Identify deficiencies and shortcomings.
 - b. Correct operator level deficiencies.
 - c. Record all uncorrected deficiencies and shortcomings about DA Form 2404 IAW DA Pam 750-8, and report them to your supervisor.
2. Clean and dry the mask, hood, and authorized accessories and components IAW your mask's operator's TM.
3. Store the mask, hood, and accessories in the carrier according to your mask's operator's TM.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* A good time to evaluate this task is during normal care and cleaning of the mask. Place the required equipment on a field table or another suitable surface. Simulate defects in the mask by removing components from the mask or using a defective

mask not issued to the Soldier. During training and evaluation sessions, use an old set of filters or canister several times to avoid expending new ones each time. If the Soldier has not made adequate progress towards completing the task within 30 minutes, stop him and give him a NO GO. This time standard is administrative.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier there is no time standard for this task on the job, but for testing purposes he must perform the task within 30 minutes. Tell him to perform operator level PMCS on the mask, clean his assigned protective mask, and replace the mask filter. Tell the Soldier that finishing DA Form 2404 IAW DA Pam 750-8 is not part of the task.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Performed operator level PMCS on protective mask IAW the PMCS table located in the mask's operator's TM.	---	---
2. Cleaned the protective mask IAW the mask's operator's TM.	---	---
3. Recorded uncorrected deficiencies on a DA Form 2404 IAW DA PAM 750-8.	---	---
4. Provided the completed DA Form 2404 to his/her supervisor for his/her review and guidance.	---	---
5. Performed all maintenance without damaging the protective mask.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required: DA Form 2404, DA Pam 750-8, and TM 3-4240-279-10

Related: TM 3-4240-312-12&P, TM 3-4240-342-10, TM 3-4240-346-10, and TM 3-4240-348-10

031-503-1035

Protect Yourself from Chemical and Biological (CB) Contamination Using Your Assigned Protective Mask

Conditions: You are given your assigned protective mask with a hood and carrier, a canteen with an M1 cap, and M8 detector paper. You find yourself in one of the following situations:

1. You hear or see a C/B agent and/or unknown toxic industrial chemical attack/spill.
2. You realize, through other means, that you are under a C/B agent and/or toxic industrial chemical attack.
3. You are ordered to mask.
4. You must enter a contaminated area.
5. After having donned your protective mask, you need to drink from your canteen.

SPECIAL CONDITIONS

Do not wear contact lenses when performing this task. Do not use masks with damaged filters because certain models contain hazardous materials. Do not change the filter elements in a contaminated environment.

Standards: Protect yourself from C/B agent and/or unknown toxic industrial chemical contamination using your assigned protective mask; and don, clear, and check your mask within 9 seconds. Drink water through your protective mask from your canteen without becoming a casualty.

Note: The mask gives you immediate protection against traditional warfare agents. The mask may not be adequate to protect you from certain toxic industrial chemicals, but it provides the best available protection to enable you to evacuate the hazard area. You may be required to evacuate to a minimum safe distance of at least 300 meters upwind from the contamination (if possible) or as directed by the commander.

Performance Steps

Note: You must complete steps 1 through 4 within 9 seconds.

1. Don the mask.
 - a. Stop breathing, and close your eyes.
 - b. Remove your helmet, and put your helmet between your legs (above your knees) or hold your rifle between your legs and place your helmet on the muzzle. If you drop your helmet, continue to mask.
 - c. Take off your glasses, if applicable.
 - d. Open the mask carrier with one hand.
 - e. Grasp the mask assembly with your other hand, and remove it from the carrier.
 - f. Put your chin in the chin pocket, and press the facepiece tight against your face.

Note: The temple and forehead straps have already been adjusted during fitting.

- g. Grasp the tab, and pull the head harness over your head. Ensure that your ears are between the temple straps and the cheek straps. Ensure that the head harness is pulled far enough over your head so that the forehead straps are tight.
 - h. Grasp the tab, and pull the head harness over your head. Ensure that your ears are between the temple straps and the cheek straps. Ensure that the head harness is pulled far enough over your head so that the forehead straps are tight.
2. Clear the mask.
 - a. Seal the outlet valve by pushing in on the center of the outlet valve cover with one hand.
 - b. Blow out hard to ensure that any contaminated air is forced out around the edges of the facepiece.

Performance Steps

3. Check the mask.

- a. Cover the inlet port of the filter canister or the inlet port of the armor quick disconnect with the palm of your hand, and inhale.
- b. Ensure that the facepiece collapses against your face and remains so while you hold your breath, which indicates that the mask is airtight.
- c. Remove any hair, clothing, or other matter between your face and the mask if the facepiece does not collapse to your face.
- d. Notify your chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) noncommissioned officer (NCO) if the mask still does not collapse.

4. Resume breathing.

Note: There are no time standards for donning the hood.

5. Secure the mask hood.

CAUTION

Be careful when pulling on the hood because it could snag and tear on the buckles of the head harness.

- a. If you have the M42-, or M43-series protective mask, pull the hood over your head and zip the front closed to cover all bare skin.
- b. If you have the M45-series protective mask, pull the M7 hood over your helmet and head so that the hood covers your shoulders.
- c. If you have the M40-series protective mask, don the hood so that it lies well on your head.
 - (1) For masks equipped with the regular hood—
 - (a) Grasp the back edge of the hood skirt.
 - (b) Pull the hood over your head so that it covers all of your head, including the back of your head, neck, and shoulders.
 - (c) Zip the front of the hood closed by pulling the zipper slider downward.
 - (d) Tighten the draw cord.
 - (e) Secure the underarm straps by fastening and adjusting them.
 - (f) Close your mask carrier.
 - (g) Continue your mission.
 - (2) For masks equipped with the quick-doff hood—
 - (a) Place your hands inside the hood and expand the elastic gathering around the neck of the hood.
 - (b) Stretch and pull the hood over your head with care so that the hood covers your head, neck, and shoulders.
 - (c) Fasten the underarm straps.
 - (d) Put on the helmet.

Performance Steps

Note: If you have a combat vehicle crewman (CVC) helmet, perform the following steps: (1) Disconnect the boom microphone from the helmet. (2) Connect the mask microphone to the receptacle in the helmet. (3) Grasp the helmet next to the ear cups with your hand, and spread the helmet as far as possible. (4) Place the helmet over your head, tilting the helmet forward a little so that the first contact when putting it on is with the forehead surface of the mask. (5) Rotate the helmet back and down over your head until it is seated in position.

- (e) Close your mask carrier.
- (f) Continue your mission.

Note: If the Soldier is using the mask in conjunction with the joint-service, lightweight integrated suit technology (JSLIST), he/she skips this step (the mask lacks a hood because it is built in on the JSLIST).

6. Drink water while wearing the mask (only applies to masks equipped with a drinking tube).

WARNING

Do not connect the quick-disconnect coupling to your canteen until all surfaces are free of contamination. Chemical contamination could enter your mouth, and you could become a casualty.

Do not break the mask seal while drinking from the canteen.

- a. Press in on the top of the outlet valve cover until the internal drink tube can be grasped between your teeth.
- b. Steady the mask assembly, and pull the quick-disconnect coupling out of the outlet valve cover.
- c. Flip open the cover on the M1 canteen cap.
- d. Push the quick-disconnect coupling into the canteen cap so that the pin enters the quick-disconnect coupling.

WARNING

If resistance is not felt, your drinking system is leaking. Do not drink. Replace your canteen. If resistance is still not felt, notify your CBRN NCO.

- e. Blow to create positive pressure. You should feel some resistance.

WARNING

Do not tilt your head back while drinking.

- f. Raise the canteen upside down and drink if the system does not leak.
 - g. Stop drinking after several swallows, and lower the canteen. Blow into the internal drink tube to prevent the canteen from collapsing. Repeat the drinking procedure as required.
7. Remove the mask for storage.
8. Perform all steps in sequence without becoming a casualty.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Evaluate this task during a field exercise or a tactical training session. Use a mask earlier fitted to the Soldier's face. The Soldier will bring his/her flight or CVC helmet. The Soldier should be in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP4). Do not use a new decontamination kit for every Soldier; use the kit as long as possible. Ensure that the Soldier has M8 detector paper in the mask carrier before testing. If the Soldier has not made adequate progress towards drinking from the canteen after 2 minutes, stop him/her and give a NO GO. This time standard is administrative.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier to stand, while wearing his/her mask carrier containing his/her assigned protective mask with the hood attached. Provide the Soldier with one of the scenarios described in the conditions statement (cue to begin masking). Tell the Soldier to keep the mask on until you issue the all clear order. Tell the Soldier that all time standards are only for administrative (noncombat) evaluation purposes. Tell the Soldier to drink water while wearing his/her assigned mask.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Completed steps 1 through 4 in sequence within 9 seconds.	---	---
2. Donned the mask.	---	---
3. Cleared the mask.	---	---
4. Checked the mask.	---	---
5. Resumed breathing.	---	---
6. Secured the mask hood.	---	---
7. Drank water while wearing the mask.	---	---
8. Removed the mask for storage.	---	---
9. Performed all steps in sequence without becoming contaminated.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required: FM 3-11.3, TM 3-4240-279-10, TM 3-4240-280-10,
 TM 3-4240-300-10-2, TM 3-4240-346-10,
 TM 3-4240-542-13&P

Related: TM 3-4240-312-12&P

031-503-1019

React to Chemical or Biological (CB) Hazard/Attack

Conditions: You are in a tactical environment where the threat of an attack or exposure to chemical or biological agents (toxic industrial or conventional warfare) is high. You are given mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear, individual decontamination kits, and M8 and M9 chemical agent detector paper. You may also be given eye protection, an Army combat helmet (ACH), an improved outer tactical vest (IOTV), and deltoid auxiliary protectors (DAPs). You are now in MOPP 0, and one of the following automatic-masking situations occurs:

1. A chemical alarm sounds.
2. A positive reading is obtained on detector paper.
3. Individuals exhibit symptoms of CB agent poisoning, such as difficulty breathing, coughing, wheezing, vomiting, or eye irritation.
4. You observe a spill or cloud of unknown material(s).
5. You react to an improvised explosive device (IED) explosion where you suspect the release of a CB agent.
6. You observe a contamination marker.
7. Your supervisor orders you to mask.
8. You observe personnel wearing protective masks.
9. You observe other signs of a possible CB agent hazard/attack.

Standards: React to a CB agent hazard or attack without becoming a casualty. Don your protective mask within 9 seconds. Notify your supervisor of identified or possible contamination. Start the steps to decontaminate yourself within 1 minute of finding contamination. After decontaminating yourself all over, assume MOPP 4 unless directed to a lower MOPP level. Decontaminate your individual equipment using the decontaminating kit, as necessary, and continue the mission.

Performance Steps

1. Identify the CB hazard automatic-masking criteria.
 - a. Don your protective mask without thought when any of the following situations occur:
 - (1) A chemical alarm sounds.
 - (2) A positive reading is obtained on detector paper.
 - (3) Individuals exhibit symptoms of CB agent poisoning, such as difficulty breathing, coughing, wheezing, vomiting, or eye irritation.
 - (4) You observe a spill or cloud of unknown material(s).
 - (5) You react to an IED explosion where you suspect the release of a CB agent.
 - (6) You observe a contamination marker.
 - (7) Your supervisor orders you to mask.

Performance Steps

(8) You observe personnel wearing protective masks.

(9) You observe other signs of a possible CB agent hazard/attack.

- b. Respond to the commander's policy of automatic masking.

Note: Commanders at all levels may establish a modified policy by designating additional criteria for automatic masking.

2. Protect yourself from CB contamination by using your assigned protective mask without fastening the hood.

Note: The mask provides protection against conventional warfare agents; however, the mask will provide little if any protection from toxic industrial materials (TIMs), but it provides the best available protection to enable you to evacuate the hazard area. You may be required to evacuate to a minimum safe distance of at least 300 meters upwind from the contamination (if possible) or as directed by the commander.

3. Give the alarm.

- a. Shout, "Gas, Gas, Gas."
- b. Give the appropriate hand-and-arm signal.
- c. Hit two metal objects together.

4. Take cover and/or assemble as directed, moving at least 300 meters upwind from the suspected contamination area to reduce exposure.

5. Decontaminate exposed skin using the individual decontaminating kit as necessary.

6. Cover all exposed skin and assume MOPP 4 as directed.

Note: This step is graded only if MOPP is available.

Note: If you are wearing an ACH, IOTV, or DAPs, proceed to performance step 6e.

- a. Don the overgarment trousers.
- b. Don the overgarment coat.
- c. Don the overboots.

Note: Combat boots provide limited protection. Cover them as soon as possible because they absorb chemicals. (It takes a long time to put on the overboots, in an emergency, put them on last.)

- d. Don the protective gloves.

Note: Perform performance steps 6e through 6k only if wearing ACH, IOTV, or DAPs.

- e. Remove the ACH and protective eyewear.
- f. Loosen the DAP.
- g. Remove the IOTV by opening the medical access hook and pile closure and loosening the left shoulder adjustment strap.

WARNING

When removing the IOTV over the head. Take care not to snag the filter canister and break the seal of your protective mask.

h. Perform performance steps 6a through 6d, and then proceed to performance step 6i.

i. Don the IOTV by tightening the left shoulder adjustment strap and fastening the medical access hook and pile closure.

Performance Steps

- j. Secure the DAP.
 - k. Don the ACH.
7. Decontaminate your individual equipment using your individual equipment decontamination kit, as necessary.
 8. Notify your supervisor of any suspected CB hazard/attack.
 9. Continue the mission and perform any additional requirements as outlined in your unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).

Note:

1. Use all means of CB detection to check your surrounding area for the presence of contamination.
2. Contact your higher headquarters if you find contamination or if you determine that the attack was non-CB related.
3. Await further guidance. The higher headquarters contacts all adjacent/attached units to check the status of CB contamination in their areas. All units will report the absence or presence of contamination to the chain of command.
4. Annotate the above actions on your duty log (DA Form 1594, *Daily Staff Journal or Duty Officer's Log*).

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* A good time to evaluate this task is during a field exercise when a variety of CB hazards can be simulated. Select a site with adequate cover, and ensure that Soldiers have their assigned protective mask.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier that there will be an encounter with simulated CB agents and/or a CB alarm will be given.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Identified automatic-masking criteria.	--	--
a. Stopped breathing.		
b. Put on mask with hood.		
c. Cleared mask.		
d. Checked mask.		
e. Did not fasten the hood.		
f. Went at once to the next step.		
2. Donned protective mask without fastening the hood within 9 seconds.	--	--
a. Vocally.		
b. Used arm and hand signals.		

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
3. Gave the alarm.	---	---
4. Took cover and/or assembled as directed. Moved at least 300 meters upwind from the suspected contamination area to reduce exposure. <i>Note:</i> The Soldier is evaluated about decontaminating him or herself. The actual conduct of decontamination is evaluated in task 031-503-1013.	---	---
5. Decontaminated exposed skin as necessary within 1 minute of finding the contamination. <i>Note:</i> The Soldier is evaluated on assuming MOPP 4. The actual donning of MOPP gear is evaluated in task 031-503-1040.	---	---
6. Covered all exposed skin and assumed MOPP 4 as directed.	---	---
7. Decontaminated individual equipment as necessary.	---	---
8. Notified the supervisor of any CB hazard/attacks.	---	---
9. Continued the mission.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: DA Form 1594, FM 3-11.4 (FM 3-4), FM 3-11.5, TM 3-4230-229-10, and TM 3-4230-235-10

031-503-1040

Protect Yourself from CBRN Injury/Contamination with the JSLIST Chemical-Protective Ensemble

Conditions: You are given the joint-service, lightweight, integrated suit (JSLIST) chemical-protective ensemble consisting of JSLIST overgarments (coat and trousers), JSLIST compatible protective mask, JSLIST compatible footwear covers, and JSLIST compatible protective gloves; Field Manual (FM) 3-11.4; Technical Manual (TM) 10-8415-220-10; and skin exposure reduction paste against chemical warfare agents (SERPACWA). You are directed to assume mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) level 4, or you are in a situation where you must, without thought, react to a chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) hazard.

Standards: Protect yourself from CBRN injury/contamination with the JSLIST chemical protective ensemble by—

- (1) Performing before preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) according to TM 10-8415-220-10.
- (2) Applying SERPACWA if command-directed.
- (3) Assuming MOPP levels 1 through 4 in order within 8 minutes.
- (4) Doffing the JSLIST ensemble.
- (5) Performing after PMCS.
- (6) Repackaging the JSLIST.

Performance Steps

1. Perform before PMCS on the JSLIST.

a. New garment, first use.

- (1) Remove the coat or trousers from the factory vacuum-sealed bag.

Note: Coat and trousers packaging includes resealable bags. Store bags in trousers pockets and retain for reuse in repackaging the JSLIST.

- (2) Perform before PMCS according to table 2-1 located in TM 10-8415-220-10.

(3) Mark the label with the date that the garment was removed from the package.

b. Used garment.

- (1) Remove the coat or trousers from the clear plastic, resealable bag.

(2) Check the wear date marked on the labels. If more than 120 days have elapsed since this date, replace the coat or trousers with new coat or trousers.

Note: To conserve chemical protective overgarment assets, any used JSLIST overgarment coat or trouser that has exceeded the 120-day period may be used as a training only item (the words TRAINING ONLY must be stenciled 2.5 inches high or larger on the outside of a sleeve or leg of the item, in a contrasting colored permanent ink).

2. Apply SERPACWA (if command-directed).

Note: SERPACWA is intended for use prior to exposure to chemical warfare agent (CWA) and only in conjunction with the JSLIST chemical protective ensemble.

WARNING

SERPACWA is for military and external use only. Do not apply to the eyes or to mucous membranes. This product, its packaging, and clothing or other materials exposed to SERPACWA should not be destroyed by burning due to the release of toxic fumes. Smoking should be avoided, be sure to avoid getting SERPACWA on smoking products. Be sure to clean hands before handling smoking products.

a. Before you assume MOPP level 1, use a dry towel to wipe off sweat, insect repellent, camouflage paint, sand, or dirt from your skin at the areas shown on the packet label.

Performance Steps

b. Tear open the packet and squeeze about one-third of the pouch into the palm of your hand and rub it even around the wrists (site 1), neck (site 2), and boot tops of lower legs (site 3) until it forms a difficult to notice white film.

c. Remove the remaining two-thirds of the SERPACWA from the pouch and rub it even in your armpits (site 4), groin area (site 5), and waistline (site 6).

d. After SERPACWA is applied, if exposure to CWA is either confirmed or suspected, follow the appropriate protocol for decontamination.

e. For removal of SERPACWA in the absence of exposure to CWA, scrub the sites with a dry towel or, if possible, with a cloth using both soap and water.

3. Apply SERPACWA (if command-directed).

a. Assume MOPP level 1.

(1) Don the JSLIST overgarment trousers.

(a) Extend your toes downward, put one leg into the trousers, and pull them up. Repeat the procedure for your other leg.

(b) Close the slide fastener, and fasten the two fly opening snaps.

(c) Pull the suspenders over your shoulders, and fasten the snap couplers. Adjust the suspenders to ensure that the trousers have a comfortable fit.

Note: The trouser length can be adjusted by raising or lowering the suspenders.

(d) Adjust the waistband hook-and-pile fasteners for a snug fit.

(2) Don the JSLIST overgarment coat.

(a) Don the coat, and close the slide fastener up as far as your chest.

(b) Secure the front closure hook-and-pile fasteners up as far as your chest.

(c) Pull the bottom of the coat down over the trousers. Pull the loop out and away from the overgarment coat, and bring it forward between the legs. Pull on the loop until the bottom of the coat fits tight over the trousers.

b. Assume MOPP level 2.

(1) Don the overboots.

(a) Don the overboots (multipurpose overboots/black vinyl overboots/green vinyl overboots [MULO/BVO/GVO]) over the combat boots. Adjust and secure the strap-and-buckle fasteners.

(b) Pull the trouser legs over the overboots (MULO/BVO/GVO).

Secure the hook-and-pile fasteners on each ankle to fit tight around the boot.

Note: If the MULO's are not available, use BVO or GVO.

c. Assume MOPP level 3 by donning chemical-protective mask IAW task 031-503-1035.

d. Assume MOPP level 4.

(1) Don the gloves.

(a) Push the sleeve cuffs up your arm.

(b) Put on the gloves and glove liners (inserts).

(c) Pull the sleeve cuffs over the top of the gloves, and secure the hook-and-pile fastener tape tight on each wrist.

Performance Steps

4. Do off the JSLIST chemical protective ensemble.
 - a. Do off the gloves.
 - (1) Unfasten the hook-and-pile fastener tape on each wrist, and remove the gloves (and liners if butyl rubber gloves are worn).
 - (2) Put the gloves in the trouser pockets.
 - b. Untie the bow in the coat retention cord, unfasten the webbing strip snap, and release the coat retention cord loop.
 - c. Do off the helmet and cover, if worn.
 - d. Do off the hood from the JSLIST coat.
 - (1) Unfasten the barrel locks.
 - (2) Loosen the hood.
 - (3) Unfasten the hook-and-pile fastener tape at your neck.
 - (4) Pull the hood off your head.
 - e. Take off the protective mask, stow it in the carrier, remove the carrier, and place on an uncontaminated surface.
 - f. Do off the overboots.
 - (1) Unfasten the ankle hook-and-pile fastener tapes.
 - (2) Unfasten the two strap-and-buckle fasteners on the MULO.
 - (3) Remove the MULO.
 - g. Do off the JSLIST coat.
 - (1) Unfasten the front closure flap hook-and-pile fastener tape and the front slide fastener.
 - (2) Remove the coat.
 - h. Do off the JSLIST trousers.
 - (1) Unfasten the suspender and waist hook-and-pile fastener tapes.
 - (2) Unfasten the front closure snaps, and open the slide fastener.
 - (3) Remove the JSLIST trousers.
5. Perform after PMCS inspections according to table 2-1 and paragraph 3-2 in TM 10-8415-220-10.
6. Repackage the JSLIST.
 - a. Remove the clear plastic, resealable bags from the trousers pocket.
 - b. Fold and repack the coat and trousers in individual clear plastic, resealable bags.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the items listed in the task conditions statement. Evaluate this task during a field exercise or during a normal training session. Ensure that adequate amounts of serviceable JSLIST ensembles are present or that the evaluated Soldier(s) bring their JSLIST ensemble to the evaluation site. The evaluator must be prepared to direct higher MOPP levels at once as a Soldier reaches a preceding level.

Brief Soldier: Read the action, conditions, and standards to the Soldier.

Tell the Soldier to complete before PMCS and to inform you of any faults found with the suit (for example, the draw cord is unserviceable, and so forth). After the before PMCS has been completed, inform the Soldier that MOPP levels 1 through 4 must be achieved in sequence and that the time limit for achieving MOPP level 4 is 8 minutes. Ensure that the Soldier informs you as each MOPP level is obtained (for example, "I am now at MOPP level 1."). For performance measures or parts of performance measures requiring the Soldier to state an answer, lead the Soldier with an appropriate question (for example, "When would you put SERPACWA on?", or "What do you use the clear plastic, resealable bags for?").

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Performed Before PMCS in accordance with TM 10-8415-220-10. Soldier stated that the coat and trouser labels are annotated with the date in permanent ink in accordance with unit SOP.	---	---
2. Stated that if command-directed, SERPACWA is applied in accordance with the package instructions.	---	---
3. Donned the JSLIST chemical protective ensemble, in MOPP level 1 through 4 sequence, within 8 minutes.	---	---
4. Doffed the JSLIST chemical protective ensemble.	---	---
5. Performed After PMCS in accordance with TM 10-8415-220-10. Soldier stated that the coat and trouser labels are annotated in permanent ink with the days of wear, and the number of times they had been laundered in accordance with unit SOP.	---	---
6. Stated that after the JSLIST overgarment has been used, that the clear-plastic resealable bags are removed from the JSLIST trouser pocket, and the JSLIST coat and trousers are placed in them and resealed.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required: TM 10-8415-220-10

Related:

031-503-1013

Decontaminate Yourself and Individual Equipment Using Chemical Decontaminating Kits

Conditions: You are at mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) level

2. You are given Technical Manual (TM) 3-4230-229-10, TM 3-4230-235-10, TM 3-6505-001-10, a chemical protective mask, chemical

protective gloves, chemical protective overboots, a full canteen of water, a poncho, load-bearing equipment (LBE) or load-bearing vest, and decontaminating kit(s). Your skin and eyes have been exposed to chemical agents, or you have passed through a chemically contaminated area and suspect that you have contamination on your skin.

Standards: Decontaminate yourself and your individual equipment using the chemical decontaminating kits. Start the steps to decontaminate your skin and eyes within 1 minute after contamination. Decontaminate your exposed skin and eyes, as necessary, before chemical-agent symptoms occur. Decontaminate all individual equipment after decontaminating your skin and eyes.

Performance Steps

Note: For training purposes, use the Training RSDL.

1. Assume MOPP level 3 without securing the hook-and-pile fastener tape or draw cord on the integrated hood.

Note: If the reactive skin decontaminating lotion (RSDL) is not available, use the M291 (skip to performance step 3).

Note: For training purposes, use the training RSDL.

2. Decontaminate your skin using the RSDL.

WARNING

Under no circumstances should the training RSDL be used in place of the RSDL during actual combat operations. The training lotion does not contain active ingredients.

WARNING

Do not mix RSDL with solid, undiluted high-test hypochlorite (HTH) or super tropical bleach (STB). Heat and/or fire may result.

WARNING

Avoid contact with eyes and wounds. If contact with eyes or wounds occur, rinse with water as soon as possible.

- a. Semiautomatic mode.

- (1) Remove one RSDL packet from your carrying pouch.
- (2) Tear it open fast at any notch.
- (3) Remove the applicator pad from the packet, and save the packet as the remaining lotion can be added to the applicator pad, if required.
- (4) Scrub the exposed skin of your hand, palm, and fingers in detail with the applicator pad.

Note: The applicator pad can be used from either side and may be gripped in any manner allowing the applicator pad to be applied to the skin.

Performance Steps

(5) Switch the applicator pad to the other hand, and repeat the procedure.

Note:

1. Do not discard the applicator pad at this time.
2. If you were masked with your hood secured when you became contaminated, stop. Put on your protective gloves, and proceed to step 2b.
3. If you were not masked with the hood secured when you became contaminated, continue decontaminating the exposed skin.

DANGER

Death or injury may result if you breathe toxic agents while doing the following steps. If you need to breathe before you finish, reseal your mask, clear it, check it, get your breath, and then resume the decontaminating procedure.

(6) Stop breathing, close eyes, grasp mask beneath chin and pull mask away from chin enough to allow one hand between the mask and your face. Hold the mask in this position during steps 2a(7) through 2a(13).

(7) Scrub the exposed skin of your face with lotion in detail from the applicator pad.

(8) Scrub in detail across your forehead.

(9) Beginning at one side, scrub up and down across your cheeks, nose, chin, and closed mouth. Avoid ingesting.

(10) Scrub under the chin from the ear along the jawbone to the other ear to coat your skin with lotion.

CAUTION

Do not apply lotion to the lens of the protective mask. The RSDL may cause loss of transparency.

(11) Turn your hand over and scrub the inside surfaces of the mask that may touch your skin. Be sure to include the drinking tube.

(12) Keep the applicator.

(13) Seal your mask at once, clear it, and check it.

(14) Use the applicator and any remaining lotion in the packet. Without breaking the mask seal, scrub the applicator pad across the forehead, exposed scalp, the skin of the neck, ears, and throat.

(15) Secure the hood.

(16) Scrub your hands in detail with lotion again as in steps 2a(4) through 2a(5).

(17) Assume MOPP level 4 by putting on protective gloves

WARNING

Do not discard the RSDL packaging or applicator pads into containers that contain HTH or STB. Heat and/or fire may result.

Performance Steps

- b. Use any remaining lotion to spot decontaminate weapons, personal equipment, and canteen cap that may have become contaminated.
- c. Allow RSDL to remain on skin for at least 2 minutes to destroy the chemical agent.
- d. Discard the used packet(s) and applicator pad(s) by leaving them in place.

Note: Do not put used packets in your pockets. Discard the carrying pouch after using the packets.

- e. Remove the decontaminating lotion with soap and water when operational conditions permit, such as an "All Clear" directive or after detailed troop decontamination.

Note: Upon completion of training and evaluation, ensure that Soldiers have adequate mask cleaning supplies and water to clean training RSDL off their protective mask.

- 3. Decontaminate your skin using the M291 decontaminating kit.

CAUTION

The M291 decontaminating kit is for external use only. Keep decontaminating powder out of your eyes and out of any cuts or wounds. The decontaminating powder may irritate your skin or eyes.

DANGER

Death or injury may result if you breathe toxic agents while decontaminating your face. If you need to breathe before you finish, reseal your mask, clear it, check it, get your breath, and then resume the decontaminating procedure.

CAUTION

If your face has been contaminated, use water to wash the toxic agent out of your eyes, cuts, or wounds.

Note: After decontaminating with water, cover exposed cuts or wounds with appropriate first aid wrap or bandages before handling the decontaminating kit.

CAUTION

Do not handle or hold leaking packets above your head. Do not touch or rub your eyes, lips, or the inside of your mouth with anything that has been in contact with the decontaminating powder.

CAUTION

Do not attempt to decontaminate a loaded weapon. Always unload and clear the weapon and place the weapon on safe before starting decontaminating procedures. Immediate decontaminating techniques remove only the liquid hazard. Certain items may still present a vapor hazard. See your supervisor for unmasking procedures.

- a. Decontaminate your hands and face and the inside of your mask.
 - (1) Remove one skin decontamination packet from your carrying pouch.
 - (2) Tear it open fast at the notch.

Performance Steps

- (3) Remove the applicator pad from the packet, and discard the empty packet.
- (4) Unfold the applicator pad, and slip your finger(s) into the handle.
- (5) Scrub the back of your hand, palm, and fingers until they are covered over with black powder from the applicator pad.
- (6) Switch the applicator pad to the other hand, and repeat the procedure.

Note:

1. Do not discard the applicator pad at this time.
2. If you were masked with your hood zipped and the drawstring pulled tight when you were contaminated, stop. Discard the applicator pad, put on your protective gloves, and go to step 3b. However, if you were masked, but the zipper and drawstring were not secure, go to step 3a(16). The stars in the illustration on page 2-5 of TM 3-4230-229-10 show areas of the face that should be scrubbed with an extra stroke because they are hard to decontaminate.
3. The procedure is the same regardless of the type of protective mask. If you are using the JSLIST with a hood attached to the protective jacket, ignore the instructions for the hood.

DANGER

Death or injury may result if you breathe toxic agents while doing the following step. If you need to breathe before you finish, reseal your mask, clear it, check it, get your breath, and then resume the decontaminating procedure.

- (7) Scrub exposed skin of your face in detail until you are covered over with black powder from the applicator pad.
- (8) Hold your breath, close your eyes, grasp the mask beneath your chin, and pull the hood and mask away from your chin enough to allow one hand between the mask and your face.
- (9) Scrub up and down across your face, beginning at the front of one ear, to your nose, and then to your other ear.
 - (a) Scrub across your face to the corner of your nose.
 - (b) Scrub an extra stroke at the corner of your nose.
 - (c) Scrub across your nose, to the tip of your nose, and then to the other corner of your nose.
 - (d) Scrub an extra stroke at the corner of your nose.
 - (e) Scrub across your face to your other ear.
- (10) Scrub up and down across your face to your mouth and then to the other end of your jawbone.
 - (a) Scrub across your cheek to the corner of your mouth.
 - (b) Scrub an extra stroke at the corner of your mouth.
 - (c) Scrub across your closed mouth to the center of your upper lip.
 - (d) Scrub an extra stroke above your upper lip.

Performance Steps

- (e) Scrub across your closed mouth to the outer corner of your mouth.
 - (f) Scrub an extra stroke at the corner of your mouth.
 - (g) Scrub across your cheek to the end of your jawbone.
- (11) Scrub up and down across your face to your chin and then to the other end of your jawbone.
- (a) Scrub across and under your jaw to your chin, cupping your chin.
 - (b) Scrub extra strokes at the center of your chin.
 - (c) Scrub across your upper jaw to the end of your jawbone.
- (12) Turn your hand out, and wipe fast the inside of your mask where it touches your face.
- (13) Discard the applicator pad.
- (14) Seal your mask at once, clear it, and check it.
- (15) Remove the second skin decontamination packet from the carrying pouch.
- (16) Repeat steps 3a(2), (3), and (4) above.
- (17) Scrub your neck and ears until they are covered over with black powder without breaking the seal between your face and your mask. Scrub your hands again until they are covered over with black powder.
- b. Assume MOPP level 4.
 - (1) Discard the applicator pad.
 - (2) Put on your protective gloves.
 - (3) Put on your protective gloves.
 - c. Remove the decontaminating powder with soap and water when operational conditions permit.
4. Decontaminate your individual equipment using the M295 decontaminating kit.
- a. Use the first mitt to decontaminate your gloves, the exposed areas of your mask and hood, your weapon, and your helmet.
 - (1) Remove one decontamination packet from your pouch.
 - (2) Tear the packet open at any notch.
 - (3) Remove the decontamination mitt.
 - (4) Discard the empty packet.
 - (5) Unfold the decontamination mitt.
 - (6) Grasp the green (non-pad) side of the decontamination mitt with your non-dominant hand. Pat the other gloved hand with the decontamination mitt to start the flow of decontamination powder onto your glove. Rub your glove with the decontamination mitt until it is covered over with decontaminating powder.

Performance Steps

(7) Insert the decontaminated, gloved hand inside the decontamination mitt. Ensure that the pad side is in the palm of your hand and your thumb sticks through the appropriate thumbhole. Tighten the wristband on the gloved hand until it is secure.

(8) Decontaminate individual equipment by rubbing with the pad side of the decontamination mitt until the equipment is covered over with decontamination powder. Pay special attention to areas that are hard to reach (such as cracks, crevices, and absorbent materials).

(a) Decontaminate your other glove.

(b) Decontaminate exposed areas of your mask and hood.

(c) Decontaminate your weapon.

(d) Decontaminate your helmet by patting it with the decontamination mitt.

(9) Discard the decontamination mitt.

b. Use the second mitt to decontaminate your LBE and accessories, mask carrier, overboots, and gloves again.

(1) Get another packet, and repeat steps 4a(1) through 4a(7). Then, perform the following:

(a) Decontaminate load-carrying equipment (LCE) and accessories (such as canteen, ammo pouch, and first aid pouch).

(b) Decontaminate your mask-carrying case.

(c) Decontaminate your protective boots.

(d) Repeat the decontamination process on your protective gloves.

(2) Discard the decontamination mitt.

(3) Get another packet and repeat steps 4a(1) through 4a(7) if liquid contamination is still suspected or detected. Rub or blot areas where contamination is still suspected or detected.

WARNING

The M295 kit only removes the liquid hazard. Decontaminated items may still present a vapor hazard. Do not unmask until it has been determined safe to do so.

c. Remove the decontaminating powder when operational conditions permit.

5. Notify your supervisor about the location of the used decontaminating materials, and await guidance about disposal procedures.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the items listed in the task conditions statement. A good time to evaluate this task is while in a field environment. Gather materials for the disposal of hazardous waste according to federal, state, and local rules and regulations.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what body parts and equipment are contaminated.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Assumed MOPP level 3 without securing the hook-and-pile fastener tape or draw cord.	---	---
2. Decontaminated skin using the RSDL within 1 minute of contamination.	---	---
3. Decontaminated skin using the M291 decontaminating kit within 1 minute of contamination.	---	---
4. Decontaminated individual equipment using the M295 decontaminating kit.	---	---
5. Notified supervisor about the location of the used decontaminating materials, and awaited guidance about disposal procedures.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required: TM 3-4230-229-10, TM 3-4230-235-10,
TM 3-6505-001-10

Related: FM 3-11.5, TM 10-8415-209-10, TM 10-8415-220-10

031-503-1037

Detect Chemical Agents Using M8 or M9 Detector Paper

Conditions: You are in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 2 in a tactical environment or an area where there is a chemical threat. You are given a protective mask, a booklet of M8 detector paper, a dispenser of M9 detector paper, an M256A1 chemical-agent detector kit, the assigned decontaminating kit (M291 or M295), DA Form 1594 (*Daily Staff Journal or Duty Officer's Log*), FM 3-11.4, FM 3-11.3, TM 3-6665-307-10, TM 3-6665-311-10, and a complete set of MOPP gear or a chemical-protective ensemble.

SPECIAL CONDITIONS

1. Do not wear contact lenses when performing this task.
2. Do not use masks with damaged filters because certain models contain hazardous materials.
3. Do not change the filter element in a contaminated environment.

Standards: Detect chemical agents using M8 and M9 detector paper, ensuring that the M9 detector paper is attached to places apt to come into contact with liquid chemical agents. Detect and identify all liquid chemical agents in the area that are within the capabilities of the M8 or M9 detector paper without becoming a casualty.

WARNING

Always wear protective gloves when touching M9 detector paper. Do not get M9 detector paper in, near your mouth, or on your skin. The M9 detector paper dye may cause cancer, but the risk is small because very little dye is used.

1. Detect chemical agents using M9 detector paper.

Note: M8 and M9 detector paper will not detect chemical-agent vapors.

- a. Attach the M9 detector paper to your MOPP gear and equipment while wearing chemical-protective gloves.

- (1) Place the M9 detector paper on the MOPP gear on opposite sides of your body.

- (a) If you are right-handed, place a strip of M9 detector paper around your right upper arm, left wrist, and right ankle.

Note: These are the places where a moving Soldier will, most of the time, brush against a surface (such as undergrowth) that is contaminated with a liquid chemical agent.

- (b) If you are left-handed, place a strip of M9 detector paper around your left upper arm, right wrist, and left ankle.

Note: Do not attach M9 detector paper to hot, dirty, oily, or greasy surfaces because it may give a false positive reading.

- (2) Place M9 detector paper on equipment where it will come in contact with contaminated objects and is visible to the operator.

WARNING

Some decontaminants will give false positive results on the M8 detector paper. The M8 detector paper may indicate positive results if used in an area where decontaminants have been used.

- b. Monitor the M9 detector paper always for any color change. If you observe a color change, do the following at once:

- (1) Mask.
- (2) Give the alarm.
- (3) Decontaminate as necessary.
- (4) Assume MOPP4.

2. Detect chemical agents using M8 detector paper if you see a liquid that might be a chemical agent or if you observe a color change on the M9 detector paper.

- a. Assume MOPP4 at once.

- b. Prepare the M8 detector paper. Tear out a sheet from the book (use one-half sheet if it is perforated).

Note: You may want to put the paper on the end of a stick or another object and then blot the paper on the suspected liquid agent.

Performance Steps

- c. Blot (do not rub) the M8 detector paper on the suspected liquid agent. Do not touch the liquid with your protective glove.
- d. Observe the M8 detector paper for a color change. Identify the contamination by comparing any color change on the M8 detector paper to the color chart on the inside front cover of the booklet.
 - (1) A yellow-gold color indicates the presence of a nerve (G) agent.
 - (2) A red-pink color indicates the presence of a blister (H) agent.
 - (3) A dark green color indicates the presence of a nerve (V) agent.
 - (4) Any other color or no color change indicates that the liquid cannot be identified using M8 detector paper.
- e. Store the booklet of M8 detector paper.
- f. Remain in MOPP4 even if the liquid cannot be identified. Use other types of chemical-agent detector kits to verify the test results.
- g. Notify your supervisor of the test results.

Note: M8 detector paper reacts positive to petroleum products, ammonia, and decontaminating solution number 2 (DS2). M9 detector paper reacts positive to petroleum products, insecticides, and antifreeze. Because M9 detector paper only detects (but does not identify) chemical agents, verify all readings with M8 detector paper. If you observe a color change on M8 or M9 detector paper, assume it is a liquid chemical agent. Confirm the presence of contamination by using all means of chemical-agent detection available in your area of operation, including a visual check of your surroundings. If you determine that your reading is a false positive, perform the following actions before giving the all clear signal:

1. Ensure that every attempt has been made to recheck the area.
2. Contact your higher headquarters (HQ) or the person in charge, and report the negative results.
3. Await further guidance. The higher HQ contacts all adjacent/attached units to check the status of contamination in their areas. If all units report the absence of contamination, the information is reported up the chain of command.
4. Annotate the above actions on DA Form 1594.

Evaluation Preparation:

CAUTION

Ensure that stimulants are placed on detector paper only and never on the protective clothing.

Setup: Provide the items listed in the task condition statement. Simulate an unknown liquid chemical agent by using expedient training aids (such as brake fluid, cleaning compound, gasoline, insect repellent, or antifreeze). Place drops of the simulated agent on M9 detector paper to obtain a reading. For M8 detector paper, place the simulated agent on nonporous material (such as an entrenching tool).

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier that he/she will be entering an area where chemical agents have been used. Tell him/her to attach M9 detector paper to his/her MOPP gear and equipment. Tell him/her that if you observe any

acts that are unsafe or that could produce a false reading you will stop the test and he/she will be scored a NO GO.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Detected chemical agents using M9 detector paper.	---	---
2. Detected chemical agents using M8 detector paper.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required: DA Form 1594, FM 3-11.3, TM 3-6665-311-10

Related:

031-503-1021

Mark CBRN-Contaminated Areas

Conditions: You are given a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) marking set and Technical Manual (TM) 3-9905-001-10 or the XM328 sign kit and TM 3-9905-002-12&P in a tactical environment where chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear (CBRN) weapons have been used. The contamination has been located and identified in an area. You are in the appropriate personal protective equipment (PPE). This task may be performed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) level 4.

Standards: Mark the CBRN-contaminated area. Ensure that the required information is printed on the marker(s), and emplace the marker(s) according to the type of contamination. There is no change to standards if task is performed in MOPP level 4.

Performance Steps

Note: If the XM328 sign kit is available, proceed to step 2.

1. Employ contamination markers using the NBC marking set.
 - a. Emplace the radiological markers.
 - (1) Place markers at the location where a dose rate of 1 centigray per hour (cGyph) or more is measured.
 - (2) Place markers so that the word "ATOM" faces away from the contamination.
 - (3) Print the following information clearly on the front of the markers:
 - (a) Dose rate in cGyph.
 - (b) Date-time group (DTG) (specify local or Zulu) of the detonation. If the DTG is not known, print "unknown."
 - (c) The DTG (specify local or Zulu) of the reading.
 - (d) Go to steps d and e.

Performance Steps

- (4) If beacons are required, proceed to step e; if not, proceed to steps f and g.
- c. If beacons are required, proceed to step e; if not, proceed to steps f and g.
- (1) Place markers at the location where contamination is detected.
- (2) Place markers so that the word "GAS" faces away from the contamination area.
- (3) Print the following information clearly on the front of the marker:
- (a) Name of agent, if known. If unknown, print "unknown."
- (b) DTG (specify local or Zulu) of detection. If the DTG is not known, print "unknown."
- (4) If beacons are required, proceed to step e; if not, proceed to steps f and g.
- d. Emplace the toxic makers.
- (1) Place markers at the location where contamination is detected.
- (2) Place markers so that the word "TOXIC" faces away from the contamination area.
- (3) Print the following information clearly on the front of the marker:
- (a) Name of agent, if known. If unknown, print "unknown."
- (b) DTG (specify local or Zulu) of detection. If the DTG is not known, print "unknown."
- (4) If beacons are required, proceed to step e; if not, proceed to steps f and g.
- e. Emplace beacons at approximately 300-meter intervals.

Note:

1. Beacons are visible at night over ranges of up to 1,500+ meters.
2. Beacons are supplied in visual and IR only types. Flexlight chemical lights are emplaced between beacons attached to the flag clips.

f. Ensure that the recorded information on the markers faces away from the area contamination and place adjacent marking signs at intervals of 10 to 50 meters depending on terrain, approximately waist high. If beacons are used, the markers can be placed 10 to 100 meters apart.

g. Ensure that when in open terrain all markers are at a height that permits approaching forces to view them at a distance up to 300 meters, approximately waist high.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the items listed in the task condition statement. Use stimulants to produce a contaminated environment for toxic and chemical or biological agents. For radiological contamination, tell the Soldier the type and amount of radiation present.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier that the test will consist of ensuring that

NBC markers are well placed and that all required information is placed on the markers.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Emplaced the radiological markers.	---	---
2. Emplaced the biological markers.	---	---
3. Emplaced the chemical markers.	---	---
4. Emplaced the toxic markers. (XM328 sign kit only.)	---	---
5. If required, emplaced beacons at about 300-meter intervals, and placed adjacent marking signs at intervals of 10 to 50 meters.	---	---
6. Emplaced adjacent marking signs at intervals of 25 to 100 meters if using the NBC marking set or 10 to 50 meters if using the XM328 sign kit.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required: TM 3-9905-001-10

Related: FM 3-11.19, FM 3-11.3

081-831-1001

Evaluate a Casualty (Tactical Combat Casualty Care)

Conditions: You have a casualty who has signs/symptoms of an injury. Your unit may be under fire.

Standards: Evaluate the casualty following the correct sequence. Identify all life-threatening conditions and other serious wounds.

Performance Steps

Note: Tactical combat casualty care (TCCC) can be divided into three phases. The first is care under fire, the second is tactical field care, the third is combat casualty evacuation care. In the first, you are under hostile fire and are very limited as to the care you can provide. In the second, you and the casualty are somewhat safe and no longer under effective hostile fire, and you are free to provide casualty care to the best of your ability. In the third, the care is rendered during casualty evacuation (CASEVAC).

WARNING

If a broken neck or back is suspected, do not move the casualty unless to save his/her life.

1. Perform care under fire.
 - a. Return fire as directed or required before providing medical treatment.
 - b. Determine if the casualty is alive or dead.

Performance Steps

Note: In combat, the most usual threat to the casualty's life is from bleeding. Attempts to check for airway and breathing will expose the rescuer to enemy fire. Do not attempt to provide first aid if your own life is in imminent danger.

Note: In a combat situation, if you find a casualty with no signs of life—no pulse, no breathing—do NOT attempt to restore the airway. DO NOT continue first aid measures.

- c. Provide tactical care to the live casualty.

Note: Reducing or eliminating enemy fire may be more important to the casualty's survival than the treatment you can provide.

- (1) Suppress enemy fire.
- (2) Use cover or concealment (smoke).

(3) Direct the casualty to return fire, move to cover, and administer self-aid (stop bleeding), if possible. If the casualty is unable to move and you are unable to move the casualty to cover and the casualty is still under direct enemy fire, have the casualty "play dead."

(4) If the casualty is unresponsive, move the casualty, his/her weapon, and mission-essential equipment to cover, as the tactical situation permits.

- (5) Keep the casualty from sustaining additional wounds.

- (6) Reassure the casualty.

- d. Administer life-saving hemorrhage control.

(1) Determine the relative threat of the tactical situation versus the risk of the casualty's bleeding to death.

(2) If the casualty has severe bleeding from a limb or has suffered amputation of a limb, administer life-saving hemorrhage control by applying a tourniquet before moving the casualty. (See task 081-831-1032.)

e. Transport the casualty, his/her weapon, and mission-essential equipment when the tactical situation permits.

- f. Recheck bleeding control measures as the tactical situation permits.

2. Perform tactical field care when no longer under direct enemy fire.

Note: Tactical field care is rendered by the individual when no longer under hostile fire. Tactical field care also applies to situations in which an injury has occurred during the mission but there has been no hostile fire. Available medical equipment is limited to that carried into the field by the individual Soldier.

WARNING

If there are any signs of nerve agent poisoning, stop the evaluation, take the necessary protective measures, and begin first aid. (See task 081-831-1044.)

Note: In the following situations communicate the medical situation to the unit leader and ensure that the tactical situation allows for time to perform these steps before initiating any medical procedure.

Note: When evaluating and/or treating a casualty, seek medical aid as soon as possible. DO NOT stop treatment. If the situation allows, send another person to find medical aid.

Performance Steps

a. Form a general impression of the casualty as you approach (extent of injuries, chance of survival).

Note: If a casualty is being burned, take steps to remove the casualty from the source of the burns before continuing evaluation and treatment. (See task 081-831-1007.)

b. Check for responsiveness.

(1) Ask in a loud, but calm, voice: "Are you okay?" Shake or tap the casualty, in a gentle manner on the shoulder.

(2) Determine the level of consciousness by using AVPU: A = Alert; V = responds to Voice; P = responds to Pain; U = Unresponsive.

Note: To check a casualty's response to pain, rub the breastbone quick with a knuckle or squeeze the first or second toe over the toenail.

(3) If the casualty is conscious, ask where his/her body feels different than usual, or where it hurts. Skip steps 2c and 2d. Go to step 2e.

Note: If the casualty is conscious but is choking and cannot talk, stop the evaluation and begin treatment. (See task 081-831-1003.)

(4) If the casualty is unconscious, continue with step 2c.

c. Position the casualty and open the airway. (See task 081-831-1023.)

d. Assess for breathing and chest injuries.

(1) Look, listen, and feel for respiration. (See task 081-831-1023.)

Note: If the casualty is breathing, insert a nasopharyngeal airway (see task 081-831-1023) and place the casualty in the recovery position.

Note: On the battlefield, the cost of attempting cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) on casualties with what are sure to be fatal injuries may result in additional lives lost as care is diverted from casualties with less severe injuries. Only in the case of nontraumatic disorders such as hypothermia, near drowning, or electrocution should CPR be considered prior to the CASEVAC phase.

(2) Expose the chest and check for equal rise and fall and for any wounds. (See task 081-831-1026.)

(a) If the casualty has a penetrating chest wound and is breathing or making an effort to breathe, stop the evaluation to apply a dressing.

(b) Monitor for increasing respiratory distress. If this occurs, decompress the chest on the same side as the injury. (See task 081-831-1026.)

(c) Position or transport with the affected side down, if possible.

e. Identify and control bleeding.

(1) Check for bleeding.

(a) Remove only the minimum amount of clothing to expose and treat injuries. Protect the casualty from the environment (heat and cold).

(b) Look for blood-soaked clothes.

(c) Look for entry and exit wounds.

Performance Steps

(d) Place your hands behind the casualty's neck and pass them upward toward the top of the head. Note whether there is blood or brain tissue on your hands from the casualty's wounds.

(e) Place your hands behind the casualty's shoulders and pass them downward behind the back, the thighs, and the legs. Note whether there is blood on your hands from the casualty's wounds.

(2) If life-threatening bleeding is present, stop the evaluation and control the bleeding. Apply a tourniquet, chitosan dressing, emergency bandage, or field dressing, as appropriate. (See tasks 081-831-1025, 081-831-1026, 081-831-1032, and 081-831-1033.) Treat for shock and establish a saline lock/intravenous infusion, as appropriate. (See tasks 081-831-1005, 081-831-1011, and 081-831-1012.)

Note: If a tourniquet was earlier applied, consider converting it to a pressure dressing. (See task 081-831-1032.) Converting the tourniquet to a pressure dressing may save the casualty's limb if the tourniquet has not been in place for 6 hours.

(3) Dress all wounds, including exit wounds.

f. Check for fractures.

(1) Check for open fractures by looking for bleeding or a bone sticking through the skin.

(2) Check for closed fractures by looking for swelling, discoloration, deformity, or unusual body position.

(3) If a suspected fracture is present, stop the evaluation and apply a splint. (See task 081-831-1034.)

g. Check for burns.

(1) Look with care for reddened, blistered, or charred skin. Also check for singed clothes.

(2) If burns are found, stop the evaluation and begin treatment. (See task 081-831-1007.)

h. Administer pain medications and antibiotics (the casualty's combat pill pack) to any Soldier wounded in combat.

Note: Each Soldier will be issued a combat pill pack before deploying on tactical missions.

i. Document the casualty's injuries and the treatment given on the field medical card (FMC), if applicable.

Note: The FMC is as a rule initiated by the combat medic. However, a certified combat lifesaver can initiate the FMC if a combat medic is not available or if the combat medic directs the combat lifesaver to initiate the card. A pad of FMCs is part of the combat lifesaver medical equipment set.

j. Transport the casualty to the site where evacuation is anticipated. (See task 081-831-1046.)

Performance Steps

3. Monitor an unconscious casualty during CASEVAC.

Note: CASEVAC refers to the movement of casualties aboard nonmedical vehicles or aircraft. Care is rendered while the casualty is waiting for pickup, or is being transported. A Soldier accompanying an unconscious casualty should monitor the casualty's airway, breathing, and bleeding.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Prepare a "casualty" for the Soldier to evaluate in step 2 by simulating one or more wounds or conditions. Simulate the wounds using a war wounds moulage set, casualty simulation kit, or other available materials. You can coach a "conscious casualty" about how to respond to the Soldier's questions about location of pain or other symptoms of injury. However, you will have to cue the Soldier during evaluation of an "unconscious casualty" as to whether the casualty is breathing and describe the signs or conditions, as the Soldier is making the checks.

Brief Soldier: To test step 1, tell the Soldier that his/her unit is under fire and ask him/her what he/she should do to provide aid to casualties. For step 2, tell the Soldier that the tactical situation permits full evaluation of the casualty. Tell him/her to do, in order, all necessary steps to evaluate the casualty and identify all wounds and/or conditions. Tell the Soldier that he/she will not perform first aid but will tell you what first aid action (give mouth-to-mouth resuscitation, bandage the wound, and so forth) he/she would take. After he/she has completed the checks (step 2f), ask him/her what else he/she should do. To test step 3, ask him/her what he/she should do while evacuating an unconscious casualty.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Performed care under fire.	--	--
a. Suppressed enemy fire to keep the casualty from sustaining additional wounds.		
b. Encouraged responsive casualties to protect themselves and perform self-aid, if able.		
c. Administered life-saving hemorrhage control.		
d. Transported the casualties, weapons, and mission-essential equipment, when the tactical situation permitted.		
2. Donned protective mask without fastening the hood within 9 seconds.	--	--
a. Checked for responsiveness.		
b. Positioned the casualty and opened the airway.		

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
c. Assessed for breathing and chest injuries.		
d. Identified and controlled bleeding.		
e. Checked for fractures.		
f. Checked for burns.		
g. Administered pain medications and antibiotics, if appropriate.		
h. Documented the casualty's injuries and treatment given on the field medical card, if applicable.		
i. Transported the casualty to the site where evacuation is anticipated.		
3. Monitored an unconscious casualty's airway, breathing, and bleeding during casualty evacuation.	---	---
4. Performed all necessary steps in sequence.	---	---
5. Identified all wounds and/or conditions.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: AR 40-66 and FM 4-25.11 (FM 21-11)

081-831-1003

Perform First Aid to Clear an Object Stuck in the Throat of a Conscious Casualty

Conditions: You see a conscious casualty who is having a hard time breathing because something is stuck in his/her throat.

Standards: Clear the object from the casualty's throat. Give abdominal or chest thrusts until the casualty can talk and breathe as normal, you are relieved by a qualified person, or the casualty becomes unconscious requiring mouth-to-mouth resuscitation.

Performance Steps

1. Determine if the casualty needs help.
 - a. If the casualty has a mild airway obstruction (only able to speak or cough by force, may be wheezing between coughs), do not interfere except to encourage the casualty.

Performance Steps

b. If the casualty has a severe airway obstruction (poor air exchange and increased breathing difficulty, a silent cough, cyanosis, or inability to speak or breathe), continue with step 2.

Note: You can ask the casualty one question, "Are you choking?" If the casualty nods yes, help is needed.

CAUTION

Do not slap a choking casualty on the back. This may cause the object to go down the airway instead of out.

2. Perform abdominal or chest thrusts.

Note: Abdominal thrusts should be used unless the victim is in the advanced stages of pregnancy, is very obese, or has a significant abdominal wound.

Note: Clearing a conscious casualty's airway obstruction can be performed with the casualty either standing or sitting.

a. Abdominal thrusts.

- (1) Stand behind the casualty.
- (2) Wrap your arms around the casualty's waist.
- (3) Make a fist with one hand.
- (4) Place the thumb side of the fist against the abdomen a little above the navel and well below the tip of the breastbone.
- (5) Grasp the fist with the other hand.
- (6) Give quick backward and upward thrusts.

Note: Each thrust should be a separate, distinct movement. Thrusts should be continued until the obstruction is expelled or the casualty becomes unconscious.

b. Chest thrusts.

- (1) Stand behind the casualty.
- (2) Wrap your arms under the casualty's armpits and around the chest.
- (3) Make a fist with one hand.
- (4) Place the thumb side of the fist on the middle of the breastbone.
- (5) Grasp the fist with the other hand.
- (6) Give backward thrusts.

Note: Each thrust should be performed slow and distinct with the intent of relieving the obstruction.

3. Continue to give abdominal or chest thrusts, as required. Give abdominal or chest thrusts until the obstruction is clear, you are relieved by a qualified person, or the casualty becomes unconscious.

Note: If the casualty becomes unconscious, lay him/her down and then start mouth-to-mouth resuscitation procedures. (See task 081-831-1023.)

4. If the obstruction is cleared, watch the casualty and check for other injuries, if necessary.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* You need another Soldier to play the part of the casualty.

Brief Soldier: Describe the symptoms of a casualty with a mild or severe airway obstruction. Ask the Soldier what should be done, and score step 1 according to the answer. Tell the Soldier to do all of the first aid steps required to clear an object from the casualty's throat. Tell the Soldier to demonstrate where to stand, how to position his/her hands, and how to position the casualty for the thrusts. The Soldier must tell you how the thrusts should be done. Ensure that the Soldier understands that he/she must not in fact do the thrusts. Do not evaluate steps 3 and 4 in the simulated mode.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Determined if the casualty needed help.	---	---
2. Performed abdominal or chest thrusts, as required.	---	---
a. Positioned hands for the thrusts.		
b. Gave the thrusts well.		
3. Continued abdominal or chest thrusts, as required.	---	---
4. If the obstruction was cleared, watched the casualty and checked for other injuries, if necessary.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 4-25.11 (FM 21-11)

081-831-1005

Perform First Aid to Prevent or Control Shock

Conditions: You see a casualty who is breathing. There is no uncontrolled bleeding. The casualty has one or more of the symptoms of shock. You will need a field jacket and blanket or poncho.

Standards: Attempt to prevent a casualty from going into shock by placing him the correct position, loosening binding clothes, calming and reassuring the casualty, and providing shade from direct sunlight during hot weather or covering to prevent body heat loss during cold weather. Do not cause further injury to the casualty.

Performance Steps

1. Check the casualty for signs and symptoms of shock.
 - a. Sweaty but cool skin.
 - b. Pale skin.
 - c. Restlessness or nervousness.

Performance Steps

- d. Thirst.
 - e. Severe bleeding.
 - f. Confusion.
 - g. Rapid breathing.
 - h. Blotchy blue skin.
 - i. Nausea and/or vomiting.
2. Position the casualty.
 - a. Move the casualty to cover, if cover is available and the situation permits.
 - b. Lay the casualty on his/her back, unless a sitting position will allow the casualty to breathe easier.
 - c. Elevate the casualty's feet higher than the heart using a stable object so the feet will not fall.

WARNING

If the casualty has an unsplinted fractured leg, an abdominal wound, or a head or spinal injury, do not elevate the casualty's legs.

Note: If the casualty is in hypovolemic shock from combat injuries, you may need to establish a saline lock and start an intravenous infusion. A saline lock should be initiated any time the casualty has suffered a severe loss of blood. If the casualty has an abnormal level of consciousness or no palpable radial (wrist) pulse on an uninjured arm, convert the saline lock to an intravenous infusion (IV). (See tasks 081-831-1011 and 081-831-1012.)

3. Loosen clothing at the neck, waist, or anywhere it is binding.

WARNING

Do not loosen clothing if in a chemical area.

4. Splint the limb, if appropriate. (See task 081-831-1034.)
 - a. Apply a splint to the injured limb if one or more bones in the limb have been fractured.

Note: If a splint is not applied to the extremity, broken bone fragments may grate on blood vessels and nerves and cause additional damage.

- b. Splint the arm, forearm, thigh, or leg when a severe wound is present, even if the limb is not fractured.

Note: Immobilizing the limb reduces muscular activity helping to stop bleeding and reduce pain.

5. Prevent the casualty from getting chilled or overheated.
 - a. Cover the casualty to avoid loss of body heat and, in cold weather, place cover under as well as over the casualty. Use a blanket or clothing, or improvise a cover.
 - b. Place the casualty under a permanent or improvised shelter in hot weather to shade him/her from direct sunlight.

Performance Steps

WARNING

Do not give the casualty anything to eat or drink.

6. Calm and reassure the casualty.
 - a. Take charge and show self-confidence.
 - b. Assure the casualty that he/she is being taken care of.

WARNING

If you must leave the casualty, turn his/her head to the side to prevent choking if vomiting occurs.

7. Always watch the casualty for life-threatening conditions and check for other injuries, if necessary. Seek medical aid.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* You will need another Soldier to play the part of the casualty. Have the casualty lie down. You can have a canteen of water available and have the casualty say that he/she is thirsty while testing step 4.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier to do all necessary first aid steps to prevent shock. You can vary the test by telling the Soldier whether it is hot or cold or that the casualty has a broken leg or abdominal wound to see if the Soldier knows what to do. Do not evaluate steps 3 and 6 in the simulated mode.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Positioned the casualty.	---	---
2. Loosened tight or binding clothes.	---	---
3. Splinted the limb, if appropriate.	---	---
4. Prevented the casualty from chilling or overheating.	---	---
5. Reassured the casualty.	---	---
6. Always watched the casualty for life-threatening conditions and checked for other injuries, if necessary. Sought medical aid.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 4-25.11 (FM 21-11)

081-831-1023

Perform First Aid to Restore Breathing and/or Pulse

Conditions: You see an adult casualty who is unconscious and does not appear to be breathing. You are not in a combat situation or chemical environment. You will need a nasopharyngeal airway (NPA).

Standards: Take appropriate action, in the correct sequence, to restore breathing and, if necessary, restore the pulse. Continue until the casualty's breathing/pulse returns, a qualified person relieves you, a physician stops you, or you are too tired to continue.

Performance Steps

1. Roll the casualty onto his/her back, if necessary, and place him/her on a hard, flat surface.

WARNING

The casualty should be rolled in a careful manner as a whole, so the body does not twist.

- a. Kneel beside the casualty.
 - b. Raise the near arm and straighten it out above the head.
 - c. Adjust the legs so they are together and straight or almost straight.
 - d. Place one hand on the back of the casualty's head and neck.
 - e. Grasp the casualty under the arm with the free hand.
 - f. Pull in a steady and even manner toward yourself, keeping the head and neck in line with the torso.
 - g. Roll the casualty as a single unit.
 - h. Place the casualty's arms at his/her sides.
2. Open the airway.

Note: If foreign material or vomit is in the mouth, remove it as fast as possible.

- a. Head-tilt/chin-lift method.

CAUTION

DO NOT use this method if a spinal or neck injury is suspected.

- (1) Kneel at the level of the casualty's shoulders.
- (2) Place one hand on the casualty's forehead and apply firm, backward pressure with the palm to tilt the head back.
- (3) Place the fingertips of the other hand under the bony part of the lower jaw and lift, bringing the chin forward.

Note: DO NOT use the thumb to lift.

Note: DO NOT close the casualty's mouth all the way.

CAUTION

DO NOT press hard into the soft tissue under the chin with the fingers.

Performance Steps

b. Jaw-thrust method.

CAUTION

Use this method if a spinal or neck injury is suspected.

Note: If you are unable to maintain an airway after the second attempt, use the head-tilt/chin-lift method.

- (1) Kneel above the casualty's head (looking toward the casualty's feet).
- (2) Rest your elbows on the ground or floor.
- (3) Place one hand on each side of the casualty's lower jaw at the angle of the jaw, below the ears.
- (4) Stabilize the casualty's head with your forearms.
- (5) Use the index fingers to push the angles of the casualty's lower jaw forward.

Note: If the casualty's lips are still closed after the jaw has been moved forward, use your thumbs to retract the lower lip and allow air to enter the casualty's mouth.

CAUTION

DO NOT tilt or rotate the casualty's head.

2. Open the airway.

- b. Lay the casualty on his/her back, unless a sitting position will allow the casualty to breathe easier.
- c. Elevate the casualty's feet higher than the heart using a stable object so the feet will not fall.

WARNING

If the casualty has an unsplinted fractured leg, an abdominal wound, or a head or spinal injury, do not elevate the casualty's legs.

Note: If the casualty is in hypovolemic shock from combat injuries, you may need to establish a saline lock and start an intravenous infusion. A saline lock should be initiated any time the casualty has suffered a severe loss of blood. If the casualty has an abnormal level of consciousness or no palpable radial (wrist) pulse on an uninjured arm, convert the saline lock to an intravenous infusion (IV). (See tasks 081-831-1011 and 081-831-1012.)

3. Loosen clothing at the neck, waist, or anywhere it is binding.

- a. While maintaining the open airway position, place an ear over the casualty's mouth and nose, looking toward the chest and stomach.
- b. Look for the chest to rise and fall.
- c. Listen for air escaping during exhalation.
- d. Feel for the flow of air on the side of your face.
- e. Count the number of respirations for 15 seconds.

Performance Steps

f. Take appropriate action.

(1) If the casualty is unconscious, if respiratory rate is less than 2 in 15 seconds, and/or if the casualty is making snoring or gurgling sounds, insert an NPA.

CAUTION

DO NOT use the NPA if there is clear fluid (cerebrospinal fluid-CSF) coming from the ears or nose. This may indicate a skull fracture.

(a) Keep the casualty in a face-up position.

(b) Lubricate the tube of the NPA with water.

(c) Push the tip of the casualty's nose upward with a gentle motion.

(d) Position the tube of the NPA so that the bevel (pointed end) of the NPA faces toward the septum (the partition inside the nose that separates the nostrils).

Note: Most NPAs are designed to be placed in the right nostril.

(e) Insert the NPA into the nostril and advance it until the flange rests against the nostril.

CAUTION

Never force the NPA into the casualty's nostril. If resistance is met, pull the tube out and attempt to insert it in the other nostril. If neither nostril will accommodate the NPA, place the casualty in the recovery position.

(f) Place the casualty in the recovery position by rolling him/her as a single unit onto his/her side, placing the hand of his/her upper arm under his/her chin, and flexing his/her upper leg.

(g) Watch the casualty for life-threatening conditions and check for other injuries, if necessary. Seek medical aid.

(2) If the casualty is not breathing, continue with step 4 if the tactical situation permits.

Note: If the casualty resumes breathing at any time during this procedure, the airway should be kept open and the casualty should be monitored. If the casualty continues to breathe, he/she should be transported to medical aid. Otherwise, the procedure should be continued.

4. Give breaths to ensure an open airway.

Note: When mouth-to-mouth resuscitation breathing cannot be performed because the casualty has jaw injuries or spasms, the mouth-to-nose method may be more effective. Perform the mouth-to-nose method as follows:

* Blow into the nose while holding the lips closed.

* Let air escape by removing your mouth and, in some cases, separating the casualty's lips.

a. Insert a face shield, if available, into the casualty's mouth, with the short airway portion over the top of the tongue, and flatten the plastic sheet around the mouth.

b. Maintain the airway, and with a gentle motion, pinch the nose closed, using the hand on the casualty's forehead.

Performance Steps

c. Take a normal breath and place your mouth, in an airtight seal, around the casualty's mouth.

d. Give two breaths (1 second each), taking a breath between them, while watching for the chest to rise and fall and listening and/or feeling for air to escape during exhalation.

Note: If the chest rises, go to step 7.

Note: If the chest does not rise after the first breath, continue with step 5.

5. Reposition the casualty's head a little farther backward and repeat the breaths.

Note: If the chest rises, go to step 7.

Note: If the chest does not rise, continue with step 6.

6. Perform chest compressions to clear the airway.

a. Perform chest compressions.

(1) Kneel close to the side of the casualty's body.

(2) Locate the nipple line placing the heel of one hand on the lower half of the sternum (breastbone).

(3) Place the heel of the other hand on top of the first hand on the lower half of the breastbone, extending or interlacing the fingers.

(4) Straighten and lock the elbows with the shoulders straight above the hands.

(5) Without bending the elbows, rocking, or allowing the shoulders to sag, apply enough pressure to depress the breastbone 1½ to 2 inches.

Note: Give compressions at a rate of 100 per minute (hard and fast at a ratio of 30 compressions to 2 breaths) with the intent of relieving the obstruction.

b. Look in the mouth for the object between compressions and breaths and, if you can see it, remove it.

WARNING

Only attempt to remove the object if you can see it. DO NOT force the object deeper into the airway.

c. Reopen the airway and repeat the breaths.

Note: If the chest rises, go to step 7.

Note: If the chest does not rise, repeat step 6 until the airway is clear.

7. Check for a pulse for 5 to 10 seconds.

Note: Use the first two fingers in the groove in the casualty's throat, beside the Adam's apple, on the side closest to you. DO NOT use the thumb.

a. If a pulse is found but the casualty is not breathing, continue mouth-to-mouth resuscitation.

(1) Give breaths at the rate of one every 5 to 6 seconds (10 to 12 breaths per minute).

(2) Recheck for pulse and breathing every 2 minutes. If the pulse stops, go to step 8

Performance Steps

(3) Continue until the casualty's breathing returns, a qualified person relieves you, a physician stops you, or you are too tired to continue. If the breathing returns, go to step 9.

b. If no pulse is found, you must perform cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR). Continue with step 8.

8. Perform CPR.

a. Position your hands and body for chest compressions as in step 6a.

b. Give 30 compressions.

(1) Press straight down to depress the breastbone 1 ½ to 2 inches.

(2) Come straight up and release the pressure on the breastbone to allow the chest to return to its normal position. The time allowed for release should equal the time required for compression.

(3) Give 30 compressions in about 23 seconds (at a rate of 100 per minute).

Note: DO NOT remove the heel of your hand from the casualty's chest or reposition your hand between compressions. However, all pressure must be released from the chest cavity to allow for full chest wall expansion.

c. Give two breaths.

(1) Open the casualty's airway.

(2) Give two breaths (1 second each).

d. Repeat steps 8b through 8c for five cycles or 2 minutes.

e. Reassess the casualty.

(1) Check for the return of the pulse for 3 to 5 seconds.

(a) If the pulse is present, continue with step 8e(2).

(b) If the pulse is absent, continue with step 8f.

(2) Check breathing for 3 to 5 seconds.

(a) If the casualty is breathing, continue with step 9.

(b) If the casualty is not breathing, continue mouth-to-mouth resuscitation (step 7a).

f. Resume CPR with compressions (step 8b).

g. Recheck for pulse every 2 minutes.

h. Continue CPR until the casualty's pulse returns, you are relieved by a qualified person, stopped by a physician, or you are too tired to continue.

WARNING

If you must leave the casualty, turn his/her head to the side to prevent choking if vomiting occurs.

9. Once the casualty is breathing and has a pulse, place the casualty in the recovery position until help arrives. Watch the casualty always for life-threatening conditions, maintain an open airway, and check for other injuries, if necessary.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* For training and testing, you must use a resuscitation training mannequin (DVC 08-15). Have a bottle of alcohol and swabs or cotton available. Place the mannequin on the floor and alcohol and cotton balls on the table. Clean the mannequin's nose and mouth before each Soldier is evaluated. If a mannequin that is capable of testing insertion of an NPA is available, use it to test step 3b.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier to do, in order, all necessary steps to restore breathing and pulse. For step 3b, tell the Soldier that the casualty's breathing rate is slow, and have him/her show you (on a mannequin) or tell you what he/she would do to insert an NPA. After step 3, tell the Soldier that the casualty is not breathing. When testing steps 4 and 5, you can vary the test by indicating whether the chest rises or not. If steps 6 and 7 are tested, tell the Soldier that the chest rises after he/she removes the foreign object. When testing step 8, tell the Soldier that a pulse is not found. You can stop the evaluation when the Soldier rechecks for the pulse in step 10. Do not evaluate step 12 in the simulated mode.

Note: Reference made to the mouth-to-nose method within the task presents information on an alternate procedure that must be used under some circumstances. This method will not be evaluated.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Positioned the casualty.	---	---
2. Opened the airway using the head-tilt/chin-lift method.	---	---
3. Checked for breathing.	---	---
a. Looked, listened, and felt for signs of respiration.		
b. Inserted an NPA, if necessary.		
4. Gave breaths to ensure an open airway.	---	---
5. Repositioned the casualty's head and repeated breaths, if necessary.	---	---
6. Performed chest compressions to clear the airway, if necessary.	---	---
7. Looked for a foreign object in the casualty's mouth and removed it, if necessary. (Did NOT perform a blind finger sweep.)	---	---
8. Checked for a pulse.	---	---
9. Continued mouth-to-mouth or mouth-to-nose resuscitation or CPR, as required.	---	---

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
10. Rechecked for pulse and breathing, as required.	---	---
11. Performed all necessary steps in the correct sequence.	---	---
12. Once the casualty was breathing and had a pulse, placed him/her in the recovery position. Watched the casualty always for life-threatening conditions, maintained an open airway, and checked for other injuries, if necessary.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 4-25.11 (FM 21-11)

081-831-1032

Perform First Aid for a Bleeding of an Extremity

Conditions: You have a casualty who has a bleeding wound of the arm or leg. The casualty is breathing. You will need the casualty's emergency bandage, chitosan dressing, or field dressing, materials to improvise a pressure dressing (wadding and cravat or strip of cloth), materials to elevate the extremity (blanket, shelter half, poncho, log, or any available material), and combat application tourniquet (C-A-T) or materials to improvise a tourniquet—rigid object (stick, tent peg, or similar object) and a strip of cloth.

Standards: Control bleeding from the wound following the correct sequence. Place a dressing over the wound with the sides of the dressing sealed so it does not slip. Ensure that the dressings do not have a tourniquet-like effect. Apply a tourniquet to stop profuse bleeding not stopped by the dressings, for severed arms and legs, or to control life-threatening bleeding when under fire.

Performance Steps

Note: If the wound is a partial or complete amputation of the arm or leg, you will need to apply a tourniquet on the injured extremity. Also, if you are under fire and need to control bleeding fast, apply a tourniquet first. When the tactical situation allows, you can loosen the tourniquet after applying other measures to control the bleeding such as a pressure dressing or chitosan dressing. Go to step 5.

1. Uncover the wound unless clothing is stuck to the wound or you are in a chemical environment.

CAUTION

Clothing or anything stuck to the wound should be left alone to avoid injury. DO NOT attempt to clean the wound.

CAUTION

DO NOT remove protective clothing in a chemical environment. Apply dressings over the protective clothing.

Performance Steps

2. Apply the casualty's dressing.
 - a. Emergency bandage.

Note: The emergency bandage is a new item that can be used on any bleeding wound. It can be used both as a field dressing and as a pressure dressing.

(1) Place the pad on the wound, white side down, and wrap the elastic bandage around the limb.

CAUTION

DO NOT touch the white (sterile) side of the dressing. DO NOT allow it to come into contact with any surface other than the wound.

- (2) Insert the elastic bandage into the pressure bar.
- (3) Tighten the elastic bandage.
- (4) Pull back, forcing the pressure bar down onto the pad.
- (5) Wrap the elastic bandage hard over the pressure bar and wrap it over all edges of the pad.
- (6) Secure the hooking ends of the closure bar into the elastic bandage.

WARNING

Emergency bandages, field dressings, and pressure dressings should NOT have a tourniquet-like effect. The dressing must be loosened if the skin beyond the injury becomes cool, blue, or numb.

- b. Chitosan dressing.

Note: The chitosan dressing is used to control serious arterial bleeding. It is not used for wounds with minimal to moderate bleeding. The chitosan dressing can be used in conjunction with a tourniquet to control severe arterial bleeding.

- (1) Hold the foil over-pouch so that the instructions can be read and the unsealed edges are at the top.
- (2) Grasp the unsealed edges.
- (3) Peel open the over-pouch by pulling the unsealed edges apart.
- (4) Use your hand and thumb to trap the dressing between the bottom foil and the green/black polyester backing.
- (5) Hold the dressing by the nonabsorbent green/black backing and discard the foil over-pouch.

Note: Do not let moisture from your hand come into contact with the dressing before you apply the bandage. The moisture could cause the sponge to become sticky.

- (6) Apply the light-colored sponge portion straight over the wound and apply pressure to the green/black backing with your fingers.

Note: Do not let the bandage come into contact with the casualty's eyes.

Performance Steps

(7) Apply manual pressure and maintain the pressure until the dressing adheres and the bleeding stops (as a rule 2 to 4 minutes). Do not try to reposition the bandage once it is applied.

Note: If the bleeding does not stop within 4 minutes, remove the chitosan dressing, apply another chitosan dressing, and apply manual pressure again. Do not apply a new chitosan dressing over an old one. The old chitosan dressing must be removed so that the sponge portion of the new chitosan dressing can come into contact with the blood and fluids from the wound.

(8) Apply a field dressing or a cravat to secure the chitosan dressing and to prevent contamination.

Note: For smaller wounds, you may want to cut the chitosan dressing before applying it to the wound. In this way, you will have a second dressing to apply if the first dressing is not sufficient to stop the bleeding or to use on another wound (entrance and exit wound, for example).

c. Field dressing.

(1) Apply the dressing, white side down, straight over the wound.

CAUTION

DO NOT touch the white (sterile) side of the dressing. DO NOT allow it to come into contact with any surface other than the wound.

(2) Wrap each tail, one at a time, in opposite directions around the wound so the dressing is covered and both sides are sealed.

(3) Tie the tails into a nonslip knot over the outer edge of the dressing—NOT over the wound.

(4) Check the dressing to make sure that it is tied hard enough to prevent slipping without causing a tourniquet-like effect.

3. Apply manual pressure and elevate the arm or leg to reduce bleeding, if necessary.

a. Apply firm manual pressure over the dressing for 5 to 10 minutes, when practical.

b. Elevate the injured part above the level of the heart, unless a fracture is suspected and has not been splinted.

4. If a field dressing was applied and bleeding continues, apply a pressure dressing.

a. Keep the arm or leg elevated.

b. Place a wad of padding straight over the wound.

c. Place an improvised dressing over the wad of padding and wrap it hard around the limb.

d. Tie the ends in a nonslip knot straight over the wound.

e. Check the dressing to make sure that it does not have a tourniquet-like effect.

Note: If the bleeding stops, watch the casualty always, and check for other injuries.

Performance Steps

Note: If the bleeding continues despite proper application of a field dressing and a pressure dressing, an emergency bandage, or a chitosan dressing; or if the wound is a partial or complete amputation of the arm or leg, apply a tourniquet on the injured extremity. If only part of a hand or foot has been severed, the bleeding should be stopped using a pressure dressing.

5. Apply a tourniquet.

a. Combat application tourniquet (C-A-T).

(1) Remove the C-A-T from the pouch.

(2) Slide the wounded extremity through the loop of the self-adhering band.

Note: The C-A-T is packaged in its one-handed configuration.

(3) Position the C-A-T.

(a) If the wound is above the knee or elbow, position the C-A-T 2 inches above a bleeding site.

CAUTION

Never place a tourniquet straight over a wound, fracture, or joint.

(b) Never place a tourniquet straight over a wound, fracture, or joint.

(4) Pull the free running end of the self-adhering band tight and fasten it back on itself. DO NOT adhere the band past the windlass clip.

Note: The friction adaptor buckle is not necessary for proper C-A-T application to an arm. However, use it as added protection when using two hands to apply the C-A-T to a leg. To use it, route the self-adhering band through the friction adaptor buckle. This also prevents the strap from loosening during transport.

(5) Twist the windlass rod until the bleeding has stopped.

(6) Lock the windlass rod in place with the windlass clip.

Note: For added security (and always before moving a casualty), secure the windlass rod with the windlass strap. For small extremities, also secure the self-adhering band under the windlass strap.

(7) For small extremities, wind the self-adhering band around the extremity and over the windlass rod.

(8) Grasp the windlass strap, pull it tight, and adhere it to the opposite hook on the windlass clip.

b. Improvised tourniquet.

(1) Make a tourniquet at least 2 inches wide.

(2) Position the tourniquet.

(a) Place the tourniquet over the smoothed sleeve or trouser leg if possible.

(b) If the wound is above the knee or elbow, place the tourniquet around the limb 2 to 4 inches above the wound between the wound and the heart but not on a joint or straight over a wound or a fracture.

Performance Steps

(c) If the wound is below the knee or elbow, first position the tourniquet band 2 inches above the wound. If a tourniquet applied below the knee or elbow is not successful at stopping the bleeding, apply a second tourniquet 2 to 4 inches above the joint (knee or elbow). Do not remove the first tourniquet until the second tourniquet has been applied.

(3) Put on the tourniquet.

(a) Tie a half knot.

(b) Place a stick (or similar object) on top of the half knot.

(c) Tie a full knot over the stick.

(d) Twist the stick until the tourniquet is tight around the limb and bright red bleeding has stopped.

Note: In the case of an amputation, dark oozing blood may continue for a short time.

(4) Secure the tourniquet. The tourniquet can be secured using the ends of the tourniquet band or with another piece of cloth, as long as the stick does not unwind.

Note: If a limb is amputated, the stump should be padded and bandaged (do not cover the tourniquet). If the casualty has suffered an incomplete amputation, splint the limb.

Note: If a tourniquet was applied to control bleeding under fire (once the tactical situation allows), you can loosen the tourniquet after other measures have been applied if it has been in place for less than 6 hours. However, do NOT remove it. Use direct pressure, a pressure dressing, or a chitosan dressing to control the bleeding prior to loosening the tourniquet. If unable to control bleeding by these methods, retighten the tourniquet until the bleeding stops.

6. If a tourniquet was applied, mark the casualty's forehead with a letter T and the time—using any available writing instrument.

7. If applicable and the situation allows, save severed limbs or body parts and transport them with, but out of sight of, the casualty.

Note: Body parts should be wrapped in dry, sterile dressing and placed in a dry, plastic bag and, in turn, placed in a cool container (do not soak in water or saline or allow to freeze). If your location in the field/combat does not allow for the correct preserving of parts, do what you can.

8. Watch the casualty always for life-threatening conditions, check for other injuries (if necessary), and treat for shock. Seek medical aid.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Use the same dressing each time. If a chitosan dressing is being tested, you will need to use a simulated dressing and have a field dressing or cravat available to secure it. If a field dressing is being used, have materials available for a pressure dressing (wadding and cravat or a strip of cloth). Have one Soldier play the part of the casualty and another apply the dressing(s). Use a moulage or mark a place on the casualty's arm or leg to simulate a wound. For applying a tourniquet, use a mannequin or simulated arm or leg (padded length of 2-inch by 4-inch wood with a glove or boot on one end) with a dressing

applied to the correct place on the arm or leg. Under no circumstances will a live simulated casualty be used to evaluate the application of a tourniquet. Place the tourniquet materials nearby.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier to do, in order, the first aid steps required to apply a dressing and, if necessary, a pressure dressing on the casualty's wound. When testing step 1, you can vary the test by telling the Soldier that clothing is stuck to the wound or that a chemical environment exists. After steps 2 and 3, tell the Soldier that the bleeding has not stopped. After step 4, tell the Soldier the bleeding is continuing and ask the Soldier to describe and perform the first aid on the simulated arm or leg provided. After step 5, ask the Soldier what should be done to indicate that a tourniquet has been applied and what should be done with a severed limb, if applicable. Do not evaluate step 9 in the simulated mode.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Uncovered the wound, unless clothing was stuck to the wound or in a chemical environment.	---	---
2. Applied the casualty's dressing.	---	---
a. Applied the dressing/pad straight over the wound.		
b. Covered the edges of dressing/pad.		
c. Secured the bandage well.		
d. Did not create a tourniquet-like effect with the dressing.		
3. Applied manual pressure and elevated the arm or leg, if necessary.	---	---
4. If a field dressing was applied and bleeding continued, applied a pressure dressing.	---	---
a. Placed the wad of padding straight over the wound.		
b. Wrapped the cloth tight around the limb.		
c. Tied a nonslip knot straight over the wound.		
d. Did not create a tourniquet-like effect with the dressing.		
5. Applied a tourniquet, if necessary.	---	---
a. Improvised tourniquet, if used, was at least 2 inches wide.		

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
<p>b. Tourniquet was placed at least 2 inches above the wound between the wound and the heart but not on a joint or straight over a wound or a fracture.</p> <p>c. Tourniquet was well applied and secured.</p>		
6. Performed steps 1 through 5, as necessary, in sequence.	---	---
7. If a tourniquet was applied, marked the casualty's forehead with a letter T and the time.	---	---
8. If applicable and the situation allowed, saved severed limbs or body parts and transported them with the casualty.	---	---
9. Watched the casualty always for life-threatening conditions, checked for other injuries (if necessary), and treated for shock. Sought medical aid.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related:

081-831-1051

Transport a Casualty using a Military Vehicle

Conditions: You have evaluated and provided first aid to a casualty. You have determined that the casualty must be evacuated to receive further medical treatment. A military vehicle (ground vehicle or rotary-wing aircraft) is available. You have a litter and straps to secure the patient and the litter.

Standards: Secure the casualty on a litter and load the litter onto a military vehicle (ground vehicle or rotary-wing aircraft) without causing undo pain or further harm to the casualty.

Performance Steps

1. Determine the order in which casualties are to be evacuated.
 - a. First priority.
 - (1) Serious respiratory problems.
 - (2) Severe blood loss.
 - (3) Second and third degree burns of the face, neck, or perineum.
 - (4) Closed head injuries, with decreasing mental status.
 - (5) Poor blood circulation in a limb or with no detectable circulation in a limb.
 - b. Second priority.
 - (1) Chest wounds.
 - (2) Abdominal wounds.
 - (3) Extensive, serious eye injuries.

Performance Steps

- (4) Fractures.
- (5) Serious second and third degree burns not involving the face, neck, or perineum.
- c. Third priority.
 - (1) Injuries, which have been stabilized and do not threaten the casualty with loss of life or limb.
 - (2) Injuries so severe that only extensive and complicated medical treatment can prolong life.
2. Move a casualty using a four-man litter squad.
 - a. Prepare the litter.
 - (1) Open a standard litter.
 - (2) Lock the spreader bars at each end of the litter with your foot.
 - b. Prepare the casualty.
 - (1) Place the casualty onto the litter using the modified two-man arms carry or the modified two-man fore-and-aft carry.
 - (2) Secure the casualty to the litter with litter straps.
 - c. Lift the litter.
 - (1) Position one squad member at each litter handle with the litter squad leader at the casualty's right shoulder.

Note: The leader should be at the right shoulder to monitor the casualty's condition.

- (2) On the preparatory command, "Prepare to lift," the four bearers kneel beside and grasp the litter handles.
- (3) On the command, "Lift," all bearers rise together.
- (4) On the command, "Four man carry, move," all bearers walk forward in unison.

(a) If the casualty does not have a fractured leg, carry the casualty feet first on level ground and head first when going uphill.

(b) If the casualty has a fractured leg, carry the casualty head first, except when going uphill.

(5) To change direction of movement, such as from feet first to head first, begin in a litter post carry position. The front and back bearers release the litter and the middle bearers rotate the litter and themselves.

3. Load casualties onto a military vehicle.

- a. Ground ambulance.

Note: Ground ambulances have medical specialists to take care of the casualties during evacuation. Follow any special instructions for loading, securing, or unloading casualties.

- (1) Make sure each litter casualty is secured to his or her litter. Use the litter straps when available.
- (2) Load the most serious casualty last.
- (3) Load the casualty head first (head in the direction of travel) rather than feet first.
- (4) Make sure each litter is secured to the vehicle.

Note: Unload casualties in reverse order, most seriously injured casualty first.

Performance Steps

b. Air ambulance.

Note: Air ambulances have medical specialists to take care of the casualties during evacuation. Follow any special instructions for loading, securing, or unloading casualties.

(1) Remain 50 yards from the helicopter until the litter squad is signaled to approach the aircraft.

(2) Approach the aircraft in full view of the aircraft crew, maintaining visual confirmation that the crew is aware of the approach of the litter party. Ensure that the aircrew can continue to distinguish friendly personnel from enemy personnel at all times. Maintain a low silhouette when approaching the aircraft.

(a) Approach UH-60/UH-1 aircraft from the sides. Do not approach from the front or rear. If you must move to the opposite side of the aircraft, approach from the side to the skin of the aircraft. Then, hug the skin of the aircraft, and move around the front of the aircraft to the other side.

WARNING

Never go around the rear of UH-60 or UH-1 aircraft.

(b) Approach CH-47/CH-46 aircraft from the rear.

(c) Approach MH-53 aircraft from the sides to the rear ramp, avoiding the tail rotor.

(d) Approach nonstandard aircraft in full view of the crew, avoiding tail rotors, main rotors, and propellers.

(e) Approach high performance aircraft (M/C-130/-141B/-17/-5B) from the rear, under the guidance of the aircraft loadmaster or the ground control party.

(3) Load the most seriously injured casualty last.

(4) Load the casualty who will occupy the upper berth first, and then load the next litter casualty immediately under the first casualty.

Note: This is done to keep the casualty from accidentally falling on another casualty if his litter is dropped before it is secured.

(5) When casualties are placed lengthwise, position them with their heads toward the direction of travel.

(6) Make sure each litter casualty is secured to his or her litter.

(7) Make sure each litter is secured to the aircraft.

Note: Unload casualties in reverse order, most seriously injured casualty first.

c. Ground military vehicles.

Note: 1. Nonmedical military vehicles may be used to evacuate casualties when no medical evacuation vehicles are available.

2. If medical personnel are present, follow their instructions for loading, securing, and unloading casualties.

(1) When loading casualties into the vehicle, load the most seriously injured casualty last.

Performance Steps

- (2) When a casualty is placed lengthwise, load the casualty with his or her head pointing forward, toward the direction of travel.
- (3) Ensure each litter casualty is secured to the litter. Use litter straps, if available.
- (4) Secure each litter to the vehicle as it is loaded into place. Make sure each litter is secured.

Note: Unload casualties in reverse order, most seriously injured casualty first.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with litters, straps, a casualty, military vehicle(s), and assistants.

Brief Soldier: Tell the soldier that he has a stable casualty requiring evacuation and that a vehicle is available. He has assistants available, who must be directed in their efforts. Describe the casualty's injuries and tell the soldier to determine what priority to assign to the casualty, and then load the casualty for evacuation.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Determine the order in which casualties are to be evacuated.	--	--
2. Move a casualty using a four-man litter squad.	--	--
3. Load casualties onto a military vehicle.	--	--

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related:

081-831-1046

Transport a Casualty

Conditions: You have evaluated and given first aid to a casualty. You need to move the casualty to get further medical aid and may have to remove him/her from a vehicle before transporting. Assistance from other Soldiers may be available. You will need material that will not cut or bind the casualty (cravat bandages or litter straps), poncho, shirts or jackets, and poles or tree limbs. A SKED or Talon litter may be available.

Standards: Transport the casualty using an appropriate carry or litter without dropping or causing further injury to the casualty.

Performance Steps

1. Remove a casualty from a vehicle, if necessary.

WARNING

If the casualty was involved in a vehicle crash you should always consider that he/she may have a spinal injury. Unless there is an immediate life-threatening situation (such as fire, explosion), do NOT move the casualty with a suspected back or neck injury. Seek medical personnel for guidance about how to transport the casualty.

- a. Laterally.

(1) With the assistance of another Soldier grasp the casualty's arms and legs.

(2) While stabilizing the casualty's head and neck as much as possible, lift the casualty free of the vehicle and move him/her to a safe place on the ground.

Note: If medical personnel are available, they may stabilize the casualty's head, neck, and upper body with a special board or splint.

- b. Upward.

Note: You may have to remove a casualty upward from a vehicle; for example, from the passenger compartment of a wheeled vehicle lying on its side or from the hatch of an armored vehicle sitting upright.

(1) You may place a pistol belt or similar material around the casualty's chest to help pull him/her from the vehicle.

(2) Closed head injuries, with decreasing mental status.

(3) Poor blood circulation in a limb or with no detectable circulation in a limb.

Note: If medical personnel are available, they may stabilize the casualty's head, neck, and upper body with a special board or splint.

(4) Depending on the situation, move the casualty from the topmost side of the vehicle to a safe place on the ground.

2. Select an appropriate method to transport the casualty.

WARNING

DO NOT use manual carries to move a casualty with a neck or spine injury, unless a life-threatening hazard is in the immediate area. Seek medical personnel for guidance about how to move and transport the casualty.

a. Fireman's carry. Use for an unconscious or casualty with severe injuries.

- b. Neck drag. Use in combat, in general for short distances

CAUTION

DO NOT use the neck drag if the casualty has a broken arm or a suspected neck injury.

c. Cradle-drop drag. Use to move a casualty who cannot walk when being moved up or down stairs.

d. Use litters if materials are available, if the casualty must be moved a long distance, or if manual carries will cause further injury.

Performance Steps

3. Transport the casualty.

a. Fireman's carry.

- (1) Kneel at the casualty's uninjured side.
- (2) Place casualty's arms above his/her head.
- (3) Cross the ankle on the injured side over the opposite ankle.
- (4) Place one of your hands on the shoulder farther from you and your other hand on his/her hip or thigh.
- (5) Roll the casualty toward you onto his/her abdomen.
- (6) Straddle the casualty.
- (7) Place your hands under the casualty's chest and lock them together.
- (8) Lift the casualty to his/her knees as you move backward.
- (9) Continue to move backward, thus straightening the casualty's legs and locking the knees.
- (10) Walk forward, bringing the casualty to a standing position but tilted somewhat backward to prevent the knees from buckling.
- (11) Maintain constant support of the casualty with one arm. Free your other arm, at once grasp his/her wrist, and raise the arm high.
- (12) Right away pass your head under the casualty's raised arm, releasing it as you pass under it.
- (13) Move fast to face the casualty.
- (14) Secure your arms around his/her waist.
- (15) Right away place your foot between his/her feet and spread them (just about 6 to 8 inches apart).
- (16) Again grasp the casualty's wrist and raise the arm high above your head.
- (17) Bend down and pull the casualty's arm over and down your shoulder bringing his/her body across your shoulders. At the same time pass your arm between the legs.
- (18) Grasp the casualty's wrist with one hand while placing your other hand on your knee for support.
- (19) Rise with the casualty positioned.

Note: Your other hand is free for use as needed.

b. Neck drag.

WARNING

DO NOT use the neck drag if the casualty has a broken and/or fractured arm or a suspected neck injury. If the casualty is unconscious, protect his/her head from the ground.

- (1) Tie the casualty's hands together at the wrists. (If conscious, the casualty may clasp his/her hands together around your neck.)
- (2) Straddle the casualty in a kneeling face-to-face position.

Performance Steps

- (3) Loop the casualty's tied hands over and/or around your neck.
- (4) Crawl forward, looking ahead, dragging the casualty with you.

c. Cradle-drop drag.

- (1) With the casualty lying on his/her back, kneel at the head.
- (2) Slide your hands, palms up, under the casualty's shoulders.
- (3) Get a firm hold under his/her armpits.
- (4) Rise somewhat, supporting the casualty's head on one of your

forearms.

Note: You may bring your elbows together and let the casualty's head rest on both of your forearms.

(5) With the casualty in a semi sitting position, rise and drag the casualty backwards.

(6) Back down the steps (or up if appropriate), supporting the casualty's head and body and letting the hips and legs drop from step to step.

d. SKED or Talon litter.

(1) Prepare a SKED litter.

(a) Remove the SKED from the pack and place on the ground.

(b) Unfasten the retainer strap, step on the foot end of the SKED, and unroll it all the way to the opposite end.

(c) Bend the SKED in half and back roll. Repeat with the opposite end of the litter. The SKED litter will now lay flat.

(2) Prepare a Talon litter.

(a) Stand the liter upright and release buckles from the liter.

(b) Place the litter on the ground and extend it all the way with the fabric side facing up.

(c) Keeping the litter as straight as possible, grab the handles and rotate them inward until all the hinges rotate and lock.

Note: This action is done best using two individuals on each end of the litter executing this step at the same time.

(d) While maintaining the hinges in the locked position, apply firm, steady pressure on the spreader bar with your foot. Increase pressure with your foot until the spreader bar locks into place.

(3) Place the casualty on the litter.

(a) Place the litter next to the casualty. Ensure that the head end of the litter is adjacent to the head of the casualty.

(b) Log roll the casualty and slide the litter as far under him/her as possible. Taking care, roll the casualty down onto the litter.

(c) Slide the casualty to the center of the litter. Be sure to keep the spinal column as straight as possible.

Performance Steps

(4) Secure the casualty to the litter using litter straps or other available materials.

Note: For a SKED litter, lift the sides of the SKED and fasten the four cross straps to the buckles straight opposite the straps. Lift the foot portion of the SKED, feed the foot straps through the unused grommets at the foot end of the SKED, and fasten to the buckles.

e. Improvised litter.

(1) Use the poncho and two poles or limbs.

(a) Open the poncho and lay the two poles lengthwise across the center, forming three equal sections.

(b) Reach in, pull the hood up toward you, and lay it flat on the poncho.

(c) Fold one section of the poncho over the first pole.

(d) Fold the remaining section of the poncho over the second pole to the first pole.

(2) Use shirts or jackets and two poles or limbs.

(a) Button two or three shirts or jackets and turn them inside out, leaving the sleeves inside.

(b) Lay the shirts or jackets on the ground and pass the poles through the sleeves.

(3) Place the casualty on the litter.

(4) Lift the litter.

(a) Raise the litter together.

(b) Keep the litter as level as possible.

Note: Use caution when transporting on a slope, incline, and/or hill.

Evaluation Preparation: Setup: For a one-man carry, you will need another Soldier to play the part of the casualty. If a vehicle is available, you can place the casualty in it to test step 1. Tell the casualty what the injuries are and whether he/she is conscious or unconscious. Obtain appropriate materials (strip of cloth, poles, branches, poncho, blanket, and so forth) as necessary, to test the carries.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier that the casualty has been given first aid. Describe a situation in terms of the casualty's injuries, whether the casualty is conscious or unconscious, whether enemy fire can be expected or not, and what distance the casualty must be moved. Tell the Soldier to transport the casualty using an appropriate carry or a litter.

Note: Do not make the situation too complex. Remember, when scoring the Soldier, two or more carries might be appropriate for the situation. The most important thing is that the selected carry should not cause further injury to the casualty and should not endanger the lives of the two Soldiers.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Removed the casualty from a vehicle, if necessary.	---	---
2. Selected an appropriate method of transporting the casualty.	---	---
3. Transported the casualty.	---	---
4. Did NOT cause further unnecessary injury.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 4-25.11 (FM 21-11)

081-831-1007

Perform First Aid for Burns

Conditions: You see a casualty who is suffering from a burn. You will need the casualty's emergency bandage or field dressing and canteen of water.

Standards: Give first aid for a burn without causing further injury to the casualty. Eliminate the source of the burn, if necessary. Apply a dressing without pressure over the burn. Ensure that the sides of the dressing are sealed and the dressing does not slip.

Performance Steps

1. Eliminate the source of the burn.
 - a. Thermal burns. Remove the casualty from the source of the burn. If the casualty's clothing is on fire, cover the casualty with a field jacket or any large piece of nonsynthetic material and roll him/her on the ground to put out the flames.

CAUTION

Synthetic materials, such as nylon, may melt and cause further injury.

- b. Electrical burns. If the casualty is in contact with an electrical source, turn the electricity off if the switch is nearby. If the electricity cannot be turned off, use any nonconductive material (rope, clothing, or dry wood) to drag the casualty away from the source.

WARNING

Do not touch the casualty or the electrical source with your bare hands. You will be injured too!

Performance Steps

WARNING

High voltage electrical burns from an electrical source or lightning may cause temporary unconsciousness, difficulties in breathing, or difficulties with the heart (irregular heartbeat).

- c. Chemical burns.

WARNING

Blisters caused by a blister agent are in fact burns. Do not try to decontaminate skin where blisters have already formed. If blisters have not formed, decontaminate the skin.

- (1) Remove liquid chemicals from the burned casualty by flushing with as much water or other nonflammable fluid as possible.
 - (2) Remove dry chemicals with care, by brushing them off with a clean, dry cloth. If large amounts of water are available, flush the area. Otherwise, do not apply water.
 - (3) Smother burning white phosphorus with water, a wet cloth, or wet mud. Keep the area covered with the wet material.
- d. Laser burns. Move the casualty away from the source while avoiding eye contact with the beam source. If possible, wear appropriate laser eye protection.

Note: After the casualty has been removed from the source of the burn, always monitor the casualty for conditions that may require basic lifesaving measures.

2. Uncover the burn.

WARNING

DO NOT uncover the wound in a chemical environment. Exposure could cause additional harm.

- a. Cut clothing covering the burned area.

WARNING

DO NOT attempt to remove clothing that is stuck to the wound. Additional harm could result.

- b. Take care in lifting away clothing covering the burned area.

CAUTION

Do not pull clothing over the burns.

- c. If the casualty's hand(s) or wrist(s) have been burned, remove jewelry (rings, watches) and place them in his/her pockets.
3. Apply the casualty's dressing to the burn.

Note: If the burn is caused by white phosphorus, the dressing must be wet.

Performance Steps

CAUTION

Do not place the dressing over the face or genital area.

Do not break the blisters.

Do not apply grease or ointments to the burns.

- a. Apply the dressing/pad, white side down, straight over the wound.
 - b. Wrap the tails (or the elastic bandage) so that the dressing/pad is covered and both sides are sealed.
 - c. For a field dressing, tie the tails into a nonslip knot over the outer edge of the dressing, not over the wound. For an emergency bandage, secure the hooking ends of the closure bar into the elastic bandage.
 - d. Check to ensure that the dressing is applied with minimal pressure over the burn but firm enough to prevent slipping.
- Note:* Electricity often leaves entry and exit burns. Both burns should be treated.
- Note:* If the casualty is conscious and not nauseated, give him/her small amounts of water to drink.
4. Watch the casualty always for life-threatening conditions, check for other injuries (if necessary), and treat for shock. Seek medical aid.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* You will need another Soldier to play the part of the casualty. Simulate the burn(s) by marking the casualty's body with a suitable material. Provide materials appropriate for the burn being simulated (piece of rope, blanket, water, dressing, or clean cloth). If a dressing is used, use the same one each time. If an electrical burn is being simulated, have the casualty lie on a piece of wire or rope and have enough materials available to treat two simulated burns.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is burning the casualty and have the Soldier take appropriate action. After the Soldier completes step 1, tell the Soldier that the casualty is conscious and has no injuries other than burns. When testing step 2, you can vary the test by telling the Soldier that clothing is stuck to the burn or that a chemical environment exists. Do not evaluate step 4 in the simulated mode.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Eliminated the source of the burn.	---	---
2. Uncovered the burn, unless clothing was stuck to the wound or in a chemical environment.	---	---
3. Applied the casualty's dressing. <ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Applied the dressing/pad straight over the wound.b. Covered the edges of the dressing/pad.	---	---

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
c. Secured the bandage well.		
d. Applied the dressing with minimal pressure over the burn but firm enough to prevent slipping.		
4. Watched the casualty always for life-threatening conditions, checked for other injuries (if necessary), and treated for shock. Sought medical aid.	--	--

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 4-25.11 (FM 21-11)

052-192-1270

React to Possible Improvised Explosive Device (IED)

Conditions: Located at <https://www.us.army.mil/suite/doc/23838478>

052-192-1271

Identify Visual Indicators of an Explosive Device (IED)

Conditions: Located at <https://www.us.army.mil/suite/doc/23838510>

093-89D-1264

Search Suspect Vehicle for Improvised Explosive Device (IED)

Conditions: In a contemporary operational environment (COE), given force protection or any EOD mission that requires the searching of vehicles for IED's using EOD specific tools and equipment; appropriate protective ensembles; chemical, biological, radioactive, nuclear and explosive (CBRNE) detection and monitoring sets; communication and navigation tracking systems; electronic counter measures (ECM) capability; supporting unit's operation order (OPORD) and standing operating procedures (SOP), maps and overlays; and target site intelligence requirements.

Standards: Identify all suspicious items that can be classified as possible IED's during a vehicle search IAW applicable TM's without error.

Performance Steps

1. Check the area around the vehicle.
2. Ensure vehicle is stabilized and blocked to prevent rocking, tilting or moving.
3. Conduct external search of vehicle to include, but not limited to, underside, bumpers, wheel wells, and grill.
4. Open trunk and engine compartment remotely, if possible, to gain access.
5. Conduct search of trunk and engine compartment.

Performance Steps

6. Open interior of vehicle remotely, if possible, to gain access.
7. Conduct search of interior of vehicle.
8. Record and mark the location of any suspect item.
9. Report location of suspect item.
10. Continue search if necessary.
11. Verify all applicable safety precautions are followed.

Evaluation Preparation: Gather all items required in the condition statement (or appropriate substitutions) and ensure all safety requirements are met.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Checked the surrounding area around the vehicle.	---	---
2. Ensured vehicle is stabilized.	---	---
3. Searched the exterior of the vehicle.	---	---
4. Used remote means to gain access to the vehicle.	---	---
5. Searched the interior of the vehicle.	---	---
6. Followed all applicable safety precautions.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required: TM 60A-1-1-22

Related:

301-371-1000

Report Intelligence Information

Conditions: You have observed enemy activity and significant terrain and weather features. You must at once report the activity to your chain of command via radio, wire, cable, or messenger.

Standards: Submit observations in a spot report, using the size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment observed (SALUTE) format, to your chain of command within 5 minutes of observing enemy activity. Identify in the report the size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment observed.

Performance Steps

1. Use the SALUTE format to ensure essential information is reported. If unable to make determination, report activity as unknown.
 - a. **S** Size. Report the number of personnel, vehicles, aircraft, or size of an object. Make an estimate if necessary.
 - b. **A** Activity. Report detailed account of actions; for example, direction of movement, troops digging in, artillery fire, type of attack, NBC activity, and so forth.
 - c. **L** Location. Report where you saw the activity. Include grid coordinates or reference from a known point, including the distance and direction from the known point.
 - d. **U** Unit. Report the enemy's unit. If the unit is unknown, report any distinctive features, such as uniforms, patches or colored tabs, headgear, vehicle identification markings, and so forth.
 - e. **T** Time. Report the time and date the activity was observed, not the time you report it. Always report local or Zulu time.
 - f. **E** Equipment. Report all equipment associated with the activity, such as weapons, vehicles, and tools. If unable to identify the equipment, provide as much detail as you can so an identification can be made by higher headquarters.
 - g. **Remarks**. Include any information not included in the SALUTE format.
2. Provide field spot report to appropriate authority or chain of command using available commo.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Position two to four personnel (dressed in aggressor uniforms if available) where they are observable with the naked eye (or binoculars if available). Direct the aggressors to perform some type of activity such as setting up camp, cleaning weapons, working on a vehicle, or studying maps. Provide the Soldier with a 1:50,000-scale topographic map of the test area. If you require the Soldier to write the report, provide paper and a pen or pencil. If you require the Soldier to radio the report to someone else, provide two radios and an SOI.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Recorded observations of enemy activity in a spot report which includes—	--	--
a. Size.		
b. Activity.		
c. Location.		

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
d. Unit.		
e. Time.		
f. Equipment.		
2. Reported all information to the appropriate authority/chain of command within 5 minutes of the observation.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required: TM 60A-1-1-22

Related:

071-331-0804

Perform Surveillance without the Aid of Electronic Device

Conditions: Given an assigned sector of observation, binoculars, and a requirement to observe that sector.

Standards: Identify potential activity indicators in sector, conduct a visual search, and submit a SALUTE report.

Performance Steps

1. Identify potential activity indicators in sector (figure 071-331-0804-1).

SIGHT Look for--	SOUND Listen for--	TOUCH Feel for--	SMELL Smell for--
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enemy personnel, vehicles, and aircraft • Sudden or unusual movement • New local inhabitants • Smoke or dust • Unusual movement of farm or wild animals • Unusual activity—or lack of activity—by local inhabitants, especially at times or places that are normally inactive or active • Vehicle or personnel tracks • Movement of local inhabitants along uncleared routes, areas, or paths • Signs that the enemy has occupied the area • Evidence of changing trends in threats • Recently cut foliage • Muzzle flashes, lights, fires, or reflections • Unusual amount (too much or too little) of trash 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Running engines or track sounds • Voices • Metallic sounds • Gunfire, by weapon type • Unusual calm or silence • Dismounted movement • Aircraft 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Warm coals and other materials in a fire • Fresh tracks • Age of food or trash 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vehicle exhaust • Burning petroleum products • Food cooking • Aged food in trash • Human waste
OTHER CONSIDERATIONS			
Armed Elements	Locations of factional forces, mine fields, and potential threats.		
Homes and Buildings	Condition of roofs, doors, windows, lights, power lines, water, sanitation, roads, bridges, crops, and livestock.		
Infrastructure	Functioning stores, service stations, and so on.		
People	Numbers, gender, age, residence or DPRE status, apparent health, clothing, daily activities, and leadership.		
Contrast	Has anything changed? For example, are there new locks on buildings? Are windows boarded up or previously boarded up windows now open, indicating a change in how a building is expected to be used? Have buildings been defaced with graffiti?		

Figure 071-331-0804-1. Potential indicators

- a. Make a fast overall search of the entire area by raising your eyes right away from just in front of your position to the maximum range you wish to observe (figure 071-331-0804-2). (For a wide area, subdivide and repeat the procedure.)



Figure 071-331-0804-2. Fast overall search

- b. Observe by overlapping, 50-meter-deep strips of terrain in detail, searching back and forth left to right, right to left (figure 071-331-0804-3).

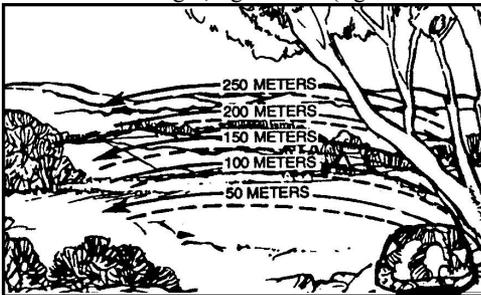


Figure 071-331-0804-3. Overlapping strip search

- c. Search suspicious spots in detail.
2. Conduct a visual search.
 - a. Conduct a visual search in daylight.
 - (1) Use rapid scan technique (figure 071-331-0822-4).

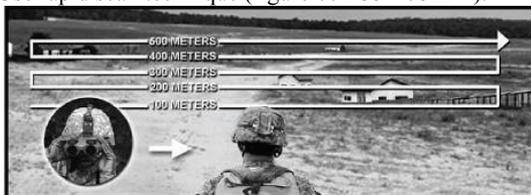


Figure 071-331-0804-4. Rapid/Slow scan.

- (a) Search a strip of terrain about 100 meters deep, from left-to-right, pausing at short intervals.
 - (b) Search another 100-meter strip farther out, from right-to-left, overlapping the first strip scanned, pausing at short intervals.
 - (c) Continue this method until the entire sector of fire has been searched.
- (2) Use slow scan technique.

Performance Steps

Note: Slow scan search technique uses the same process as the rapid scan but with more intent; this means a slower, side-to-side movement and more frequent pauses.

- (3) Use detailed search technique (figure 071-331-0804-5).

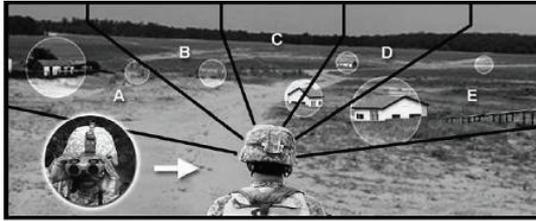


Figure 071-331-0804-5. Detailed

Note: The detailed search is like the slow scan, but searching smaller areas with frequent pauses and almost incremental movement.

- b. Conduct a visual search in limited visibility.

- (1) Accustom your eyes to low light before night operations by doing one of the following:

- (a) Stay in a secure, darkened area for 30 minutes (for example, assembly area at night, initial rally point).
- (b) Stay in a red-lighted area for 20 minutes, followed by 10 minutes in darkness, if applicable.
- (c) Wear red goggles for 20 minutes, followed by 10 minutes in darkness, if applicable.

- (2) Scan areas at night (figure 071-331-0804-6).

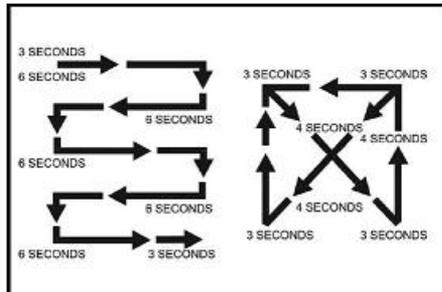


Figure 071-331-0804-6. Night scanning patterns

- (a) Move your eyes in short, quick, irregular movements.
- (b) Use off-center vision to observe specific objects by looking about 6 to 10 degrees left, right, above, or below them.
- (c) Outlines that should be obscured.
- (d) Bright colors or reflections that should be subdued.
- (e) Tracks, footpaths, and piles of dirt and litter.
- (f) Over clearing of fields of fire and observation.

Performance Steps

3. Submit SALUTE report (figure 071-331-0804-7).

Line No.	Type Info	Description
1	(S)ize/Who	Expressed as a quantity and echelon or size. For example, report "10 enemy Infantrymen" (not "a rifle squad").
If multiple units are involved in the activity you are reporting, you can make multiple entries.		
2	(A)ctivity/What	Relate this line to the PIR being reported. Make it a concise bullet statement. Report what you saw the enemy doing, for example, "emplacing mines in the road."
3	(L)ocation/Where	This is generally a grid coordinate, and should include the 100,000-meter grid zone designator. The entry can also be an address, if appropriate, but still should include an eight-digit grid coordinate. If the reported activity involves movement, for example, advance or withdrawal, then the entry for location will include "from" and "to" entries. The route used goes under "Equipment/How."
4	(U)nit/Who	Identify who is performing the activity described in the "Activity/What" entry. Include the complete designation of a military unit, and give the name and other identifying information or features of civilians or insurgent groups.
5	(T)ime/When	For future events, give the DTG for when the activity will initiate. Report ongoing events as such: Report the time you saw the enemy activity, not the time you report it. Always report local or Zulu (Z) time.
6	(E)quipment/How	Clarify, complete, and expand on previous entries. Include information about equipment involved, tactics used, and any other essential elements of information (EEI) not already reported in the previous lines.

Figure 071-331-0804-7. SALUTE format

a. Accustom your eyes to low light before night operations by doing one of the following:

- (1) Stay in a secure, darkened area for 30 minutes (for example, assembly area at night, initial rally point).
- (2) Stay in a red-lighted area for 20 minutes, followed by 10 minutes in darkness.
- (3) Wear red goggles for 20 minutes, followed by 10 minutes in darkness.

b. Scan search areas at night by moving your eyes in short, quick, and irregular movements (figure 071-331-0804-8).



Figure 071-331-0804-9. Night vision search

Performance Steps

- c. Use off-center vision to observe specific objects by looking about 6 to 10 degrees left, right, above, or below them (figure 071-331-0804-9).

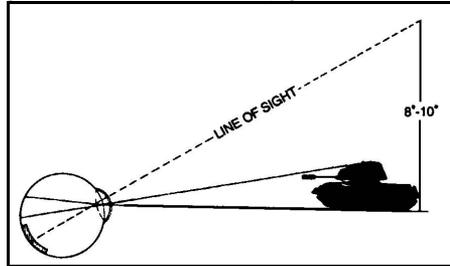


Figure 071-331-0804-9. Off-center vision

- d. Preserve night vision by—
- (1) Closing both eyes when exposed to bright light.
 - (2) Closing one eye only and observing with other when surveillance must be maintained.

Note: Maintaining surveillance is one of the basic, critical combat skills. Because it is hard to tell if the above techniques are being used, frequent training is the only way to ensure mastery of this skill. This task is easy to integrate with other tactical training. In addition to the training given above, frequent familiarization with the sounds of vehicles and weapons fire, with common smells (such as gasoline, campfires, and deodorants) in the field environment, is recommended.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Identified potential activity indicators in sector.	---	---
2. Conducted a visual search.	---	---
3. Submitted SALUTE report.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required: FM 3-21.75 (FM 21-75)

Related:

301-348-1050

Report Information of Potential Intelligence Value

- Conditions:**
1. The commander tasks you to report information concerning the enemy, terrain, and weather in specific locations.
 2. You have observed enemy activity and significant terrain and weather features.
 3. You have a means of communication (radio, wire, cable, or messenger).

Standards: Transmit information to the receiving authority in size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE format) and significant terrain and weather conditions via radio, wire, cable, or written message with a messenger within 5 minutes after observation with six out of six SALUTE items identified.

Note: Your unit standing operating procedures (SOPs) will specify the receiving authority. Examples of receiving authorities are company commander, team commander, or S2 (Intelligence Officer [U.S. Army]) section.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Position two to four personnel (dressed in aggressor uniforms if available) where they are observable with the naked eye (or binoculars if available). Direct the aggressors to perform some type of activity such as setting up camp, cleaning weapons, working on a vehicle or studying maps. Provide the Soldier with a 1:50,000-scale topographic map of the test area. If you require the Soldier to write the report, provide paper and a pen or pencil. If you require the Soldier to radio the report to someone else, provide two radios and SOI. Accompany the Soldier being tested to a location where the Soldier can observe the aggressors.

Brief Soldier: Instruct the Soldier to report the activity observed, weather factors, and any significant military aspects of the terrain. Once he/she completes the report, have them select a means of transmitting the report to the next higher headquarters.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Identified—	--	--
a. Enemy order of battle factors (including weapon systems, troop composition, and direction of movement).		
b. Military aspects of terrain; for example, observation and fields of fire, concealment and cover, obstacles, key terrain, and avenues of approach.		
c. Weather factors, such as severe weather, precipitation, surface winds and gusts, and ground visibility.		

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
2. Drafted a message in SALUTE format identifying—	---	---
a. Size.		
b. Activity.		
c. Location.		
d. Unit.		
e. Time.		
f. Equipment.		
3. Transmitted the message selecting the best means according to the conditions; for example, radio, wire, cable, or messenger.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related:

071-000-0006

React to Man-to-Man Contact

Conditions: You are unarmed and facing an unarmed threatening adversary.

Standards: Dominate the enemy using the basic fight strategy by achieving the clinch, gaining a dominant position and finish the fight.

Performance Steps

Note: This task is only a basic introduction to combatives. For advanced combatives, refer to FM 3-25.150.

1. Achieve the clinch.

Note: Controlling a standup fight means controlling the range between fighters. The untrained fighter is above all dangerous at punching range. The goal is to avoid that range. Even if you are the superior striker, the most dangerous thing you can do is to spend time at the range where the enemy has the highest probability of victory.

a. Close the gap and achieve the clinch.

(1) Start from a fighting stance outside of kicking range.

(2) Tuck in your chin and use the arms to cover the vital points of the

head.

(3) Close the distance with force.

(4) Head goes to the enemy's chest and cupped hands to his biceps.

(5) With force, fight for one of the dominant clinch positions:

Performance Steps

- (a) Modified seatbelt position (figure 071-000-0006-1)

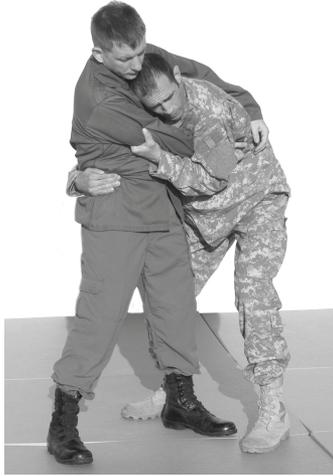


Figure 071-000-0006-1. The seatbelt clinch

- (b) Double under-hooks position (figure 071-000-0006-2).



Figure 071-000-0006-2. The double underhooks clinch

- (c) The rear clinch position (figure 071-000-0006-3)



Figure 071-000-0006-3. The rear clinch

- b. Front takedown.**
- (1) From the modified seatbelt position or double under-hooks, step around to the front of him so you can drive him off that leg (just like pushing a tackling dummy).
 - (2) Release your grip on the elbow if you have one and reach around to the small of back (one hand on the other both facing down).
 - (3) Pull in to him/her with your hands and, at the same time you're driving with the back leg, step past him/her; that will make his/her back arch over.
 - (4) Now he/she is about to fall; release your grip, push your hip against him/her, and ride him/her over to the mount position.
- c. Rear takedown.**
- (1) Sometimes when you achieve the clinch you will end up behind him.
 - (2) Serve an opposing thumb grip around his/her waist, and put your head in the small of your opponents back.
 - (3) Step around the side so your foot is perpendicular to his/her, creating a T with your foot.
 - (4) With your other foot, you scrape the back of the calf and create another T with your foot and his/her.
 - (5) Sit down on the opposite heel (butt low) to take him down.
 - (6) Release your grip as your opponent falls to the ground, and roll right on top of him/her in mount.
- d. Stand in base.**
- (1) Sit like a fighter.
 - (2) Placing your weight on your dominant hand and non-dominant foot, pick up the rest of your body.

Performance Steps

- (3) Swing the leg between the two posts.
- (4) Place the foot behind your dominant hand.
- (5) Assume a fighters stance.

WARNING

Never bend over at your waist. This will allow your opponent to strike your face with knees and kicks.

2. Gain dominant position (figure 071-000-0006-4 through figure 071-000-0006-7).



Figure 071-000-0006-4. The rear



Figure 071-000-0006-5. The mount



Figure 071-000-0006-6. The guard



Figure 071-000-0006-7. Side control

Note: Before any killing or disabling technique can be applied, the Soldier must first gain and maintain dominant body position. It is the leverage gained from dominant body position that allows the fighter to defeat a stronger opponent. An appreciation for dominant position is fundamental to becoming a proficient fighter because it ties together what would otherwise be a long confusing list of unrelated techniques. If a finishing technique is attempted from dominant position and fails, the fighter can just try again. If, on the other hand, a finishing technique is attempted from other than dominant position and fails, it will most often mean defeat. The dominant body positions will be introduced in order of precedence. The dominant positions are rear mount (figure 071-000-0006-4), front mount (figure 071-000-0006-5), guard (figure 071-000-0006-6), and side control (figure 071-000-0006-7).

- a. Escape the mount, arm trap, and roll.
 - (1) Put your elbows in and on the ground.
 - (2) Trap one of your opponent's arms, first hand wraps over his/her wrist with a thumbless grip, second hand grabs above the elbow notch with thumb on the outside.
 - (3) Take same side foot as the arm is with the thumb grip and plant it on the ground on the outside of opponent's foot.
 - (4) Take your opposite side knee and line it up in the center of your opponent's spine.
 - (5) Thrust upward with your hips and roll him/her over.

Performance Steps

b. Pass the guard.

- (1) Establish a good base.
- (2) Take your hands and place them on outside of opponents hip flexors fingers point out.
- (3) Turn your fingers inwards and drive your hands to his/her chin placing your face in the sternum.
- (4) Follow arms out to cover his/her biceps, roll hands back, and cup them with a thumbless grip.
- (5) Post one foot up and turn hips.
- (6) Release same side grip, take hand with knife edge through opening, turn head and eyes in the opposite direction.
- (7) Place hand on ground and knee on the ground and slide same side leg back at a 45-degree angle.
- (8) Grab his/her leg just above hip and pull him/her onto your lap by straightening your back.
- (9) Step up towards the shoulder with outside leg, knee pushing inward.
- (10) Reach same side hand across and place thumb inside collar.
- (11) Drive knee towards his ear and come around to get perpendicular with him/her, the back of the knee comes up to his/her buttocks.
- (12) Opposite side hand transfers to the waistline.
- (13) Stack him/her up, pushing his/her knees straight over his/her head until you break the grip of his/her legs.
- (14) Let his/her legs pass your head and assume good side control.

c. Side control.

- (1) Put your elbow on the ground between his/her ear and shoulder (elbow notch), and put your weight on him/her.
- (2) Control his/her hip by pinching your backside knee and your other elbow together.
- (3) Chest to chest contact.
- (4) Leg by his/her head straight, pushing forward on toe.

d. Achieve the mount.

- (1) Take the hand closest to his/her leg and move it to the back side to control his/her hips.
- (2) Be aware of his/her knees and look down.
- (3) Sit through facing his/her legs and place your bottom knee against the hip, spread your legs out to avoid being taken over backwards
- (4) The hand that was securing the hip now controls the legs, push or pull his knees and swing your back leg up and over the top, to the mounted positions.

Performance Steps

e. Escape the mount, shrimp to the guard.

(1) You attempt the arm trap and roll, your opponent post his/her leg out.

(2) The space he/she created by posting his/her leg is where you create space with your elbow, turn to your side facing the posted leg, bring your knee underneath his/her leg until it comes out, turn to your other hip, loop your leg, and hook his/her leg.

(3) Take both hands and push your opponent hips away, bring your other knee up, put your weight on your posted foot, turn your body and face the other way, and then put him/her in your guard.

f. Arm push and roll to the mount.

(1) Your opponent gives you (George Forman block) to avoid your strikes.

(2) Your going to target the top arm or the one closes to the top of the head, one hand on the back of the elbow and one hand on the wrist with thumbless grips, push that arm across his/her body and then capture it with your chest.

(3) Once you capture the arm, the hand on the elbow will go under the neck and secure opponents wrist with a thumbless grip, the hand that was on the wrist will go to his/her elbow, change your posture to make room so that your opponent can roll.

(4) Use the power of your body and push him/her with your chest (making sure you don't go too far over center) using a ratchet motion until his/her elbows stop him going any more.

(5) Take your weight off of him/her and fold his/her arms underneath him/her and push him/her forward on top of it and then sit up, straight arms, hands in the back of collar feet near hips.

g. Escape the rear mount.

(1) Once your opponent puts his/her hooks in you will take one hand over your head and cover your ear, palm facing in, the other hand will go to the arm pit.

(2) Once your opponent reaches in, the hand under the arm pit secures the wrist of your opponents and pushes it away, and your other arm wraps around it making a figure four.

(3) Fall to the side you figure four. Once your body weight is on that arm, you can let go and start to get to your back to the ground.

(4) Push your hips away from your opponent legs, one hand on his/her hip and the other on his/her knee, go through his/her legs until your but clears his/her legs, inside leg comes through and goes on the ground, knee towards armpit and foot hooking the groin area, opposite leg will come through the middle and your foot will hook the back of his/her knee.

(5) Top hand reach into far side collar, bottom hand post on ground.

(6) Roll into and gain the mount.

Performance Steps

h. Sweep from the attempted straight arm bar.

(1) Your opponent tucks his/her head to avoid the arm bar.

(2) With the hand that is behind his/her thigh, pull his/her knee as close to your head as possible.

(3) That sets up the angle for your spine to be perpendicular; make sure you maintain the grip on the elbow.

(4) Swing the leg that was suppose to hook his/her head and swing it in a big circle.

(5) With the leg that is hooked under his/her arm pit, push it towards his/her head so you will roll right up in mount.

i. Scissor sweep.

(1) Your opponent is attempting to pass your guard as you control his/her elbows.

(2) When he/she posts one of his/her legs to create space, relax your guard and keep knees tight to hang on your calf. Post on your opposite shoulder to swing your butt out toward his/her posted leg, at the same time you do that your leg will go across his/her waist like a belt, your other side leg goes flat, just off the ground.

(3) Hook his/her hip with your foot, reach up and secure the collar on the opposite side of his/her posted leg.

(4) Extend your body to take him/her off his/her base, you will make a scissoring motion with your legs to sweep him/her over and come up in mount.

3. Finish the fight.

Note: When dominant body position has been achieved, the fighter can begin attempts to finish the fight secure in the knowledge that if an attempt fails, as long as he/she maintains dominant position, he/she may just try again.

a. Rear naked choke.

Note: The back mount gives the Soldier the best control of the fight. From this position it is very difficult for the enemy to either defend themselves or counterattack. Even though a Soldier may find himself/herself with his/her own back on the ground, this is still the back mount and they still have control of the fight.

(1) Place your bicep along one side of your opponent's neck; take your forearm and roll it around to the other side of neck, his/her chin will line up with your elbow.

(2) Tighten choke up and grab your shoulder or arm.

(3) Opposite hand goes behind the head as if your combing his/her hair back.

(4) Tuck your head in to avoid getting hit.

(5) Roll your shoulders back, push chest forward and finish the choke.

b. Cross collar choke from the mount and guard.

Note: The front mount is a dominant position because it allows the Soldier to strike the enemy with punches without the danger of effective return punches, and also provides the leverage to attack the enemy's upper body with joint attacks.

Performance Steps

- (1) Open his/her collar with the weak hand to make room to fit your fingers in, insert your fingers in the inside and the thumb in the outside.
 - (2) Relax your arm so you can reach behind his/her neck and grasp his/her collar, second hand goes under the first arm, same grip fingers in the inside thumb on the outside, reach all the way back until it meets the other hand.
 - (3) Turn wrist so your palms face you, pull him in to you, expand your chest and rotate shoulders back, and take your elbows to your side.
 - (4) Post head forward on ground.
- c. Bent arm bar (mount and side control).

Note: If the Soldier must be on the bottom, the guard position allows the best defense and the only chance of offense.

- (1) Your opponent gives you the standard (boxing) block.
 - (2) Take both hands, thumbs along side of your hands, with thumb less grips, drive his/her wrist and elbow to the ground, your elbow will go to the elbow notch.
 - (3) Your head will go on the back of your hand; to protect your face from strikes, your other hand will go under his/her elbow and grab your own wrist with thumbless grip.
 - (4) Drag the back of his/her hand towards his/her waistline and lift his elbow back and break his/her shoulder.
- d. The straight arm bar from the mount.

Note: Although the side control is not a dominant position, many times the Soldier will find himself/herself in this position, and he/she must be able to counter the enemy's defensive techniques.

Note: Distance. Each technique has a window of effectiveness based upon the amount of space between the two combatants. The Soldier must control the distance between himself/herself and the enemy in order to control the fight.

Note: Physical Balance. Balance refers to the ability to maintain equilibrium and to remain in a stable, upright position.

Note: Leverage. A Soldier uses the parts of his/her body to create a natural mechanical advantage over the parts of the enemy's body. By using leverage, a Soldier can have a greater effect on a much larger enemy.

- (1) Your opponent gives you straight arms, lean on his/her arms and decide which arm you are going to break.
- (2) One hand goes under the arm and the other goes over the arm you are going to break, put your weight on your hands and pop up to the balls of your feet, make sure your posture is up right (butt low).
- (3) Turn away from the arm you're going to break, on the balls of your feet, put your hip next to his/her triceps.
- (4) Put all your weight on your hands and on the far side leg so you can take the leg closest to his/her head and move it around his/her head, sit on his triceps and slide down his/her arm like a fireman's pole, your hips are right next to his/her shoulder.

Performance Steps

(5) Pinch your knees together and at this point grab his/her wrist with a baseball bat grip hold it to your chest and fall back break his/her elbow by pushing up with your hips.

CAUTION
Do not cross your feet.

e. Straight arm bar for the guard.

(1) When you have your opponent in your guard and he/she gives you straight arms, decide which arm you are going to break.

(2) Reach up and secure his/her arm at the elbow or above it, with a beer can grip with the opposite hand, palm facing you dig underneath that leg, and grab the back of his/her thigh.

(3) Open your guard, bring your legs up, curl your back to limit the friction.

(4) Pull with the hand that is on the back of the thigh to spin, bring your head to his/her knee, place the leg over his/her head and grab it with your leg, pull him down, pinch your heels to your butt and knees together.

(5) The hand that was behind his/her thigh comes out and secures the same wrist that you have secured at the elbow with a thumb grip.

(6) Pull down with your calf and push up with your hips to break his/her arm.

f. Front guillotine choke.

(1) Your opponent shoots in on you and presents his/her neck to you.

(2) Channel his/her head to one of your arm pits, sprawl your hips back a little.

(3) Take your arm and wrap it around his/her neck, palm facing your body, your other hand reach down and grab your hand again palm facing you.

(4) Make sure you don't reach around and grab his/her arm

(5) Cinch up the choke and sit down to place him/her in your guard.

(6) Finish the choke by pushing with your legs and pull with your arms.

Evaluation Preparation: Evaluation should be performed in a soft grassy area free of sharp or hard objects, if available, or on suitable matted surface.

Setup: Provide the Soldier with a person to act as an enemy. Person acting as enemy should be earlier evaluated using basic combatives.

Brief Soldier: After being told to stand by, the Soldier will react when the enemy initiates action. Brief the personnel acting as the enemy to present a threat and give token resistance so the Soldier being evaluated can demonstrate proficiency.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. At once closed with the enemy and fought for a dominant clinch.	---	---
2. Brought the enemy to the ground and gained a dominant position.	---	---
3. Finished the fight using an appropriate technique from a position of dominance.	---	---
4. Maintained superior position and demonstrated the follow techniques:	---	---
a. Back mount.		
b. Front mount.		
c. Guard.		
d. Side control.		

Evaluation Guidance: Reinforce the details of each technique and provide positive criticism when warranted; supervise all practical work. Never leave a group unsupervised. If a Soldier fails to conduct movement as instructed, the Soldier must repeat the movement until correct.

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-25.150

Subject Area 5: Adapt

71-300-0011

Employ Progressive Levels of Individual Force when Confronting Civilians

Conditions: While securing a critical area or defusing a civil disturbance you are approached/confronted by one or more hostile civilians. You are equipped with a weapon, personal protection equipment (PPE), and approved rules of engagement (ROE).

Standards: Assess the situation and, if possible, report it to your section or team leader at once. Protect yourself and others against physical and other hazards, isolate hostile civilians, and use no more force than is necessary to control the situation.

Performance Steps

Note: The operational environment must be considered at all times during this task. All Army elements must be prepared to enter any environment and perform their missions while at the same time, dealing with a wide range of unexpected threats and other influences. Units must be ready to counter these threats and influences and, at the same time, be prepared to deal with various third-party actors, such as international humanitarian relief agencies, news media, refugees, and civilians on the battlefield. These groups may or may not be hostile to us, but they can maybe affect the unit's ability to accomplish its mission.

Warning

During the assessment ensure that biological threats associated with close contact/combat are taken into consideration and protective measures are taken to prevent exposure.

1. Assess the situation by identifying the level of hostile civilian threat.
 - a. Verbal.
 - b. Physical without weapons (touching, pushing).
 - c. Physical with weapons (rocks, clubs, spitting).
 - d. Physical with firearms shown.
 - e. Physical with firearms used.
2. Report the situation to the section or team leader at once.
3. Take steps to protect yourself and others against physical and other hazards.
 - a. Use full-face shields.
 - b. Use double layer latex gloves.

Note: Any exposure incident must be reported to the chain of command.

4. Isolate hostile civilian(s), if possible.
 - a. Identify hostile group(s) sphere of influence.
 - b. Remove the individual with the most influence of the crowd.
 - c. Use the 5S's (search, silence, segregate, safeguard, speed to the rear).
5. Employ no more force than is necessary to control the situation using graduated response measures.

Note: Soldiers should employ the lowest level of force necessary to address a threat but may use any level, even deadly force, without performing earlier steps, if the circumstances or threat do not allow for the use of graduated levels of force.

- a. Avoid confrontation if possible. Do not on purpose instigate, threaten, provoke, or bluff.
- b. In a convincing manner, speak to the civilian and state the peaceful intent of your mission.
- c. Tell the civilian to "STAND BACK" and warn him that you may have to use force.
- d. If a civilian places his or her hands on your body, use your riot baton or MP club to brush him or her back.
- e. If a civilian attempts to inflict bodily harm, use any authorized materials (such as water hoses, chemical gases) to impede movement.
- f. Use your individual weapon, if necessary, as prescribed by the established ROE.

Performance Steps

6. Establish and maintain control of the situation.
 - a. Comply with the ROE, any host-nation requirements, applicable international treaties, and operational agreements.

Note: ROE are directives issued by competent military authority that delineate the circumstances and the limitations under which United States forces will initiate and/or continue combat engagement with other forces encountered. ROE help commanders accomplish the mission by regulating the rules of the use of force. Everyone must understand the ROE and be prepared to execute them well in every possible confrontation.

- b. Minimize casualties and damage.
- c. Maintain professional demeanor and appearance.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and/or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions and warnings to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Assessed the situation by identifying the level of hostile civilian threat.	---	---
2. Reported the situation to the section/team leader at once.	---	---
3. Took steps to protect yourself.	---	---
4. Isolated hostile civilian(s), if possible.	---	---
5. Employed no more force than was necessary to control the situation.	---	---
6. Established and maintained control of the situation.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-22.40, FM 27-10, and TC 7-98-1

181-105-1001

Comply with the Law of War and the Geneva and Hague Conventions

Conditions: You are a Soldier in the U.S. Army. As a Soldier, you must identify, understand, and comply with the provisions of the law of war, including the Geneva and Hague Conventions. You must also identify any suspected or known violations of the law of war and notify the appropriate authorities.

Standards: Identify, understand, and comply with the law of war. Identify problems or situations that violate the policies and take appropriate action (including notifying appropriate authorities) so that expedient action may be taken to correct the problem or situation.

Performance Steps

1. Define the customary law of war.
 - a. Describe the purpose and result of the customary law of war.
 - b. Describe the relationship between the customary law of war and the Hague Convention of 1907 and the Geneva Convention of 1949.
2. Describe the basics of the Hague and Geneva Conventions.
3. Describe the United States' responsibilities to comply with the Hague and Geneva Conventions, and the customary law of war.
4. Describe the limitation on targets according to the customary law of war and Hague Conventions.
 - a. Describe the international law's prohibition on intentionally targeting or attacking civilians.
 - b. Describe the Hague regulations' prohibition on destroying or seizing enemy property unless demanded by military necessity.
 - c. Describe the Hague regulations' provisions on attacking a military target or a place occupied by a combatant force.
 - d. Describe the Hague regulations' prohibition against attacking an undefended town, village, dwellings, buildings, or other such place.
 - (1) Define an undefended place according to the Hague Convention.
 - (2) Describe the effect of medical units, wounded and sick personnel, and police forces within the undefended place on the character or status of the undefended place.
 - e. Describe when attacking or bombarding defended places is permitted.
 - (1) Define a defended place.
 - (2) Describe the status (defended or undefended) of a city or town surrounded by detached defense positions.
 - f. Describe when attacking a military objective, including bombardment, is permitted.
 - g. Describe the relationship between military necessity versus unnecessary suffering or destruction.
 - h. Describe the protections given to buildings dedicated to religion, art, science, or charitable purposes, or historic monuments during an attack or bombardment.
 - i. Describe the effect on protected status given to buildings dedicated to religion, art, science, or charitable purposes, or historic monuments if these buildings are being used for military purposes.

Performance Steps

- j.** Describe the protections given to hospitals and other places where the sick and wounded are collected during an attack or bombardment.
 - (1)** Describe the effect on this protected status if enemy Soldiers are the sick or wounded inside these hospitals or medical areas.
 - (2)** Describe the effect on this protected status if these hospitals or medical areas are being used for military purposes.
- k.** Describe what may be an illegal trick or method or treacherous act under the law of war in regards to permissible targets.
- l.** Describe why illegal tricks or methods or treacherous acts are prohibited.
- m.** Describe the legality of incidental damage to surrounding buildings during an attack on a legitimate target.
- 5.** Describe the customary law of war and Hague Regulations' prohibitions on using certain types of weapons.
 - a.** Describe the Hague regulations' prohibitions on employing arms, material, or projectiles designated to cause unnecessary suffering
 - b.** Describe how a Soldier could violate the law of war by using an issued weapon in an illegal manner.
 - c.** Describe the Hague regulations' prohibitions on using poison or poisoned weapons against human beings in war.
 - d.** Describe the 1925 Geneva protocol's prohibition on using asphyxiating, poisonous, or other gases and the prohibition of bacteriological methods of warfare in war.
 - e.** Describe the 1925 Geneva protocol's ban on using chemical weapons in war.
 - (1)** Describe the United States' prohibition on the first use in war of chemical weapons.
 - (2)** Describe the United States' reservation to use chemical weapons against a State if that State fails to respect the Geneva protocol's ban on using chemical weapons.
 - (3)** Define a lethal chemical agent and described how this Geneva protocol applies to a lethal chemical agent.
 - (4)** Define an incapacitating chemical agent and described how this Geneva protocol applies to an incapacitating chemical agent.
 - (5)** Describe the United States' position that the Geneva protocol allows the use of either chemical herbicides or riot control agents in war.
 - (a)** Describe the United States' unilateral renouncement of first use of herbicides in war and exception to this policy.
 - (b)** Describe the United States' policy regarding first use of riot control agents in war.
 - (c)** Describe the requirement for Presidential approval prior to using herbicides or riot control agents in armed conflict.

Performance Steps

(6) Describe the United States' position on the initial or retaliatory use of bacteriological methods of warfare.

(7) Describe the 1925 Geneva protocol's position on using smoke and incendiary materials in war.

(8) Describe international law's position on using nuclear weapons by air, sea, or land forces.

6. Describe the rules of the customary law of war and Geneva Convention of 1949 governing the humane treatment of persons taking no active role in hostilities.

- a. Define a noncombatant.
- b. Define humane treatment.
- c. Describe acts that are strictly prohibited against noncombatants
- d. Describe humane treatment of prisoners of war.

(1) Describe how all captured persons are entitled to be treated as prisoners of war until their actual status is determined.

(2) Describe the requirement to evacuate all captured or detained persons to a detainee collection point.

(3) Describe who determines a captured or detained person's status.

(4) Describe the prohibition on using physical force, mental torture, or coercion to obtain information.

(5) Describe what information the 1949 Geneva Prisoner of War Convention requires a Prisoner of War to provide to his/her captor.

(6) Describe what actions a captor or detaining power may take against a prisoner of war who refuses to answer questions, and described the practical reasons for this policy.

(7) Describe the required treatment of prisoners of war in regards to—

- (a) Daily food and living quarters.
- (b) Medical care.
- (c) Personal hygiene.
- (d) Exercising or observing religious faith.
- (e) Retention of personal property.
- (f) Receiving and sending mail.
- (g) Having a prisoner's representative.
- (h) Maintaining a chain of command.
- (i) Requirement to work.

(8) Describe a prisoner of war's responsibility to obey lawful camp rules and disciplinary actions that may be taken against the prisoner of war for violating these rules.

Performance Steps

e. Describe humane treatment of the wounded and sick.

(1) Describe how Article 14 of the Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in the Armed Forces in the Field (GWS) applies and what it provides regarding the prisoner of war status of wounded and sick belligerents who fall into enemy hands.

(2) Describe what GWS Article 12 provides regarding protecting and treating members of the Armed Forces who are wounded or sick.

(3) Describe the requirement to leave medical personnel and material behind to care for the wounded and sick.

(4) Describe the protections given to medical personnel.

(a) Describe how these protections apply to military medics.

(b) Describe how these protections apply to medical staff exclusively engaged in administering to medical units and establishments.

(c) Describe how these protections apply to chaplains attached to the Armed Forces.

(d) Describe how these protections apply to the staff of national Red Cross societies and other voluntary aid organizations.

(5) Describe the status of captured full-time medical personnel as prisoners of war or retained personnel.

(a) Describe the right of retained medical personnel to perform medical duties.

(b) Describe the rights and time limitation of the detaining power to retain full-time medical personnel under the Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in the Armed Forces in the Field.

(c) Describe the requirement and procedures that the detaining power must follow to return retained medical personnel.

(d) Describe the concept of retained personnel under the Geneva Convention Relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War.

(e) Describe the requirement of retained personnel to follow the captor's internal disciplinary system at the camp where they are detained.

(6) Describe the status and protection given to members of the Armed Forces specially trained to serve as hospital orderlies, nurses, or auxiliary stretcher bearers.

(a) Describe these individual's status as prisoners of war versus retained personnel.

(b) Describe these individuals' rights on returning to their own side.

(c) Describe these individual's rights regarding working or performing duties while in the prisoner of war camp.

Performance Steps

(7) Describe the status and protections given to members of recognized aid societies of neutral countries which lend the assistance of their medical personnel and units to a party to the conflict.

(a) Describe the consent, authorization, and control mechanism required for these individuals to assist a party to the conflict.

(b) Describe the notification requirements necessary for these individuals to assist a party to the conflict.

(c) Describe the captor's right to detain these individuals and the requirement to return them to their own side.

(d) Describe the work these individuals may perform while detained.

(8) Describe the protected status of medical property, material, and equipment under the Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in the Armed Forces in the Field.

(a) Describe the circumstances under which fixed medical establishments and mobile units of the medical service may be attacked.

(b) Describe the duty to ensure medical establishments and units are not situated near military objectives.

(c) Describe the relationship between protections given to medical establishments and incidental damage, injury, or death to patients or personnel.

(d) Describe the possible loss of its protected status if fixed medical establishments and mobile units are used to commit acts harmful to the enemy.

(e) Describe the requirement for the enemy to warn the medical establishment prior to the loss of its protected status.

(f) Describe that only after the enemy provides such warning, and the warning remains unheeded, will the medical establishment's protection lapse.

(g) Describe circumstances that do not deprive a medical unit or establishment of its protection.

(h) Describe whether medical personnel being armed and using these arms to defend themselves and the sick and wounded deprive the medical unit or establishment of its protection.

(i) Describe whether the medical unit or establishment being protected by a picket, sentries, or an escort in the absence of armed orderlies deprives the medical unit or establishment of its protection.

Performance Steps

(j) Describe whether finding small arms and ammunition taken from the wounded and sick but not yet turned over to the proper service at the medical unit or establishment deprives the medical unit or establishment of its protection.

(k) Describe whether personnel from the medical unit or establishment providing humanitarian care to the civilian wounded or sick deprives the medical unit or establishment of its protection.

(l) Describe the provisions of the Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in the Armed Forces in the Field on establishing hospital zones and localities in order to shield the wounded and sick from the impact of war.

(m) Describe the enemy's obligation to restore medical buildings to the other side and to return captured medical material, stores, and equipment.

(n) Describe the authority of a commander to use medical buildings for other than medical purposes, in cases of urgent military necessity.

(o) Describe the private property status and the right of requisition of real and personal property of aid societies.

(p) Describe the protected status of medical aircraft.

(q) Define a medical aircraft.

(r) Describe the requirement for medical aircraft to fly at heights, times, and on routes specifically agreed upon between the conflicting parties.

(s) Describe the required protective markings that must be displayed on medical aircraft.

(t) Describe the prohibition against medical aircraft flying over enemy territory or enemy-occupied territory.

(u) Describe the requirement for medical aircraft to land upon request from the enemy.

(v) Describe the right of medical aircraft to continue the flight after examination by the enemy.

(w) Describe the prisoner of war status of the wounded and sick and the aircraft crew captured by the enemy after an involuntary landing of the medical aircraft because of mechanical failure or inclement weather.

(x) Describe the emblem or distinctive sign of the medical service of an Armed Force

(y) Describe what other medical service emblems are recognized by the Geneva Convention.

(z) Describe whether the Star of David, used by the State of Israel, is specifically recognized by the Geneva Conventions.

Performance Steps

(aa) Describe when and where these medical service emblems must be displayed.

(ab) Describe what medical service emblems medical personnel are required to wear and where these emblems should be displayed.

(ac) Describe the requirement for medical personnel to carry a special identification card bearing the medical emblem.

(ad) Describe the circumstances under which medical personnel may be deprived of their insignia or identification cards or the right to wear the armband.

(ae) Describe the right of medical personnel to receive duplicate identification cards or to replace insignia if lost.

(af) Describe the medical service emblems that auxiliary stretcher bearers must wear and when they must wear these emblems.

(ag) Describe what information must be specified on the military identification documents of auxiliary stretcher bearers.

(ah) Describe what flag may be flown over medical units and establishments.

(ai) Describe what flags may be flown over captured medical units.

(aj) Describe the requirement for distinctive emblems indicating medical units and establishments to be clearly visible to the enemy land, air, or naval forces.

(ak) Describe what flags may be flown over medical units belonging to aid societies of neutral countries assisting a party to the conflict.

f. Describe the humane treatment of civilians.

(1) Describe the rights and protections given to the civilian population of the country in conflict under Article 27 of the Geneva Convention Relative to the Protection of Civilian Persons in Time of War.

(2) Describe the rights of civilians to be protected against all acts or threats of violence and against insults and public curiosity.

(3) Describe the rights of civilian women to be protected against attack, enforced prostitution, rape, and other forms of sexual assault.

(4) Describe the right of an occupying force to enforce control and security measures and how commanders must ensure that all persons are treated humanely while enforcing control and security measures.

(5) Describe the right of civilians not to be subjected to medical or scientific experiments, or made the object of collective penalties or reprisals, or held hostage.

(6) Describe the right of civilians to have their property protected from pillage or looting.

(7) Describe the right of the occupying power to establish laws and to try and punish civilians for violation of these occupation laws.

Performance Steps

7. Describe the responsibilities of U.S. Soldiers to obey the law of war.
 - a. Describe how U.S. Soldiers are bound to obey all the rules of the customary law of war and the Hague and Geneva Conventions.
 - b. Describe how U.S. Soldiers may be court-martialed for violating these rules.
 - c. Describe how U.S. Soldiers may also be prosecuted for committing a war crime.
 - d. Define a grave breach of the law of war.
 - (1) Describe what offenses may constitute a grave breach.
 - (2) Describe what disciplinary actions may be taken against U.S. Soldiers who commit grave breaches.
 - (3) Describe the statute of limitations on prosecuting a war crime.
 - (4) Describe the responsibilities of the United States, as a signatory of the Geneva Conventions, regarding a person who commits a grave breach.
 - e. Describe the responsibilities of the commander in regards to violations of the law of war.
 - (1) Describe how the legal responsibility for the commission of a war crime can be placed on the commander as well as the subordinate who actually commits the war crime.
 - (2) Describe the circumstances under which a commander may be prosecuted for the commission of a war crime.
 - f. Describe an unlawful order and a Soldier's responsibility toward an unlawful order.
 - (1) Describe the applicability of a Soldier asserting the defense of "obeying superior orders" for the commission of a war crime.
 - (2) Describe whether a subordinate Soldier, who actually commits a war crime, is excused from prosecution if the commander is charged with the commission of the war crime.
 - (3) Describe the responsibility of a Soldier to disobey any order which requires the Soldier to commit criminal acts in violation of the law of war.
 - (4) Describe the responsibility of a Soldier to obey the rules of engagement and the potential consequences for violating the rules of engagement.
 - (5) Describe the responsibility of the Soldier to ask a superior for clarification of an order suspected to be criminal or unlawful.
 - g. Describe a Soldier's obligation to report violations of the law of war.
 - (1) Describe the requirement of a Soldier to inform the chain of command of known or suspected violations of the law of war.
 - (2) Describe what other avenues or agencies are available for the Soldier to report known or suspected violations of the law of war.
 - (3) Describe when Soldiers should notify their chain of command or alternative agencies of known or suspected violations of the law of war.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Evaluate this task at the end of law of war training.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier that he or she will be evaluated about his or her ability to identify, understand, and comply with the law of war, including the Geneva and Hague Conventions. Tell the Soldier that he or she will also be evaluated about his or her ability to identify problems or situations that violate the law of war and take appropriate action, including notifying appropriate authorities of suspected or actual violations of the law of war, so that expedient action may be taken to correct the problem or situation.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Defined the customary law of war.	---	---
a. Described the purpose and result of the customary law of war.		
b. Described the relationship between the customary law of war and the Hague Convention of 1907 and the Geneva Convention of 1949.		
2. Described what the Hague and Geneva Conventions on the whole represent.	---	---
3. Described the United States' responsibilities to comply with the Hague and Geneva Conventions.	---	---
4. Described the customary law of war and Hague Convention's limitation about targets.	---	---
a. Described the international law's prohibition about targeting or attacking civilians.		
b. Described the Hague Regulations' prohibition about destroying or seizing enemy property unless imperatively demanded by military necessity.		
c. Described the Hague Regulations' provisions on attacking a military target or a place occupied by a combatant force.		
d. Described the Hague Regulations' prohibition against attacking an undefended town, village, dwellings, buildings, or other such place.		
(1) Defined an undefended place within the meaning of the Hague Convention.		
(2) Described the condition that must exist for a place to be considered undefended.		
(3) Described the effect of medical units, wounded and sick personnel, and police forces within the undefended place about the character or status of the undefended place.		

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
<p>e. Described the permissibility of attacking or bombarding defended places.</p> <p>(1) Defined what constitutes a defended place.</p> <p>(2) Described the status (defended or undefended) of a city or town surrounded by detached defense positions.</p> <p>f. Described what constitutes a permissible military objective for attack, including bombardment.</p> <p>g. Described the relationship between military necessity versus unnecessary suffering or destruction.</p> <p>h. Described the protection afforded buildings dedicated to religion, art, science, or charitable purposes, or historic monuments during an attack or bombardment.</p> <p>(1) Described the effect on this protected status if these buildings are being used for military purposes.</p> <p>i. Described the protections given to hospitals and other places where the sick and wounded are collected during an attack or bombardment.</p> <p>(1) Described the effect on this protected status if enemy soldiers are the sick or wounded inside these hospitals or medical areas.</p> <p>(2) Described the effect about this protected status if these hospitals or medical areas are being used for military purposes.</p> <p>j. Described what may be an illegal trick or method or treacherous act under the law of war in regards to permissible targets.</p> <p>(1) Described why illegal tricks or methods or treacherous acts are prohibited.</p> <p>k. Described the legality of incidental damage to surrounding buildings during an attack on a legitimate target.</p>		
<p>5. Described the customary law of war and Hague Regulations' prohibitions on using certain types of weapons.</p>	--	--
<p>a. Described the Hague regulations' prohibitions on employing arms, material, or projectiles designated to cause unnecessary suffering.</p> <p>b. Described how a Soldier could violate the law of war by using an issued weapon in an illegal manner.</p> <p>c. Described the Hague regulations' prohibitions on using poison or poisoned weapons against human beings in war.</p>		

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Described the 1925 Geneva protocol's prohibition on using asphyxiating, poisonous, or other gases, and the prohibition of bacteriological methods of warfare in war.</p>		
<p>e. Described the 1925 Geneva protocol's ban on using chemical weapons in war.</p>		
<p>(1) Described the United States' prohibition on the first use in war of chemical weapons.</p>		
<p>(2) Described the United States' reservation to use chemical weapons against a State if that State fails to respect the Geneva Protocol's ban on using chemical weapons.</p>		
<p>(3) Described how this Geneva protocol applies to both lethal and incapacitating chemical agents.</p>		
<p>(a) Defined what constitutes an incapacitating agent.</p>		
<p>(4) Described the United States' position that the Geneva protocol allows the use of either chemical herbicides or riot control agents in war.</p>		
<p>(a) Described the United States' unilateral renouncement of first use of herbicides in war and exception to this policy.</p>		
<p>(b) Described the United States' policy regarding first use of riot control agents in war.</p>		
<p>(c) Described the requirement for Presidential approval prior to use of herbicides or riot control agents in armed conflict.</p>		
<p>(5) Described the United States' position on the initial or retaliatory using bacteriological methods of warfare.</p>		
<p>(6) Described the 1925 Geneva protocol's position on using smoke and incendiary materials in war.</p>		
<p>(7) Described international law's position on using nuclear weapons by air, sea, or land forces.</p>		
<p>6. Described the rules of the customary law of war and Geneva Convention of 1949 governing the humane treatment of noncombatants.</p>	---	---
<p>a. Defined a noncombatant.</p>		
<p>b. Defined humane treatment.</p>		
<p>c. Described acts that are strictly prohibited against noncombatants.</p>		

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Described humane treatment of prisoners of war.</p> <p>(1) Described how all captured persons are entitled to be treated as prisoners of war until their actual status is determined.</p> <p>(2) Described the requirement to evacuate all captured or detained persons to a detainee collection point.</p> <p>(3) Described who determines a captured or detained person's status.</p> <p>(4) Described the Geneva Convention Relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War prohibition on using physical force, mental torture, or coercion to obtain information.</p> <p>(5) Described what information the 1949 Geneva Prisoner of War Convention requires a prisoner of war to provide to his/her captor.</p> <p>(6) Described what actions a captor or detaining power may take against a prisoner of war who refuses to answer questions.</p> <p>(a) Described the practical reasons for this policy.</p> <p>(7) Described the required treatment of prisoners of war in regards to—</p> <p>(a) Daily food and living quarters.</p> <p>(b) Medical care.</p> <p>(c) Personal hygiene.</p> <p>(d) Exercising or observing religious faith.</p> <p>(e) Retention of personal property.</p> <p>(f) Receiving and sending mail.</p> <p>(g) Having a prisoners' representative.</p> <p>(h) Maintaining a chain of command.</p> <p>(i) Requirement to work.</p> <p>(8) Described a prisoner of war's responsibility to obey lawful camp rules and disciplinary actions that may be taken against the prisoner of war for violating these rules.</p>		

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
<p>e. Described the humane treatment of the wounded and sick.</p> <p>(1) Described how Article 14 of the Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in the Armed Forces in the Field applies and what it provides regarding the prisoner of war status of wounded and sick of a belligerent who falls into enemy hands.</p> <p>(2) Described what Article 12 of the Geneva Wounded and Sick Convention provides regarding protection and treatment of members of the Armed Forces who are wounded or sick.</p> <p>(3) Described the requirement to leave medical personnel and material behind to care for the wounded and sick.</p> <p>(4) Described the protections given to medical personnel.</p> <p>(a) Described how these protections apply to military medics.</p> <p>(b) Described how these protections apply to medical staff exclusively engaged in administering to medical units and establishments.</p> <p>(c) Described how these protections apply to chaplains attached to the Armed Forces.</p> <p>(d) Described how these protections apply to the staff of national red cross societies and other voluntary aid organizations.</p> <p>(5) Described the status of captured full-time medical personnel as prisoners of war or retained personnel.</p> <p>(a) Described the right of retained medical personnel to perform medical duties.</p> <p>(b) Described the rights and time limitation of the detaining power to retain full-time medical personnel under the UN Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in the Armed Forces in the Field..</p> <p>(c) Described the requirement and procedures that the detaining power must follow to return retained medical personnel.</p> <p>(d) Described the relationship of the Geneva Convention Relative to Prisoners of War to retained personnel.</p>		

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
<p>(e) Described the requirement of retained personnel to follow the captor's internal disciplinary system at the camp where they are detained.</p> <p>(6) Described the status and protection given to members of the Armed Forces specially trained to employ as hospital orderlies, nurses, or auxiliary stretcher bearers.</p> <p>(a) Described these individual's status as prisoners of war versus retained personnel.</p> <p>(b) Described these individual's rights regarding return to their own side.</p> <p>(c) Described these individual's rights regarding work or duties while in the prisoner of war camp.</p> <p>(7) Described the status and protections given to members of recognized aid societies of neutral countries which lend assistance of their medical personnel and units to a party to the conflict.</p> <p>(a) Describe the consent, authorization, and control mechanism required for these individuals to assist a party to the conflict.</p> <p>(b) Described the notification requirements necessary for these individuals to assist a party to the conflict.</p> <p>(c) Described the captor's right to detain these individuals and the requirement to return them to their own side.</p> <p>(d) Described the work these individuals may perform while detained.</p> <p>(8) Described the protected status of medical property, material and equipment under the Geneva Wounded and Sick Convention.</p> <p>(a) Described the circumstances under which fixed medical establishments and mobile units of the medical service may be attacked.</p> <p>(b) Described the duty to ensure medical establishments and units are not situated near military objectives.</p> <p>(c) Described the relationship between protections given to medical establishments and incidental damage, injury, or death to patients or personnel.</p> <p>(d) Described the possible loss of its protected status if fixed medical establishments and mobile units are used to commit acts harmful to the enemy.</p>		

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
<p>(e) Described the requirement for the enemy to warn the medical establishment prior to the loss of its protected status.</p>		
<p>(f) Described that only after the enemy provides such warning, and the warning remains unheeded, will the medical establishment's protection lapse.</p>		
<p>(g) Described circumstances that do not deprive a medical unit or establishment of its protection.</p>		
<p>(h) Described whether medical personnel being armed and using these arms to defend themselves and the sick and wounded deprive the medical unit or establishment of its protection.</p>		
<p>(i) Described whether the medical unit or establishment being protected by a picket, sentries, or an escort in the absence of armed orderlies deprives the medical unit or establishment of its protection.</p>		
<p>(j) Described whether small arms and ammunition taken from the wounded and sick but not yet turned over to the proper service are found on the medical unit or establishment deprives the medical unit or establishment of its protection.</p>		
<p>(k) Described whether personnel from the medical unit or establishment providing humanitarian care to the civilian wounded or sick deprives the medical unit or establishment of its protection.</p>		
<p>(l) Described the provisions of the Geneva Wounded and Sick Convention on establishing hospital zones and localities in order to shield the wounded and sick from the impact of war.</p>		
<p>(m) Described the enemy's obligation to restore medical buildings to the other side and to return captured medical material, stores, and equipment.</p>		
<p>(n) Described the authority of a commander to use medical buildings for other than medical purposes, in cases of urgent military necessity.</p>		
<p>(o) Described the private property status and the right of requisition of real and personal property of aid societies.</p>		
<p>(p) Described the protected status of medical aircraft.</p>		

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
(q) Defined a medical aircraft.		
(r) Described the requirement for medical aircraft to fly at heights, times, and on routes specifically agreed upon between the conflicting parties.		
(s) Described the required protective markings that must be displayed on medical aircraft.		
(t) Described the prohibition against medical aircraft flying over enemy territory or enemy-occupied territory.		
(u) Described the requirement for medical aircraft to land upon request from the enemy.		
(v) Described the right of medical aircraft to continue the flight after examination from the enemy.		
(w) Described the prisoner of war status of the wounded and sick and the aircraft crew captured by the enemy after an involuntary landing of the medical aircraft because of mechanical failure or inclement weather.		
(x) Described the emblem or distinctive sign of the medical service of an Armed Force.		
(y) Described what other medical service emblems are recognized by the Geneva Convention.		
(z) Described whether the Star of David, used by the State of Israel, is specifically recognized by the Geneva Conventions.		
(aa) Described when and where these medical service emblems must be displayed.		
(ab) Described what medical service emblems medical personnel are required to wear and where these emblems should be displayed.		
(ac) Described the requirement for medical personnel to carry a special identification card bearing the medical emblem.		
(ad) Described the circumstances under which medical personnel may be deprived of their insignia or identification cards or the right to wear the armlet.		
(ae) Described the right of medical personnel to receive duplicate identification cards or to replace insignia if lost.		

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
<p>(af) Described the medical service emblems that auxiliary stretcher bearers must wear and when they must wear these emblems.</p>		
<p>(ag) Described what information must be specified on the military identification documents of auxiliary stretcher bearers.</p>		
<p>(ah) Described what flag may be flown over medical units and establishments.</p>		
<p>(ai) Described what flags may be flown over captured medical units.</p>		
<p>(aj) Described the requirement for distinctive emblems indicating medical units and establishments to be clearly visible to the enemy land, air, or naval forces.</p>		
<p>(ak) Described what flags may be flown over medical units belonging to aid societies of neutral countries assisting a party to the conflict.</p>		
<p>f. Described the humane treatment of civilians.</p>		
<p>(1) Described the rights and protections given to the civilian population of the country in conflict under Article 27 of the Geneva Convention Relative to the Protection of Civilian Persons in Time of War.</p>		
<p>(2) Described the rights of civilians to be protected against all acts or threats of violence and against insults and public curiosity.</p>		
<p>(3) Described the rights of civilian women to be protected against attack, enforced prostitution, rape and other forms of sexual assault.</p>		
<p>(4) Described the right of an occupying force to enforce control and security measures and how commanders must ensure that all persons are treated humanely while enforcing control and security measures.</p>		
<p>(5) Described the right of civilians not to be subjected to medical or scientific experiments, or made the object of collective penalties or reprisals, or held hostage.</p>		
<p>(6) Described the right of civilians to have their property protected from pillage or looting.</p>		
<p>(7) Described the right of the occupying power to establish laws and to try and punish civilians for violation of these occupation laws.</p>		

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
<p>7. Described the responsibilities of U.S. Soldiers to obey the law of war.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Described how U.S. Soldiers are bound to obey all the rules of the customary law of war and the Hague and Geneva Conventions. b. Described how U.S. Soldiers may be court-martialed for violating these rules. c. Described how U.S. Soldiers may also be prosecuted for committing a war crime. d. Defined a grave breach of the law of war. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Described what criminal offenses may constitute a grave breach. (2) Described what disciplinary actions may be taken against U.S. Soldiers who commit a grave breach. (3) Described the statute of limitations on prosecuting a war crime. (4) Described the responsibilities of the United States, as a signatory of the Geneva Conventions, regarding a person who commits a grave breach. e. Described the responsibilities of the commander in regards to violations of the law of war. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Described how the legal responsibility for the commission of a war crime can be placed on the commander as well as the subordinate who actually commits the war crime. (2) Described the circumstances under which a commander may be prosecuted for the commission of a war crime. f. Described a criminal order and a Soldier's responsibility toward a criminal order. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Described the applicability of a Soldier asserting the defense of "obeying a superior order" for the commission of a war crime. (2) Described whether a subordinate Soldier, who actually commits a war crime, is excused from prosecution if the commander is charged with the commission of the war crime. (3) Described the responsibility of a Soldier to disobey any order which requires the Soldier to commit criminal acts in violation of the law of war. (4) Described the responsibility of a Soldier to obey the rules of engagement and the potential consequences for violating the rules of engagement. 	---	---

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
(5) Described the responsibility of the Soldier to ask a superior for clarification of an order presumed to be criminal or illegal.		
g. Described a Soldier's obligation to report violations of the law of war.		
(1) Described the requirement of a Soldier to inform the chain of command of known or suspected violations of the law of war.		
(2) Described what other avenues or agencies are available for the Soldier to report known or suspected violations of the law of war.		
(3) Described when Soldiers should notify their chain of command or alternative agencies of known or suspected violations of the law of war.		

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required: AR 27-1, FM 27-10, and TC 27-10-1

Related:

331-202-1049

Comply with the Requirements of the Code of Conduct

Conditions: Given a survival, evasion, resistance, and escape (SERE) situation or a captivity environment.

Standards: Act according to the standards presented in Articles I through VI of the Code of Conduct.

Performance Steps

- Article I states "I am an American, fighting in the forces, which guard my country and our way of life. I am prepared to give my life in their defense."
Explanation. The code applies to all members of the Armed Forces at all times, whether in active combat, in captivity, or in peacetime as a result of hostage situations and terrorist activities. Members of the Armed Forces have a duty to support U.S. interests and oppose U.S. enemies regardless of the circumstances.
- Article II states "I will never surrender of my own free will. If in command, I will never surrender the members of my command while they still have the means to resist."
Explanation. Members of the Armed Forces may never surrender voluntarily. Soldiers are to avoid capture, even when isolated, and no longer able to inflict casualties on the enemy or defend himself. The means to evade is considered exhausted when escape is impossible. The means to resist is considered exhausted when further fighting would lead to the Soldier's death with no significant loss to the enemy.

Performance Steps

3. Article III states "If I am captured, I will continue to resist by all means available. I will make every effort to escape and aid others to escape. I will accept neither parole nor special favors from the enemy."

Explanation. Members of the Armed Forces must understand that a captive situation is an extension of the battlefield and the enemy will use a variety of tactics to exploit prisoners of war (PWs) in disregard of the Geneva Convention of 1949 Relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War (GPW). These tactics have included physical and mental harassment, general mistreatment and torture, medical neglect, and political indoctrination. The duty of a member of the Armed Forces to continue resistance to enemy exploitation by all means available is not lessened by the misfortune of capture.

4. Article IV states "If I become a prisoner of war, I will keep faith with my fellow prisoners. I will give no information or take part in any action which might be harmful to my comrades. If I am senior, I will take command. If not, I will obey the lawful orders of those appointed over me and will back them up in every way."

Explanation. Officers and noncommissioned officers will continue to carry out their responsibilities and to exercise their authority in captivity. Informing on fellow PWs is forbidden. PWs must especially avoid helping the enemy to identify fellow PWs who have information that is of value to the enemy. These PWs may be made to suffer coercive interrogation because of their knowledge.

5. Article V states "When questioned, should I become a prisoner of war, I am required to give name, rank, service number, and date of birth. I will evade answering further questions to the utmost of my ability. I will make no oral or written statements disloyal to my country and its allies or harmful to their cause."

Explanation. When questioned, a PW is required by the Geneva Conventions and the Code of Conduct, E.O. 10631, and is permitted by Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ), to give name, rank, service number, and date of birth. Under the Geneva Conventions the enemy has no right to try to force a PW to provide any additional information. However, it is unrealistic to expect a PW to remain confined for years reciting only name, rank, service number, and date of birth. There are many PW camp situations in which certain types of conversation with the enemy are permitted. For example, a PW is allowed, but not required by the Code of Conduct, the UCMJ, or the Geneva Conventions to fill out a Geneva Conventions "capture card", to write letters home, and to communicate with captors on matters of health and welfare.

6. Article VI states "I will never forget that I am an American, fighting for freedom, responsible for my actions, and dedicated to the principles which made my country free. I will trust in my God and in the United States of America."

Performance Steps

Explanation. A member of the Armed Forces remains responsible for personal actions at all times. Article VI is designed to assist members of the Armed Forces to fulfill their responsibilities and survive captivity with honor. The Code of Conduct, E.O 10631, does not conflict with the UCMJ, and the latter continues to apply to each military member during captivity or other hostile detention. Soldiers, whether detainees or captives, can be assured that the U.S. Government will make every effort to obtain their earliest release. Faith in one's country and its way of life, faith in fellow detainees or captives, and faith in one's self are critical to surviving with honor and resisting exploitation.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Develop an exercise scenario based about wartime mission requirements (including geographical areas of deployment). The scenario should reflect enemy doctrine, capabilities, vulnerabilities, political and cultural aspects, and PW management procedures. Develop a control plan, which incorporates the risk assessment and instructions for controlling and evaluating the player unit. Develop and design intelligence information to be coordinated, synchronized, and released to bring the play on the intended path. Test the Soldiers one by one about his/her ability to apply elements of the Code of Conduct in a SERE situation or in a captivity environment during the survival/evasion portion of the local major Army command battalion, company, or platoon field training exercise (FTX). Maximum combat realism should be applied to tactical exercises consistent with good safety practices. Using PW compounds and resistance training laboratories by other than USAJFKSWCS to teach Code of Conduct and SERE training is prohibited.

Brief Soldier: Brief the Soldier that the Code of Conduct provides him or her with a set of guiding principles, moral obligations, and professional ethics to survive and return home with honor from a SERE environment and is not to be interpreted as a set of inflexible laws. Tell the Soldier that he/she is required to comply with the guidelines set forth in the Code of Conduct and according to FM 3-05.701, chapters 2 and 13.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Complied with Article I of the Code of Conduct.	---	---
2. Complied with Article II of the Code of Conduct.	---	---
3. Complied with Article III of the Code of Conduct.	---	---

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
4. Complied with Article IV of the Code of Conduct.	---	---
5. Complied with Article V of the Code of Conduct.	---	---
6. Complied with Article VI of the Code of Conduct.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required: FM 3-05.701

Related: AR 350-1, DODD 1300.7, and GTA 21-3-10

191-376-5148

Search an Individual

Conditions: You are given a subject who needs to be searched, and you have authorization to search. The subject may or may not have weapons and/or contraband concealed on his/her person.

Standards: Conduct a search of the selected subject, locating any weapons and/or contraband on the subject. Maintain control of the subject throughout the search. Determine the final course of action based on the situation and the result of the search.

Performance Steps

- Determine which type of search to perform based on the situation.

Note: A full search of a person's body should be done by members of the same sex, but this should not stop you from conducting a pat-down search for your safety if you suspect weapons may be involved.

- Conduct a stand-up search with handcuffs.

- Direct the subject to—

- Turn and face away from you.
- Spread his/her feet until you say "Stop."
- Point his/her toes outward.
- Bring his/her hands behind his/her back with the palms out and thumbs upward.

thumbs upward.

- Stand still.

b. Ensure that the assisting military police Soldier, if available, is in the correct position. The assistant military police Soldier should stand in front of the subject and to one side at a 45-degree angle and out of the subject's reach.

Note: You may or may not have an assistant when searching. You should always try to get another military police Soldier to assist, but you should be prepared to search without one if the situation dictates.

- Approach the subject with care, apply handcuffs, and maintain positive control of the subject throughout the search.

Performance Steps

- d. Position yourself behind the subject and stay balanced, with your front foot forward and rear foot to the outside of the subject's feet.
- e. Search the subject's headgear.
 - (1) Remove the headgear in a careful manner.
 - (2) Bend the seams of the headgear, before crushing, to determine if razor blades or similar items are hidden inside.
 - (3) Complete the search of the headgear, and place it on the ground.
- f. Search the subject using the pat-and-crush method in the following sequence:

Note: Visualize dividing the body into two parts, and repeat the search for both sides in the same sequence, overlapping areas in the center.

- (1) The head and hair.
- (2) The selected side from arm to shoulder.
- (3) The neck and collar. Bring any neckwear worn by the subject to the back, and inspect with care for weapons or contraband.
- (4) The selected side of the back to the waist.
- (5) The selected side of the chest to the waist.

Note: When searching females, the bra is checked by pulling out the center enough to allow any concealed weapons or contraband to fall out.

- (6) The waistband (the front to the middle of the back).
 - (a) Bend the material and then crush it to detect razor blades.
 - (b) Check between the belt and the pants, pants and the undergarment, and undergarment and skin.
- (7) The selected side of the buttocks.

Note: Squat, rather than bend, when searching the lower half of the subject's body, so you are not placed in an unbalanced position.

- (8) The selected side hip, abdomen, and crotch.
- (9) The selected side leg from the crotch to the top of the shoe.
- (10) The selected side shoe. Check the top edge of the boot or shoe by inserting a finger, with care, in the top edge to feel for evidence of weapons.
- g. Reverse the position of your feet and search the opposite side.

3. Conduct a stand-up search without handcuffs.

Note: The decision to place handcuffs on the subject before searching must be based on the situation and according to the local provost marshal office (PMO) policy. It is always safer to have the subject restrained before searching, but in some instances, you may not be authorized. Obtain guidance from your local PMO if you are unsure.

- a. Direct the subject to—
 - (1) Raise his/her arms above his/her head, lock his/her elbows, and spread his/her fingers with the palms facing you.
 - (2) Turn so that his/her back is towards you.
 - (3) Spread his/her feet apart (more than shoulder width) with his/her toes pointed out.
 - (4) Interlock his/her fingers and place his/her hands on the crown of his/her head.

Performance Steps

- b. Perform Step 2b.
- c. Position yourself for the search. Perform step 2d.
- d. Search the headgear.
 - (1) Direct the subject to raise his/her interlocked hands off his/her head.
 - (2) Remove the headgear.
 - (3) Direct the subject to return his/her interlocked hands to his/her head.
 - (4) Perform step 2e (2) and (3).
- e. Search the subject.
 - (1) Grasp two fingers of the subject's right hand, or both of the interlocked hands with your left hand, apply pressure, and pull the subject a little backward to keep the subject off balance.
 - (2) Search the suspect by performing step 2f.
- f. Reverse the search to the subject's opposite side.
 - (1) Without releasing the subject's right fingers, grasp two fingers of his/her left hand with your opposite hand (or grasp the interlocked hands with both hands).
 - (2) Reverse the position of your feet.
 - (3) Search the opposite side of the subject's body in the same manner as the right side.
- 4. Conduct a frisk search.
 - a. Position the subject. Perform step 3a.
 - b. Perform step 2b.
 - c. Conduct the frisk similar to the stand-up search, except use the massaging method rather than the crushing method, locating any weapons.

Note: Although the main intent of a frisk is to ensure that the subject is not carrying a weapon, which does not mean that other contraband found cannot be used against the subject. However, be prepared to justify your actions in any legal proceedings resulting from your search.

 - (1) Conduct the frisk by searching the outside of the garments.
 - (2) Do not search the subject's pockets or waistband unless the pat down suggests the presence of a weapon.
 - (3) Ask for permission to search any items the subject is carrying, such as a purse or backpack. If given permission, search the items in a manner consistent with looking for weapons. If the subject refuses permission to search the items, or if you are unsure if you are authorized to search these items, contact the military police desk sergeant for further guidance.
 - (4) Stop the search if a weapon is found, and take whatever measures necessary for your safety before continuing the search.
- 5. Conduct a prone search.
 - a. Position the subject.
 - (1) Command the subject to face you, to raise his/her arms above his/her head, lock his/her elbows, and spread his/her fingers with the palms facing you.
 - (2) Look at the subject's hands for evidence of weapons.

Performance Steps

- (3) Order the subject to turn around and drop to his/her knees.
- (4) Search the back of the subject's hands for evidence of weapons.
- (5) Direct the subject to lie on his/her stomach, extend his/her arms

straight out to the sides with the palms up, and place his/her forehead on the ground.

(6) Tell the subject to spread his/her legs as far as possible, turn his/her feet outward, and keep his/her heels in contact with the ground.

Note: Positioning the subject as described is dependent upon the subject following your directions. If the subject refuses, you may have to take his/her to the ground using physical force or whatever alternate use of force is authorized by your PMO.

b. Ensure that the assistant, if available, is in front of and to one side of the subject, opposite the side that is to be searched first.

c. Apply the handcuffs.

(1) Approach the front of the subject at about a 45-degree angle.

(2) Squat and place your knee that is nearest the subject between his/her shoulder blades.

(3) Direct the subject to put the arm nearest you, behind him/her, with the palm facing up.

(4) Grasp the subject's hand in a handshake hold and put the first handcuff on it.

(5) Hold the handcuff chain along with the belt or waistband of the subject's trousers, direct the subject to put his/her other hand behind him/her, with the palm facing out, and apply the other handcuff.

d. Search the subject.

Note: Refer to the note of step 1 in reference to searching members of the opposite sex.

(1) Hold the chain between the handcuffs, and lift the subject's arms a little. Search the area in the small of the back and any area the subject can reach. Release the chain and stand.

(2) Move to the area of the subject's waist and face the subject's head. Squat, but do not rest your knee on the ground or on the subject. Pivot, if required to conduct the rest of the search.

(3) Remove the subject's headgear.

(a) Bend the seams before crushing to determine if razor blades or similar devices are hidden.

(b) Place the headgear on the floor or ground.

(4) Search the subject's head and hair.

(5) Search the subject from fingers to shoulders. Search the collar and neck area (pull any neckwear to the subject's back), and remove anything that could be used as a weapon.

(6) Search the subject's back from shoulder to waist on the side nearest you.

Performance Steps

(7) Grasp the inside of the subject's closest elbow and pull the subject towards his/her side, just high enough to search the front without the subject being placed on his/her side. Then, search the front from shoulder to waist. Check the bra area on female subjects.

(8) Switch hands while controlling the subject's elbow without changing position.

(9) Search the subject from waist to knee, including the crotch.

(10) Return the subject to the facedown position and release the elbow. Remind the subject to keep his/her feet spread and his/her heels on the floor.

(11) Tell the subject to raise his/her foot by bending at the knee.

(12) Grasp the subject's foot and search from the knee up. Check the top of the footwear by inserting a finger in the top edge and feeling for evidence of weapons. You must also check the edges and soles.

(13) Tell the subject to put his/her foot back down.

(14) Stand and move to the subject's unsearched side. Move around the subject's head, but do not walk between the subject and the assistant military police Soldier.

(15) Ensure that the assistant moves to the side opposite of the side being searched.

(16) Squat beside the subject with your body facing the same direction as the subject's head.

(17) Complete the search of the unsearched side using the same method.

(18) Help the subject stand once the search is complete by turning him/her onto his/her side facing away from you. Have him/her bring his/her knees up to his/her chest. Grasp his/her arms and assist the subject to his/her knees and then to his/her feet.

6. Determine the next course of action based on the situation, the result of the search, and/or directions given by the military police desk sergeant or your supervisor.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide a scenario requiring a subject to be searched. Have a role player play the part of the subject. Provide weapons and/or contraband for the role player to conceal on his/her person. Provide a role player to act as an assistant (not required to test the task).

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier to determine the type of search to perform based on the scenario given or directions from the evaluator. Tell the Soldier to perform all the steps of the search conducted unless otherwise directed. Tell the role players to follow all directions given by the Soldier.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Determined which type of search to perform based on the situation.	---	---
2. Conducted a stand-up search with handcuffs.	---	---

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
3. Conducted a stand-up search without handcuffs.	---	---
4. Conducted a frisk search.	---	---
5. Conducted a prone search.	---	---
6. Determined the next course of action based on the situation, the result of the search, and/or directions given by the military police desk sergeant or the supervisor.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 19-10, FM 3-19.13, FM 3-19.15

224-176-1425

Interact with News Media

Conditions: In a field, military operations in urban terrain (MOUT), or garrison environment, interact with news media when public affairs practitioners are not present.

Standards: Identify the principles of interacting with the media.

Performance Steps

1. Determine whether you may participate in a media interview.
 - a. Follow prior guidance from your chain of command.
 - b. Use caution when expressing personal opinion.
 - (1) By Army regulation, Soldiers must have command approval to wear their uniform during media interviews, if the interview will be viewed or is viewable by the public because the public may assume their opinions represent the Army's official position by mistake.
 - (2) Soldiers do not have to receive prior authorization to conduct a media interview if they are acting in an unofficial capacity and not in uniform.
2. Understand your role when interacting with the media.
 - a. Check identification or press credentials. If identification or press credentials are produced, continue with the interview. If identification or press credentials are not produced, refer the individual to your chain of command or public affairs representative.
 - b. Recognize your rights.
 - (1) You do not have to speak to the media.
 - (2) You do not have to answer all the questions.
 - (3) You control the length of the interview.
 - c. Maintain operations security (OPSEC). Do not discuss classified information.
 - d. Demonstrate good judgment and professionalism.

Performance Steps

3. Know the guidelines for speaking with the media.
 - a. Think before you answer.
 - b. Tell the truth. You should not lie or on purpose mislead members of the media.
 - c. Discuss only things for which you have direct responsibility or have personal knowledge. Speak at your level. You should discuss only matters for which you have direct knowledge.
 - d. Do not answer speculative (what if) or hypothetical questions.
 - e. Avoid jargon, acronyms, slang and technical terms.
 - f. Answer the question you are most comfortable with when asked multiple questions.
 - g. Keep remarks brief and concise.
 - h. Assume everything you say may be printed or broadcast.
 - i. Use "I" not "we" when stating your opinion.
 - j. If you do not know the answer to a question or cannot discuss it for a particular reason (for example, OPSEC, personal privacy, and so forth), say so. Avoid using "No comment."
4. Inform the chain of command of your interaction with the media.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with a realistic scenario of a simulated media interview situation. Use mock press credentials when necessary.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier he/she is about to be interviewed by the media and the commander has encouraged his/her participation. Public affairs representatives are not present. Evaluate the Soldier about his/her ability to interact with the media.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Checked media representative for identification and credentials.	---	---
2. Stated the three recognized rights when interacting with the media.	---	---
3. Maintained OPSEC throughout the interview.	---	---
4. Discussed subject areas related to direct responsibility and personal knowledge.	---	---
5. Stated answers while avoiding speculation.	---	---
6. Performed interview without using jargon, acronyms, slang, or technical terms.	---	---
7. Employed concise remarks.	---	---

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
8. Did not make "off-the-record" comments.	---	---
9. Stated answers; avoided "No comment" response.	---	---
10. Informed the chain of command of interaction with the media.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: AR 360-1 and FM 46-1

301-CAT-1001

See Yourself Culturally

Conditions: Given definition of culture and vignettes.

Standards: Identify personal cultural traits and the effect on your behaviors.

Performance Steps

1. State the definition of culture.

Note: Members of a culture often do not question their culture; instead, it just "is." Understanding the nature of culture and who you are is very important to operating in today's world. Culture is a system of rules and regulations we use to guide our lives in person and in public. The Army defines culture as "A system of shared values, beliefs, behaviors, and norms (VBBN) that people use to cope with the world and each other."

2. Identify values, beliefs, behaviors, and norms (VBBN).

Note: VBBN are the framework of a culture. This framework is not something one is born with; instead it is transmitted by interacting with others through both formal and informal learning. Members of a culture often do not question their culture; instead, it just "is." Culture is often institutionalized in systems of law. By understanding one's culture, one can understand another's culture.

3. Identify influences that shape culture.

Note: When defining culture, it is important for a Soldier to remember that culture is not static. There are many factors that will influence and shape a culture. Understanding these factors will allow you to gain understanding of a culture, and who they are and what they care about. You can integrate this information into military mission planning, build a greater rapport with the people in your area of operations, and improve decision making. By understanding how geography, history, religion, economics, and the political and social structures affect the people, we can ensure that we have a full understanding of the culture.

4. Identify effect of bias on interpersonal interactions.

Note: Effective communications between individuals, even between cultures, relies on the communicants knowing the answer to these three questions: How do I see me? How do I see you? How do you see me? In cross-cultural communications, the third question is much more important than the other two. A Soldier's bias effects how they communicate.

Performance Steps

5. Identify cultural considerations effecting communication.

Note: The characteristics of a culture can influence a great many things. When we are dealing with other cultures, the characteristics of our culture and their culture will influence how we and they think, our interactions, communication styles and objectives, methods of negotiation and sources of motivation during a negotiation.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* This task may be evaluated at the end of the See Yourself Culturally training.

Brief Soldier: Tell Soldiers they will be evaluated about their ability to identify personal cultural traits and the effect on their behaviors.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Stated the definition of culture.	---	---
2. Identified values, beliefs, behaviors, and norms (VBBN).	---	---
3. Identified influences that shape culture.	---	---
4. Identified effect of bias on interpersonal interactions.	---	---
5. Identified cultural considerations effecting communications.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required: FM 3-0, FM 3-06, FM 3-07, FM 3-24, and FM 7-0

Related:

301-CAT-1002

Learn and Understand the Culture of other Societies where you are Deployed or Assigned

Conditions: Given references to operational environment (OE) culture and vignettes.

Standards: Identify potential areas of conflict/agreement of OE culture with persona/American military culture. Identify effects of these conflicts/agreements about the successful completion of mission.

Performance Steps

1. Identify values, beliefs, behaviors, and norms (VBBN) of OE.

Note: Army values are the basic building blocks of a Soldier's character. VBBN are the building blocks of culture. It is important that Soldiers recognize not only the context of their own culture, but also the context of the OE culture. Soldiers may pass judgment about others by believing that their own VBBN are correct. However, one culture is not better or worse than another; instead, they are just different.

Performance Steps

2. Identify influences that shape the OE culture.

Note: Geography, history, religion, economics, social and political structure affect the VBBN of any OE. It is necessary for Soldiers to be aware that some influences define VBBN more than others. For example, the geography of an area may impact daily survival or the religion of an area may permeate the daily lives of a people. By understanding the major influences, a Soldier can better prepare for the mission in any OE.

3. Identify effects of personal bias about interactions with OE culture.

Note: There are two kinds of bias: preference and point of view. Preference boils down to "what I like." Point of view boils down to "from where I'm standing." A practiced (or practicing) observer of cultures will be aware of their cultural bias and how it effects interactions within the OE.

4. Identify cultural considerations effecting communications with OE culture.

Note: Five major cultural considerations of time, face, personal space, fate, and nonverbal communication all effect communications. Cross-cultural communications are further influenced by the context of a situation. High context refers to societies or groups where people have close connections over a long period of time and behaviors are not made explicit. Low context refers to societies where people tend to have many connections but of shorter duration. In these societies, cultural behavior and beliefs may need explicit understanding. It is beneficial for a Soldier to understand these contexts in approaches to communication.

5. Identify effects of OE culture on military operations.

Note: In order to enhance mission effectiveness, Soldiers must be able to identify the effects of the OE culture on military operations. It is necessary to identify these effects, which impact timing and courses of action.

6. Identify effects of military operations on OE culture.

Note: In order to enhance mission effectiveness, Soldiers must demonstrate the ability to incorporate those effects into operational planning. They must identify effects from chaos to stability and apply control measure to minimize negative effects.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* This task may be evaluated at the end of OE training as well as during a field training exercise.

Brief Soldier: Tell Soldier that he will be evaluated about their ability to identify potential areas of conflict/agreement of OE culture with personal/American military culture and the effects of these conflicts/agreements about the successful completion of mission.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Identified values, beliefs, behaviors, and norms (VBBN) of OE.	---	---
2. Identified influences that shape the OE culture.	---	---
3. Identified effect of personal bias about interactions with OE culture.	---	---

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
4. Identified cultural considerations effecting communication with OE culture.	---	---
5. Identified effects of OE culture on military operations.	---	---
6. Identified effects of military operations on OE culture.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required: FM 3-0 and FM 3-0

Related:

159-200-2025

Effective Performance in an Operational Environment

Conditions: In a field, military operations in urban terrain (MOUT), or garrison environment, where a Soldier is required to demonstrate an understanding of the operational variables of political, military, economic, social, information, infrastructure, physical environment, and time (PMESII-PT) and the actors in an OE.

Standards: Identify the operational variables that make up PMESII-PT, the cultural impacts, the combatant and/or noncombatant actors and hybrid threats within an OE.

Performance Steps

1. Identify the following PMESII-PT operational variables:
 - a. **POLITICAL** - Power is a major influence in most situations. Those that have it, seek to maintain it while those that seek it will often act in a less than considerate manner. Power may be formal or informal and may be overt or covert. When looking at the political variable, one should think, Who has the power? Who influences who?
 - b. **MILITARY** - Military capabilities that should be considered include equipment, manpower, military doctrine, training levels, resource constraints, and leadership issues. Military leadership is very important as it influences the "human capabilities" of the military.
 - c. **ECONOMIC** - In the OE, there is a growing gap between the "haves" and the "have-nots." This gap of economic differences among nation-states or other actors can cause conflict. Economic superiority, rather than military superiority, may be the key to power or dominance within a region. However, economic position often represents the ability of a state or non-state actor to buy military technology or to conduct prolonged operations. Regional or global economic relationships between a state or non-state actor and other actors could result in military or political assistance.

Performance Steps

d. SOCIAL - The social variable involves the makeup of the population. We need to understand the cultural, religious, and ethnic makeup of a given region, nation, or non-state actor that we're dealing with. A social system consists of the people, groups and institutions that exhibit shared identity, behaviors, values, and beliefs. Social groups consist of groups organized, integrated, and networked by relationships and interacting within their environment. Societies are composed of these groups. Culture is a system of shared beliefs, values, customs, behaviors, and artifacts that the members of society use to cope with their world and one another.

e. INFORMATION - Individuals, organizations, and systems that collect, process, disseminate, or act on information may hold a great deal of power or influence. Various actors seek to use perception management to control and manipulate how the public sees things. Broadcast and internet media sources can, in a moment, disseminate competing views of military operations worldwide. Actors understand that U.S. conviction, political decision making, popular opinion, and support for coalitions is, to a large extent, influenced by media coverage.

f. INFRASTRUCTURE - The next variable is the infrastructure or technology that a state or non-state actor could bring to the operational environment. This includes what they can develop and produce, as well as what they could purchase and import.

g. PHYSICAL ENVIRONMENT - The physical environment defines the physical circumstances and conditions surrounding and influencing the execution of operations throughout the domains of air, land, sea, and space. Adverse weather has a similar effect as it degrades the ability of the U.S. to exploit air power and advanced observation systems.

h. TIME - The variable of time is a driving factor in decision making and operations. In most cases, potential opponents of the United States view time as being in their advantage. The time it takes to deploy U.S. forces into the region gives our opponents an opportunity to find ways of adjusting the nature of the conflict and to prepare for adaptive operations against us. Our opponents will try to dictate the tempo of an operation. They will, with patience, set conditions and seize windows of opportunity to take decisive action at the time and place of their choosing. If that fails, they will try to prolong the conflict, to "outlast" the U.S. will to continue.

2. Identify the cultural impact on the OE.

- a. Identify the following factors that contribute to defining a culture:
 - (1) Urbanization level and mobility.
 - (2) Cultural, ethnic, religious divisions.
 - (3) Population age.

Performance Steps

- (4) Standard of living.
 - (5) Infrastructure quality.
 - b. Identify the following impacts of culture:
 - (1) How they see us.
 - (2) Cultural, ethnic, religious divisions.
 - (3) What is important?
 - (4) Who gets their support?
 - (5) Freedom to maneuver.
 - (6) Human intelligence.
 - (7) Force protection.
 - (8) Logistics support.
 - c. Identify the following force multiplier considerations/questions:
 - (1) Appropriate gestures.
 - (2) Acceptable greetings.
 - (3) How to show respect (critical).
 - (4) What is considered disrespectful?
 - (5) What is sacred by culture?
 - (6) How to ask for things.
 - (7) Number of military age men.
 - (8) Number of military age men.
 - (9) Political parties (formal) and informal power structures.
 - (10) Level of corruption/bribery.
 - d. Identify the following language concerns:
 - (1) Tasks requiring language capability that cannot be avoided.
 - (2) Dialect and slang barriers.
 - (3) Linguist motivations and loyalties.
3. Identify the combatant and/or noncombatant actors and hybrid threats within an OE.
- a. Identify armed combatants.
 - (1) Regular military forces.
 - (2) Internal security forces.
 - (3) Insurgent organizations.
 - (4) Guerilla organizations.
 - (5) Private security organizations.
 - (6) Criminal organizations.
 - b. Identify unarmed combatants.
 - (1) Unarmed nonmilitary personnel who may decide to support hostilities—recruiting, financing, intelligence-gathering, providing targeting information, supply brokering, transportation, courier, information warfare (videographers), improvised explosive device (IED) fabricators.
 - (2) It is possible unarmed combatants are affiliated with paramilitary organizations.

Performance Steps

(3) Includes support that takes place off the battlefield.

(4) Other examples of unarmed combatants—medical teams, media (local, national, international), non-governmental organizations/private voluntary organizations (NGOs/PVOs), Trans-national corporations, foreign government and diplomatic personnel, internally displaced persons (IDPs), transients, local populace.

c. Identify examples of hybrid threats.

A hybrid threat is the diverse and dynamic combination of regular and irregular forces as well as criminal elements all unified to achieve mutual benefitting effects. Hybrid threats combine state based, conventional military forces, sophisticated weapons, command and control, and combined arms tactics, with attributes associated with insurgent and terrorist organizations. Hybrid threats are characterized by the combination of regular forces governed by international law, military tradition and custom with irregular forces that are unregulated and as a result act with no restrictions about violence or targets for violence. This could include militias, terrorists, guerillas and criminals. The combination of regular and irregular forces and the ability of an entity to combine and transition between regular and irregular forces and operations to capitalize on perceived vulnerabilities, which make hybrid threats, in particular, effective. To be a hybrid, these forces will cooperate in the context of pursuing their own internal objectives. Criminal elements may steal parts for a profit while at the same time compromising the readiness of an adversary's combat systems. Militia forces may defend their town or village with exceptional vigor as part of a complex defensive network. Some hybrid threats will be a result of a state(s) sponsoring a non-state actor.

d. Identify the following types of noncombatants:

- (1) Media personnel.
- (2) Humanitarian relief organizations.
- (3) Criminal organizations.
- (4) Multinational corporations.
- (5) Private security organizations.
- (6) Other noncombatants and civilian population support.
- (7) Information warfare elements.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* This task may be evaluated at the end of OE training as well as during a field training exercise.

Brief Soldier: Tell Soldier that he will be evaluated about their ability to identify the operational variables that make up PMESII-PT, the cultural impacts, the combatant and/or noncombatant actors, and hybrid threats within an OE.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Identified the operational variables (PMESII-PT).	---	---
2. Identified the cultural impact on the OE.	---	---
3. Identified combatants.	---	---
4. Identified paramilitary forces.	---	---
5. Identified insurgents.	---	---
6. Identified terrorists.	---	---
7. Identified drug and criminal organizations.	---	---
8. Identified hybrid threats.	---	---
9. Identified noncombatants.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 3-0, TC 7-100

150-SRT-0001

Develop Professionally

Conditions: While serving on or off duty in a military organization.

Standards: Develop as a professional throughout your career and daily activities.

Performance Steps

1. Continue to inculcate the Army values and Warrior Ethos.

Explanation. Army values are the basic building blocks of a Soldier's character. They help Soldiers judge what is right or wrong in any situation. Army values form the very identity of the Army, the solid rock on which everything else stands, which is most important in combat. They are the glue that binds together the members of a noble profession. The Warrior Ethos describes the frame of mind of the professional Soldier. It proclaims the selfless commitment to the Nation, mission, unit, and fellow Soldiers that all Soldiers espouse. When internalized, it produces the will to win. The Army values and Warrior Ethos are mutual in dependence. A Soldier cannot follow one while ignoring the other. Together they guide the personal conduct of every Soldier.

Performance Steps

2. Live the Soldier's Creed.

Explanation. The Soldier's Creed captures the spirit of being a Soldier and the dedication Soldiers feel to something greater than themselves. It outlines the fundamental obligations of Soldiers to their fellow Soldiers, their unit, and the Army. In fact, the Soldier's Creed extends beyond service as a Soldier; it includes commitment to family and society. It begins with an affirmation of who Soldiers are and what they do. The creed also entails the four tenets of the Warrior Ethos.

The Soldier's Creed

I am an American Soldier.

I am a Warrior and a member of a team. I serve the people.
of the United States and live the Army Values.

I will always place the mission first.

I will never accept defeat.

I will never quit.

I will never leave a fallen comrade.

I am disciplined, physically and mentally tough, trained, and proficient
in my warrior tasks and drills.

I always maintain my arms, my equipment, and myself.

I am an expert and I am a professional.

I stand ready to deploy, engage, and destroy
the enemies of the United States of America in close combat.

I am a guardian of freedom and the American way of life.

I am an American Soldier.

3. Develop and expand moral character with each new experience and assignment.

Explanation. Members of the Army must always evaluate and develop their moral qualities throughout their career. A Soldier's character is made up from the seven core values of loyalty, duty, respect, selfless service, honor, integrity, and personal courage. Becoming a person of character is a career long process involving day-to-day experience, education, and self-development. Develop and expand moral character with each new experience and assignment.

Performance Steps

4. Strive for excellence within your specialty as you increase in rank and responsibility."

Explanation. Soldiers are expected to be students of their military occupational specialty. The aforementioned is accomplished in part by attending formal military and civilian schooling throughout your career; seeking additional responsibility; and assisting peers and subordinates without being asked. Soldiers show their commitment to the Army and their specialty by performing their duties at all times and subordinating their personal welfare to that of others without expecting reward or recognition. Interpersonal, conceptual, technical, and tactical skills constitute what a leader must KNOW. Army leadership demands competence in a diverse range of human activities that expand in complexity in positions of greater responsibility.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Continued to inculcate the Army values and Warrior Ethos.	---	---
2. Know and lives the Soldier's Creed.	---	---
3. Developed and expanded their moral character with each new experience and assignment.	---	---
4. Strived for excellence within their specialty and as he/she increased in rank and responsibility.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related

150-SRT-0002

Develop in the Five Dimensions of Comprehensive Soldier Fitness

Conditions: You are a Soldier in a military organization serving both on and off duty. You have AKO access for the GAT and comprehensive resilience modules; a unit resilience training program; a unit physical readiness training (PRT) program; and AR 350-1, TC 3-22.20, and AR 600-9.

Standards: Develop in the five dimensions of comprehensive Soldier fitness: physical, emotional, social, spiritual, and family (build resilience).

Performance Steps

1. **Physical:** Maintain physical readiness; excel in physical activities that require strength, endurance, and mobility.

a. Participate in collective or individual PRT sessions for 60-90 minutes, four to five times per week IAW AR 350-1 and TC 3-22.20.

Performance Steps

- h.** Develop positive relationships and be part of a community.
 - i.** Practice relaxation and energy management through deep breathing, prayer, or meditation.
- 5. Family:** Grow every day as part of the Army and supportive family unit: identify issues and help other Soldiers as needed.
 - a.** Complete mandatory on-line comprehensive resilience modules about the family dimension based on GAT performance.
 - b.** Participate in unit resilience training in an active way.
 - c.** Develop effective communication skills; become an assertive communicator; and remain confident, calm, clear and controlled in all conversations. Refrain from using an aggressive or passive communication style.
 - d.** Learn to deal with trust and insecurity issues with family, friends, and battle buddies. Employ the gentle start-up method to improve communication: talk about what you feel, describe the situation in neutral terms, and talk about what you need.
 - e.** Develop conflict resolution skills: work to remain calm and logical during disagreements, respect and value yourself and your spouse, learn to compromise, focus on the positive, ask for what you want, and learn to let go.
 - f.** Spend quality time and develop strong emotional connections with family, friends, and battle buddies.
 - g.** Be active in your unit family readiness group (FRG) and installation Family and Morale, Welfare and Recreation (FMWR) and Better Opportunities for Single Soldiers (BOSS) programs as appropriate.
 - h.** Go to your local Army Community Service (ACS) office to obtain access to additional services as needed.

Evaluation Preparation: Ensure all items required in the condition statement (or appropriate substitutions) are on hand and all safety requirements are met.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Maintained physical readiness.	---	---
2. Approached challenges in a positive, optimistic way.	---	---
3. Built and maintain trusted, valued relationships.	---	---
4. Strengthened beliefs, principles, and values.	---	---
5. Grew every day as part of the Army and supportive family unit; identified issues and helped other Soldiers as needed.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: AR 350-1 and AR 600-9

**Battle Drill: React to Contact, Establish Security,
Perform Actions as a Member of a Mounted Patrol,
and Evacuate a Casualty**

071-410-0002

React to Direct Fire while Mounted

Conditions: Repeat task located on 3-81.

071-326-0513

Select Temporary Fighting Positions

Conditions: Repeat task located on 3-82.

071-100-0030

Engage Targets with an M16-Series Rifle/M4 Series Carbine

Conditions: Repeat task located on 3-6.

071-326-0608

Use Visual Signaling Techniques

Conditions: Repeat task located on 3-98.

071-326-0502

Move Under Direct Fire

Conditions: Repeat task located on 3-72.

071-326-0510

React to Indirect Fire while Dismounted

Conditions: Repeat task located on 3-78.

071-326-3002**React to Indirect Fire while Mounted**

Conditions: Repeat task located on 3-79.

113-571-1022**Perform Voice Communications**

Conditions: Repeat task located on 3-85.

071-326-0501**Move as a Member of a Fire Team**

Conditions: Repeat task located on 3-31.

071-325-4407**Employ Hand Grenades**

Conditions: Repeat task located on 3-29.

071-331-0801**Challenge Persons Entering Your Area**

Conditions: You are providing security of your area and must be positive when identifying all personnel approaching your area. Given an individual weapon and individual protective equipment. You know the current challenge and password. An unknown person or persons approaches your area.

Standards: Detect and challenge all approaching personnel; prevent compromise of password; allow personnel identified as friendly to pass and disarm, detain and report personnel not identified.

Performance Steps

1. Detect all personnel entering your area.
2. Challenge an individual that enters your area.
 - a. Cover the individual with your weapon without disclosing your position.
 - b. Command the individual to "HALT" before the individual is close enough to pose a threat.

Note: Ensure commands and questions are loud enough to be heard by the individual but not loud enough that others outside of the immediate area can hear. Repeat commands as necessary. Ensure the challenge is given in a low voice that can be heard only by the individual challenged to prevent all others from overhearing.

- c. Ask "WHO IS THERE?"
- d. Order the individual to "ADVANCE TO BE RECOGNIZED."

Performance Steps

e. Order the individual to "HALT" when the individual is within 2 to 3 meters from your position.

Note: Halt the individual at a location that provides protection to you and prevents them from escaping if they are deemed unfriendly.

f. Issue the challenge.

Note: You may ask the individual questions where only a friendly person could give the correct answer.

g. Determine if the individual is friendly based upon their return of the correct password and your own situational awareness.

h. Detain an individual who cannot be identified as friendly by having them disarm themselves, and wait until your chain of command provides additional instructions.

i. Allow the individual to pass if the individual returns the correct password and you are convinced the individual is friendly.

j. Report the event to your chain of command.

3. Challenge a group that enters your area.

Note: These procedure and precautions are similar to those for challenging a single person.

a. Cover the group with your weapon without disclosing your position.

b. Order the group to halt before they are close enough to pose a threat to you.

c. Command "WHO IS THERE?"

d. Order the leader of the group to "ADVANCE TO BE RECOGNIZED."

e. Order the group leader to "HALT" when the individual is within 2 to 3 meters from your position.

Note: Ensure only the group leader advances and halts at a location that provides protection to you and prevents the leader from escaping if they are deemed unfriendly.

f. Issue the challenge to only the group leader.

Note: You may ask the individual questions where only a friendly person could give the correct answer.

g. Determine if the individual is friendly based upon their return of the correct password and your own situational awareness.

h. Allow the group to pass if the group leader returns the correct password and you are convinced the individual is friendly by having the leader identify each member of his group as they pass through.

i. Detain the group leader who is not identified as friendly by having them disarm themselves, inform their group to wait, and they themselves wait until your chain of command provides additional instructions.

j. Detain any individual in the group not recognized by the group leader, by disarming them, and having them wait until your chain of command provides additional instructions.

k. Report the event to your chain of command.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Explain what is expected of the Soldier by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Detected all personnel entering your area.	---	---
2. Challenged all individuals that entered your area.	---	---
3. Challenged all groups that entered your area.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 22-6 and FM 3-21.75 (FM 21-75)

071-331-1004

Perform Duty as a Guard

Conditions: You are a Soldier assigned to a guard post, given an individual weapon, guard post-specific equipment, and special orders.

Standards: Prepare for guard duty and assume guard post duty. Walk guard posts or assume the prescribed position while carrying the weapon in prescribed manner. Challenge personnel as specified by the special orders and pass orders or changes to order to relief guard.

Performance Steps

1. Prepare for guard duty.
 - a. Review general orders, special orders, and local implementing SOPs.
 - b. Acquire all required equipment.
2. Assume guard post duty.
 - a. Receive special order changes, if any.
 - b. Establish communications with the relief commander or the sergeant of the guard via FM or telephonic means.

Note: During a duty tour a guard is required to execute orders ONLY from the commanding officer, the field officer of the day, the officer of the day and officers of the guard.

- c. Salute officers when performing guard duty on guard posts that do not require a challenge.

3. Walk guard posts or assume the prescribed position while carrying the weapon in prescribed manner.

Note: A guard surrenders his weapon only upon orders from whoever is in command by regulation while at the guard post.

Performance Steps

4. Challenge personnel as specified by the special orders.

Note: Challenge position is port arms or raised pistol.

- a. Challenge all suspicious individuals observed.
 - b. Challenge a group as specified by the special orders.
5. Pass instructions and changes to orders on to relief guard.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Prepared for guard duty.	---	---
2. Assumed guard duty.	---	---
3. Walked guard posts or assumed the prescribed position, carrying the weapon in prescribed manner.	---	---
4. Challenged personnel as specified by the special orders.	---	---
5. Passed instructions and changes to orders on to relief guard.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 22-6

191-376-4114

Control Entry to and from a Restricted Area

Conditions: You are assigned to control entry to and exit from a restricted area. You are given special orders, identification cards or badges, local standing operating procedures (SOPs), access rosters, communications equipment, local forms produced, in the area, and the current duress code.

Standards: Prevent unauthorized personnel, packages, and/or vehicles from entering or leaving the restricted area.

Performance Steps

1. Identify personnel before allowing them to enter or exit the restricted area.
 - a. Ensure that only one individual is processed in or out at any given time.
 - b. Verify the person's identity by comparing the person's face with the photograph on the identification card.

Performance Steps

- c. Ensure that the name of the person attempting to enter is on the access roster. The site commander or custodian must authenticate the roster.
 - d. Obtain authority to enter, if applicable, for personnel whose names are not on the access roster. Call the sergeant of the guards, the security officer, or the vouching officer.
 - e. Ensure that personnel entering the facility know the most direct route to their destination.
 2. Use the following card and badge systems:
 - a. Single card or badge system. Permission to enter is shown on the card or badge by letters, numerals, or colors.
 - b. Card or badge exchange system.
 - (1) The individual entering the area presents the badge or card to the guard and the guard exchanges it with the card or badge kept at the entrance.
 - (2) The individual again exchanges the card or badge when leaving the area.

Note: Always keep the second card or badge in the area.

 - c. Multiple card or badge system.
 - (1) Exchange the card or badge at the entrance to each security area within the installation.
 - (2) Keep cards and badges at each area only for those personnel who have the appropriate card or badge.
 - (3) Brief the badge holder that the badge must be displayed at all times when in the controlled or restricted area.

Note: For comparison purposes, card and badge data are identical.
 3. Obtain an escort for visitors with authority to enter the restricted area according to special orders.
 4. Use challenges, passwords, and code words in tactical areas.
 5. Use a duress code.
 6. Check the authorization for vehicle entry and exit.
 - a. Log all vehicles entering or leaving the area. Include in the log the description of the vehicle, the identity of the driver, the purpose of the visit, and the destination.
 - b. Arrange an escort for all vehicles entering the area according to special orders.
 7. Prohibit entry (into the restricted area) of harmful materials such as matches, cameras, and any other items prohibited by the special orders.
 - a. Be alert for the wrongful appropriation, pilferage, or compromise of materials or recorded information.
 - b. Make periodic spot checks of personnel.
 - c. Search all packages.
 - d. Search vehicles before allowing them to enter or exit.

Performance Steps

8. Take the appropriate actions in the event of a security violation.
 - a. Detain the suspect until help arrives.
 - b. Detain the suspect until help arrives.
 - c. Apprehend the suspect.
 - d. Prepare a detailed, written report.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with the equipment and or materials described in the conditions statement.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier what is expected of him by reviewing the task standards. Stress the importance of observing all cautions, warnings, and dangers to avoid injury to personnel and, if applicable, damage to equipment.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Identified personnel before allowing them to enter or exit the restricted area.	---	---
2. Used the card and badge systems.	---	---
3. Obtained an escort for visitors with authority to enter the restricted area according to special orders.	---	---
4. Used challenges, passwords, and code words in tactical areas.	---	---
5. Used a duress code.	---	---
6. Checked the authorization for vehicle entry and exit.	---	---
7. Prohibited entry (into the restricted area) of harmful materials such as matches, cameras, and any other items prohibited by the special orders.	---	---
8. Took the appropriate actions in the event of a security violation.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: AR 50-5 and FM 22-6

191-376-5140

Search a vehicle for Explosive Devices or Prohibited Items as an Installation Access Control Point

Conditions: You are at the vehicle search lane at an installation access control point. You are given a search mirror, a flashlight, a reflective vest,

the local standing operating procedure (SOP), and a directive to search an identified vehicle for suspected explosive devices or prohibited items.

Standards: Search the undercarriage and the exterior and interior of a vehicle, and find any explosive devices or prohibited items present.

Performance Steps

1. Stop the vehicle using hand-and-arm signals.

DANGER

Always position yourself so that you are very visible to traffic with good approach sight distance, and wear a reflective vest so it is easy for the vehicle driver to see you. Never step into the path of an approaching vehicle to direct movement or stop the vehicle.

2. Direct the driver to turn the engine off and apply the parking brake.
3. Interview the driver and vehicle occupants.
 - a. Identify yourself to the driver and occupants.
 - b. Inform the driver that the vehicle must be searched as a condition for entry onto the installation.
 - c. Identify each occupant by taking possession of and looking at their military or Department of Defense (DOD) identification (ID) card, state driver's license, or another form of state or federal government-issued photo ID, and comparing the photo to the person.

Note: Notify your supervisor and the military police if you feel that the photo does not match the person being identified or if the ID has been tampered with.

- d. Request to see the following documentation:

- (1) Vehicle registration.
- (2) Proof of vehicle insurance.

Note: Notify your supervisor and the military police if you feel that the photo does not match the person being identified or if the ID has been tampered with.

- e. Determine the specific reason why the driver and occupants need access to the installation by asking questions such as—

- (1) Where are you going?
- (2) Who are you going to meet?
- (3) Do you drive this vehicle most of the time?
- (4) Are there any contraband or prohibited items in this vehicle?
- (5) Has this vehicle had any recent repairs? If so, what?

- f. Maintain eye contact with the driver throughout the interview and report suspicious behavior to the supervisor.

- g. Notify the supervisor and military police if the driver appears impaired from the use of alcohol or drugs and if any suspected prohibited items are in plain view during the interview.

Performance Steps

4. Direct the occupants to exit the vehicle.
 - a. Use a flashlight and a mirror with care to inspect under the vehicle.
 - b. Check for indicators such as new frame welds, items taped or attached to the frame, an unusual looking muffler, a fresh undercoating, and signs of recent installation of components such as a fuel tank, muffler, or other items.
5. Search the undercarriage of the vehicle.
 - a. Use a flashlight and a mirror with care to inspect under the vehicle.
 - b. Check for indicators such as new frame welds, items taped or attached to the frame, an unusual looking muffler, a fresh undercoating, and signs of recent installation of components such as a fuel tank, muffler, or other items.
6. Search the exterior of the vehicle.
 - a. Check for general indicators of explosive devices or prohibited items while searching the exterior of the vehicle. Check for the following:
 - (1) Anything unusual in factory-built compartments.
 - (2) New or shiny bolts and/or screws.
 - (3) Unusual scratches, which could have been made by screwdrivers, wrenches, or similar tools.
 - (4) Signs of tampering, such as broken parts or bent sheet metal.
 - (5) Unusual looking clean or dirty components and areas.
 - (6) Wire and tape stored in the vehicle.
 - (7) New or broken welds.
 - (8) Unusual fingerprints of grease and/or oil in otherwise clean areas.
 - (9) Fresh bodywork (such as fresh fibreglassing and fresh paint).
 - (10) Fresh wiring and electrical tape.
 - (11) New caulking.
 - (12) A missing or altered vehicle identification number.
 - (13) False compartments that are not part of the vehicle design.

WARNING

Do not wear jewelry or other dangling items that can become snagged on a vehicle. Always ensure that the engine is off and the parking brake is set before beginning the inspection.

- b. Check the exterior front, including—
 - (1) Headlights that are not working.
 - (2) A modified front grill or false compartment.
 - (3) No access to the front bumper cavity.
- c. Check the exterior sides, including—
 - (1) Compartments, new welds, taped items, or fresh paint in the front fender wells.
 - (2) Doors that feel heavy when swung.

Performance Steps

(3) Foreign items in the gas tank tube (driver opens the gas tank for inspection).

DANGER

Death or serious injury may result if you breathe toxic agents while searching the gas tank tube of vehicles.

- d. Check the tires, including—
 - (1) New tires.
 - (2) Tires with a solid sound.
 - (3) Strange odor from an air valve.
 - (4) Unusual looking clean or dirty lug nuts or hubcaps compared to other wheels.
 - e. Check the exterior rear, including—
 - (1) Taillights that are not working.
 - (2) No access to the rear bumper cavity.
 - f. Check the tailgate (if applicable), including—
 - (1) An unusual heavy tailgate.
 - (2) Fresh paint or body filler.
 - (3) Inconsistent or nonhollow sounds when tapped.
 - g. Check the pickup bed (if applicable), including—
 - (1) Inconsistent or nonhollow sounds when tapped.
 - (2) Fresh paint or body filler.
 - (3) An unusual thick floor.
 - (4) Unusual welds and/or seams.
 - (5) Any caulking.
 - h. Check the cargo area (if applicable), including—
 - (1) Fresh paint or body filler.
 - (2) Inconsistent or nonhollow sounds when tapped.
 - (3) An unusual thick floor.
 - (4) A false ceiling.
 - (5) Any caulk and/or glue.
 - (6) Any strange smell.
7. Search the engine compartment.
- a. Look for a large battery box or extra battery.
 - b. Look for odd and/or clean wires.
 - c. Look for larger components (air cleaner and fan blade shrouds).

WARNING

Never place your hands in the vicinity of the fan blades while conducting the search. Some vehicles are equipped with an automatic cooling system that may cause the fan blades to start operating after the ignition switch is in the off position.

Performance Steps

- d. Identify any unusual odor indicating that containers may contain fuel.
 - e. Look for foreign objects in the air filter cavity.
 - f. Look for the cold air filter.
 - g. Look for fresh painted areas, new welds, shiny bolts, or sheet metal work on firewalls.
 - h. Check for a clean engine in a dirty car.
 - i. Check the hood to see if it feels heavy when opened and closed. Have the driver open the hood, but move the hood up and down yourself.
 - j. Look for a false wall or modified fender compartment.
 - k. Identify any clean or wiped areas.
8. Search the trunk compartment, if applicable.
- a. Check for a new trunk mat and/or carpet.
 - b. Check for caulk, glue, or any other strange smells.
 - c. Check the trunk lid to see if it feels heavy when opened and closed.
 - d. Look for a raised floor.
 - e. Identify any strange odors from the spare tire.
 - f. Listen for nonhollow or inconsistent sounds in the walls.
 - g. Look for an unusual space between the back seat and trunk wall.
 - h. Look to see if the spare tire is not flush with the floor.
9. Search the interior of the vehicle.
- a. Search the dash, including—
 - (1) Electrical components. See if the components function or if the light emitting diode is on when the vehicle power is off.
 - (2) New, damaged, or scratched screws.
 - (3) Plugged air vents.
 - (4) Broken or missing blowers.
 - b. Look for a false compartment in the glove box.
 - c. Look for unusual lumps or bulges in the front and/or rear seats.
 - d. Feel for rigid front and/or rear seats.
 - e. Look for a false or modified ceiling.
 - f. Look for an unusual thick floor.
 - g. Look for stress cracks in the windshield (no stone impact mark).
10. Take action when the search reveals suspected explosive devices or prohibited items in the vehicle.
- a. Search for explosive devices.
 - (1) Never attempt to handle or disarm suspected explosive devices.
 - (2) Suspend all radio and cellular phone traffic for 100 meters around the vehicle.
 - (3) Secure the driver and all occupants of the vehicle and notify the supervisor and military police.
 - (4) At once evacuate the surrounding area.

Performance Steps

- (5) Secure the scene until it is cleared by explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) personnel or until you are well relieved.
- (6) Release the driver and occupants to the supervisor or military police along with any documentation and identification collected.
 - b. Search for prohibited items.
 - (1) Never handle the prohibited items unless ordered by the supervisor or military police.
 - (2) Notify the supervisor and military police.
 - (3) Secure the driver and all occupants of the vehicle.
 - (4) Secure the scene until it is cleared by the supervisor or until you are well relieved.
 - (5) Release the driver and occupants to the supervisor or military police along with any documentation and identification collected.
11. Release the driver and occupants if no explosive devices or prohibited items are found or if suspected items are cleared by the military police or EOD personnel.
 - a. Give ID cards and all gathered documentation back to the driver.
 - b. Help the driver enter the flow of traffic in a safe manner (if applicable).
Help the driver enter the flow of traffic in a safe manner (if applicable).

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with a vehicle to search in a well-lit area. Identify role players as a driver and an occupant for the vehicle. Ensure that role players are authorized to operate the vehicle before beginning this task. Notify role players that they are to comply with and follow all instructions given by the Soldier searching the vehicle. Have role players place a dummy explosive device or dummy prohibited item somewhere in, under, or on the vehicle to be searched prior to the Soldiers arriving to test. The dummy explosive device or dummy prohibited item can be handmade. It should not be large enough to gain immediate discovery yet not so small that it cannot be detected by a very motivated Soldier conducting a reasonable search. Give the Soldier a search mirror, a flashlight, a reflective vest, and the local SOP.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldier that he/she has an armed partner pulling overwatch security for him/her through the duration of this task. The tester will play the role of the Soldier's supervisor and the military police. Point at the vehicle that you want the Soldier to search and tell the Soldier to conduct this task as outlined in the performance steps. Tell the Soldier that the vehicle has a role player driver and a role player occupant, and that both role players will respond to his/her instructions.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Stopped the vehicle using hand-and-arm signals.	---	---
2. Directed the driver to turn the engine off and apply the parking brake.	---	---
3. Interviewed the driver and vehicle occupants.	---	---
4. Directed the occupants to exit the vehicle.	---	---
5. Searched the undercarriage of the vehicle.	---	---
6. Searched the exterior of the vehicle.	---	---
7. Searched the engine compartment.	---	---
8. Searched the trunk compartment, if applicable.	---	---
9. Searched the interior of the vehicle.	---	---
10. Took action when the search revealed suspected explosive devices or prohibited items in the vehicle.	---	---
11. Released the driver and occupants if no explosive devices or prohibited items were found or if suspected items were cleared by the military police or EOD personnel.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: AR 190-13, AR 525-13, and FM 19-10

071-331-0815

Practice Noise, Light, and Litter Discipline

Conditions: As a member of an element conducting a tactical mission.

Standards: Ensure that—

1. Noise is kept at a minimum.
2. No light is visible to the enemy.
3. The area is free of litter and other evidence of the unit's presence.

Performance Steps

1. Comply with noise discipline.
 - a. Avoid all unnecessary vehicular and foot movement.
 - b. Secure (with tape or other materials) metal parts, such as weapon slings, canteen cups, and identification tags, to prevent them from making noise during movement.
 - c. Be careful to avoid restricting the movement of the parts of the weapon that must move in order for you to operate it.
 - d. Talk only when necessary to conduct or explain operations.
 - e. Use radios only when necessary; keep the volume low so only you can hear the radio.
2. Comply with light discipline.
 - a. Do not smoke except when concealed from enemy view.

Note: Smoking at night should be restricted, as the enemy can see and smell the smoke.

 - b. Conceal flashlights and other light sources so that the light is filtered, for example, under a poncho.
 - c. Cover anything that reflects light, for example, metal surfaces, vehicles, glass.
 - d. Use all available natural concealment.
 - e. Camouflage all vehicles and equipment.
3. Comply with litter discipline.
 - a. Take all litter, such as empty food containers, empty ammunition cans or boxes, and old camouflage, to established collection points when occupying a position.
 - b. Carry all litter with you until you can dispose of it without leaving any trace when moving.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Schedule this exercise in conjunction with field maneuvers or field exercises, or use defensive positions.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Complied with noise discipline requirements.	---	---
2. Complied with light discipline requirements.	---	---
3. Complied with litter discipline requirements.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required: FM 3-21.8 (FM 7-8)

Related:

191-376-5151

Control Access to a Military Installation

Conditions: You are on duty performing installation access control. You are given a reflective vest, a duty uniform, the local standing operating procedure (SOP), and a directive to check all persons in vehicles and pedestrians attempting to enter the installation.

Standards: Ensure that only authorized traffic enters the installation and take action to prevent unauthorized personnel, packages, and/or vehicles from entering the installation.

Performance Steps

1. Determine if the person attempting entry is a pedestrian or is in a vehicle.
Note: If the individual is a pedestrian, skip to step 7.
2. Perform a visual check of the exterior front of the vehicle as it approaches.
 - a. Look at the windshield or bumper and verify that the Department of Defense (DOD) decal is visible and valid.
 - b. Observe the approach of the vehicle for anything that would arouse suspicion and indicate foul play or terrorist activity.
3. Stop the vehicle by using hand-and-arm signals.

DANGER

Always position yourself so you are very visible to traffic with good approach sight distance. Never step into the path of an approaching vehicle to direct movement or stop the vehicle.

- a. Position yourself so that you are on the driver's side (where the center line of the road would be) of the approaching vehicle.
 - b. Assume a comfortable balanced stance.
 - c. Direct the vehicle to stop out loud and/or by extending your arm.
4. Identify the driver and vehicle occupants.
 - a. Identify each occupant by taking possession of and looking at their military or DOD identification (ID) card, state driver's license, or other form of state or federal government-issued photo ID card.
 - (1) Compare the photo to the person and inspect the ID card to ensure that it is valid and has not been tampered with.
 - (2) Notify your supervisor and the military police desk if the photo does not match the person, if you are unsure that the ID card you are being shown is valid, or if you suspect that the ID card has been tampered with.
 - b. Maintain eye contact with the driver and observe all occupants throughout the interview, and report suspicious behavior to your supervisor.

5. Determine if the vehicle and occupants are authorized access.
 - a. Determine if the vehicle has a DOD decal. If it does not, direct the driver to pull to the inspection lane to be checked.
 - b. Determine if unidentified persons can produce authorized forms of a state or federal government-issued photo ID card. If not, direct them to the access control operations center where they might be searched, checked against the barred persons list, vouched for by an authorized person on the installation, or denied access to the installation.

Note: Keep in mind that the driver or other occupants of the vehicle may be under duress by the unidentified person. Because of this potential problem, local SOPs and commanders may implement a duress code policy that would alert access controllers as to what actions to take.

6. Grant or deny the vehicle and occupants access to the installation by using a verbal command and/or hand-and-arm signals.

Note: Local SOPs will dictate whether a vehicle not possessing a DOD decal may be issued a temporary visitor's pass.

- a. Grant access and signal the vehicle to proceed if the vehicle and occupants are authorized access to the installation.
 - b. Deny access to the installation if the vehicle does not have a DOD decal and/or the occupants do not have proper ID. Notify your supervisor and the military police of any suspicious activity.
7. Perform a visual check of the person approaching the pedestrian gate.
 - a. Look to see if the person is carrying a briefcase, box, or any item that should be checked according to the local SOP.
 - b. Observe the person for unusual bulges in clothing and for being dressed not proper for the time of year or season (for example, a long jacket in hot weather).
 - c. Observe the person approaching for anything that would arouse suspicion or indicate terrorist activity.
 8. Stop the person by using a verbal command and/or hand-and-arm signals.
 9. Identify each person by taking possession of and examining the military or DOD ID card, state driver's license, or other form of state or federal government-issued photo ID card.
 - a. Compare the photo to the person and inspect the ID card to ensure that it is valid and has not been tampered with.
 - b. Maintain eye contact with the person throughout the interview and report suspicious behavior to the supervisor.
 - c. Inquire about the contents of any suspicious briefcase, package, or container.
 - d. Notify your supervisor and the military police desk if the photo does not match the person, if you are unsure that the identification you are being shown is valid, or if you suspect that the ID card has been tampered with.

10. Grant or deny the person access to the installation by using a verbal command and/or hand-and-arm signals.

a. Direct the person to the access control operations center if the person cannot produce an authorized form of state or federal government-issued photo ID card to be checked against the barred persons list or vouched for by an authorized person on the installation.

b. Grant access to personnel producing the proper identification and signal to proceed.

c. Deny personnel access to the installation if they do not have proper ID.

d. Notify your supervisor of any problems or if anything is suspicious.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide the Soldier with a training site that is suitable for access control operations and is well-lit. Use vehicles in the DOD inventory with a DOD decal, if no civilian vehicle with a DOD decal is available. Identify role players to act as either a driver or a pedestrian attempting entry onto the installation. If role players are in a vehicle, ensure that they are authorized to operate the equipment prior to beginning this task. Instruct role players to comply with instructions given by the Soldier being tested. The tester will determine what type of ID card the role players use.

Brief Soldier: Tell the Soldiers they can familiarize themselves with the local SOP before they perform the task and refer to the SOP during the task, if needed. The tester will play the role of the supervisor or military police, if needed. Tell the Soldier to conduct this task as outlined in the performance steps and that the role players are compliant and will obey instructions.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Determined if the person attempting entry was a pedestrian or was in a vehicle.	---	---
2. Performed a visual check of the exterior front of the vehicle as it approached.	---	---
3. Stopped the vehicle by using hand-and-arm signals.	---	---
4. Identified the driver and vehicle occupants.	---	---
5. Determined if the vehicle and occupants were authorized access.	---	---
6. Granted or denied the vehicle and occupants access to the installation by using a verbal command and/or hand-and-arm signals.	---	---
7. Performed a visual check of the person approaching the pedestrian gate.	---	---

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
8. Stopped the person by using a verbal command and/or hand-and-arm signals.	---	---
9. Identified each person by taking possession of and examining the military or DOD ID card, state driver's license, or other form of state or federal government-issued photo ID card.	---	---
10. Granted or denied the person access to the installation by using a verbal command and/or hand-and-arm signals.	---	---
a. Directed the person to the access control operations center if the person could not produce an authorized form of state or federal government-issued photo ID card to be checked against the barred persons list or vouched for by an authorized person on the installation.		
b. Grant access to personnel producing the proper identification and signal to proceed.		
c. Deny personnel access to the installation if they do not have proper ID.		
d. Notify your supervisor of any problems or if anything is suspicious.		

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: AR 190-13

113-587-2070

Operate SINCGARS single channel (SC)

Conditions: Repeat task located on 3-84.

171-121-4079

Send a Situation Report (SITREP)

Conditions: Repeat task located on 3-91.

171-121-4080

Send a Spot Report (SPOTREP)

Conditions: Repeat task located on 3-93.

093-404-5030

Report Explosive Hazard (EH)

Conditions: Repeat task located on 3-96.

113-587-2000

Operate Secure SINGARS

Conditions: Repeat task located on 3-87.

551-001-1042

Dismount a Vehicle

Conditions: In a vehicle in a combat environment, equipped with assigned weapon, helmet, body armor, eye protection, and hearing protection.

Standards: Dismounts the vehicle in accordance with established crew drill, exits on non-contact side of vehicle, maintains three points of contact while exiting vehicle, maintains muzzle awareness, assumes a defensive position upon dismount, returns fire, avoids civilian casualties, collateral damage, and fratricide.

Performance Steps

1. Unless dismounting under emergency conditions (under fire, vehicle burning, and such), conduct a 5/25/200 meter scan before dismounting.
 - a. Ensure that only one individual is processed in or out at any given time.
 - b. Verify the person's identity by comparing the person's face with the photograph on the identification card.
 - c. Ensure that the name of the person attempting to enter is on the access roster. The site commander or custodian must authenticate the roster.
 - d. Obtain authority to enter, if applicable, for personnel whose names are not on the access roster. Call the sergeant of the guards, the security officer, or the vouching officer.
 - e. Ensure that personnel entering the facility know the most direct route to their destination.
2. Exit the vehicle in accordance with established crew drill.
3. Exit the vehicle on the non-contact side.
4. Maintain three points of contact at all times while exiting the vehicle.
5. Maintain muzzle awareness at all times.
6. Assume a defensive position in accordance with the crew drill.
 - a. If possible, do not use the vehicle as cover.
 - b. Avoid vehicle fuel tanks, batteries, stored ammunition, hazardous cargo, and such.
 - c. Maintain a low profile (prone or kneeling position).
 - d. Scan for IEDs under and around the vehicle using the 5/25/200 meter scan technique.

7. If a target can be identified, be aggressive and return fire.
 - a. Avoid civilian casualties.
 - b. Avoid collateral damage.
 - c. Avoid fratricide.
8. Be prepared to mount the vehicle under fire on order to break contact.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Unless dismounting under emergency conditions (under fire, vehicle burning, and such), conducted a 5/25/200 meter scan before dismounting.	---	---
2. Exited the vehicle in accordance with established crew drill.	---	---
3. Exited the vehicle on the non-contact side.	---	---
4. Maintained three points of contact at all times while exiting the vehicle.	---	---
5. Maintained muzzle awareness at all times.	---	---
6. Granted or denied the vehicle and occupants access to the installation by using a verbal command and/or hand-and-arm signals.	---	---
a. If possible, did not use the vehicle as cover.		
b. Avoided vehicle fuel tanks, batteries, stored ammunition, hazardous cargo, and such.		
c. Maintained a low profile (prone or kneeling position).		
d. Scanned for IEDs under and around the vehicle using the 5/25/200 meter scan technique.		
7. Returned fire with aggression when a target could be identified.	---	---
a. Avoided civilian casualties.		
b. Avoided collateral damage.		
c. Avoided fratricide.		
8. Prepared to mount the vehicle under fire on order to break contact.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 4-01.45

551-001-1043

React to Vehicle Rollover

Conditions: In a vehicle in a combat environment, equipped with assigned weapon, helmet, body armor, eye protection, and hearing protection.

Standards: Shouts "ROLLOVER! ROLLOVER! ROLLOVER!" as center of gravity shifts, assumes the proper body position during rollover, places hands on ceiling when releasing seatbelt, exits with weapon, establishes security upon exit, and shouts "WATER! WATER! WATER!" when vehicle is going into water.

Performance Steps

1. As the vehicle's center of gravity shifts, shout "ROLLOVER! ROLLOVER! ROLLOVER!"
2. If a gunner is assigned, pull the gunner into the cab of the vehicle and hold in place.
3. Plant feet fixed on the floor while holding onto a stationary object.
4. Tuck head and chin into chest and brace for impact.
5. After vehicle has stabilized—
 - a. Disconnect headset (if applicable).
 - b. Brace one hand on ceiling.
 - c. Release seatbelt with other hand and at once put both hands on ceiling.
 - d. Slide out of seatbelt.
 - e. Orient self to the nearest exit.
 - f. Unlock combat door.
 - g. Open door. If it will not open, try another door.
 - h. If necessary, work as a team to open and brace jammed doors.
 - i. Exit with weapon.
 - j. Establish security.
 - k. Assist crew to exit.
 - l. Apply first aid to injuries.
 - m. Obtain assistance as needed.
6. If vehicle rolls onto its side—
 - a. Disconnect headset (if applicable).
 - b. Lower level Soldiers unbuckle seat belts.
 - c. Assist upper level Soldiers in a safe manner while unfastening seat belts and lowering to the ground level.
 - d. Orient self to the nearest exit.
 - e. If necessary, work as a team to open and brace jammed doors.
 - f. Exit with weapon.
 - g. Establish security.
 - h. Assist crew to exit.
 - l. Obtain assistance as needed.

7. When water entry is imminent (whether or not the potential for a rollover exists) —
- a. Shout "WATER! WATER! WATER!"
 - b. If a gunner is assigned, pull the gunner into the cab of the vehicle and hold in place.
 - c. Tuck head and chin into chest and brace for impact.
 - d. Plant feet fixed on the floor while holding onto a stationary object.
 - e. Do not move until the vehicle stabilizes.
 - f. Disconnect headset (if applicable).
 - g. Observe the water, relation of the vehicle and its exits to the water, depth of the water in and around the vehicle, and such.
 - h. Modify above described procedures as required to exit the vehicle in the water.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. As the vehicle's center of gravity shifted, shouted "ROLLOVER! ROLLOVER! ROLLOVER!"	---	---
2. If a gunner was assigned, pulled the gunner into the cab of the vehicle and held in place.	---	---
3. Planted feet fixed on the floor while holding onto a stationary object.	---	---
4. Tucked head and chin into chest and braced for impact.	---	---
5. Maintained muzzle awareness at all times.	---	---
a. Disconnected headset (if applicable).		
b. Braced one hand on ceiling.		
c. Released seatbelt with other hand and at once put both hands on ceiling.		
d. Slid out of seatbelt.		
e. Oriented self to the nearest exit.		
f. Unlocked combat door.		
g. Opened door. If it would not open, tried another door.		
h. Worked as a team to open and brace jammed doors.		
i. Exited with weapon.		

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
j. Establish security.		
k. Assisted crew to exit.		
l. Applied first aid to injuries.		
m. Obtained assistance as needed.		
6. If vehicle rolled onto its side:	---	---
a. Disconnected headset (if applicable).		
b. Lower level Soldiers unbuckled seat belts.		
c. Assisted upper level Soldiers in a safe manner while unfastening seat belts and lowering to the ground level.		
d. Oriented self to the nearest exit.		
e. If necessary, worked as a team to open and brace jammed doors.		
f. Exited with weapon.		
g. Established security.		
h. Assisted crew to exit.		
i. Obtained assistance as needed.		
7. When water entry was imminent (whether or not the potential for a rollover existed):	---	---
a. Shouted "WATER! WATER! WATER!"		
b. If a gunner was assigned, pulled the gunner into the cab of the vehicle and held in place.		
c. Tucked head and chin into chest and braced for impact.		
d. Planted feet fixed on the floor while holding onto a stationary object.		
e. Did not move until the vehicle stabilizes.		
f. Disconnected headset (if applicable).		

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
g. Observed the water, relation of the vehicle and its exits to the water, depth of the water in and around the vehicle, and such.		
h. Modified above described procedures as required to exit the vehicle in the water.		

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: CALL Handbook 06-31 and FM 4-01.45

551-001-1041

Establish Security While Mounted (If Applicable)

Conditions: In a vehicle in a combat environment, equipped with assigned weapon, binoculars, helmet, body armor, eye protection, and hearing protection.

Standards: Establishes vehicle mounted security in a convoy or patrol, ensures all vehicle systems are functional, maintains professional and intimidating appearance, maintains situational awareness, implements passive defense measures, and observes rules of engagement (ROE).

Performance Steps

1. Ensure all vehicle systems are functional.
 - a. Radios.
 - b. Counter IED devices.
 - c. Global/satellite positioning systems.
 - d. Weapons systems.
 - e. Firefighting equipment.
2. Maintain professional and intimidating appearance.
 - a. Do not remove helmet, body armor, or any clothing.
 - b. Make eye contact with civilians along the route.
 - c. Ensure that weapons are visible and appear ready for immediate use.
3. Maintain situational awareness.
 - a. Maintain constant surveillance in assigned sector of scan. Look for—
 - (1) Suspicious movement of personnel or vehicles on overpasses.
 - (2) Abandoned or broken down vehicles along the route.
 - (3) Foreign objects on or by the road.
 - (4) Sudden activity in crowds as convoy or patrol approaches.
 - (5) Unusual or suspicious activity along the route.
 - (6) Fresh concrete on curbs or fresh asphalt on the road.
 - (7) Wires, objects taped, tied, or strapped to posts, guardrails, trees, and such near the road.
 - b. Conduct 5/25/200 meter scan at the halt.

- c. If a sector of fire is assigned, be prepared to engage the enemy when confronted.
- 4. Implement passive defense measures.
 - a. Cover cargo with a tarp to prevent recognition/identification of cargo.
 - b. Cover vehicle bumper numbers if required.
- 5. Observe rules of engagement (ROE).
 - a. Follow established escalation of force (EOF) procedures.
 - b. Observe established fire zones (no fire, free fire, and such).
 - c. Observe fratricide avoidance measures.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Ensured all vehicle systems were functional.	---	---
a. Radios.		
b. Counter IED devices.		
c. Global/satellite positioning systems.		
d. Weapons systems.		
e. Firefighting equipment.		
2. Maintained professional and intimidating appearance.	---	---
a. Did not remove helmet, body armor, or any clothing.		
b. Made eye contact with civilians along the route.		
c. Ensured that weapons were visible and appeared ready for immediate use.		
3. Maintain situational awareness.	---	---
a. Maintained constant surveillance in assigned sector of scan. Looked for—		
(1) Suspicious movement of personnel or vehicles on overpasses.		
(2) Abandoned or broken down vehicles along the route.		
(3) Foreign objects on or by the road.		
(4) Sudden activity in crowds as convoy or patrol approaches.		

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
(5) Unusual or suspicious activity along the route.		
(6) Fresh concrete on curbs or fresh asphalt on the road.		
(7) Wires, objects taped, tied, or strapped to posts, guardrails, trees, and such near the road.		
b. Conducted 5/25/200 meter scan at the halt.		
c. If a sector of fire was assigned, prepared to engage the enemy.		
4. Implemented passive defense measures.	---	---
a. Covered cargo with a tarp to prevent recognition/identification of cargo.		
b. Covered vehicle bumper numbers if required.		
5. Observed rules of engagement (ROE).	---	---
a. Followed established escalation of force (EOF) procedures.		
b. Observed established fire zones (no fire, free fire, and such).		
c. Observed fratricide avoidance measures.		

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related: FM 4-01.45

551-001-1040

Perform 5/25/200 Meter Scan

Conditions: : In a combat environment, while halted in a vehicle, equipped with binoculars, assigned weapon, helmet, body armor, eye protection, and hearing protection.

Standards: Conducts a systematic visual check, in increments of 5, 25, and 200 meters, of the area surrounding the vehicle using available optics; identifies abnormalities and visual indicators of IED, sniper, and general enemy presence out to 200 meters; reports suspicious activity to vehicle commander.

Performance Steps

1. Conduct a 5-meter scan.
 - a. Scan assigned sector, working from ground level to above head height.
 - b. Use optics, such as night vision goggles, if available.

Performance Steps

- c. Use a white light during hours of reduced visibility if METT-TC permits..
 - d. Check for abnormalities such as disturbed earth, wires, cables, or anything that does not look like it belongs there.
 - e. Do not dismount unless directed to do so by the vehicle commander.
 - f. If ordered to dismount, check under the vehicle for visual indicators of IEDs.
 - g. If dismounted, continue to scan assigned sector.
2. Conduct a 25-meter scan.
 - a. Upon completion of the 5-meter scan, continue scanning assigned sector out to 25 meters.
 - b. Scan near to far, ground level to above head height.
 - c. Use binoculars, night vision goggles, weapons optics, and such as available.
 - d. Use a white light during hours of reduced visibility if METT-TC permits.
 - e. Do not dismount unless directed to do so by the vehicle commander.
 - f. If ordered to dismount, continue to scan within assigned sector out to 25 meters.
 - g. Check under the vehicle for indicators of IEDs when you dismount.
 - h. If dismounted, maintain a low profile around the vehicle during your scan. Keep moving using an erratic pattern in order to be a less inviting target for a sniper.
3. Conduct a 200-meter scan.
 - a. Continue a systematic scan out to 200 meters within assigned area of scan.
 - b. Search near to far, high to low.
 - c. Look for suspicious activity involving people, objects, and animals.
 - d. Search for reflections, muzzle flash, wires, and anything that looks out of place.
 - e. Use binoculars, night vision goggles, weapons optics, and such as available.
 - f. Do not dismount unless directed to do so by the vehicle commander.
 - g. Check under the vehicle for indicators of IEDs when you dismount.
 - h. If dismounted, maintain a low profile around the vehicle during your scan. Keep moving using an erratic pattern in order to be a less inviting target for a sniper.
4. Report suspicious activity or a possible IED to the vehicle commander.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
<p>1. Conducted a 5-meter scan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Scanned assigned sector, working from ground level to above head height. b. Used optics, such as night vision goggles, if available. c. Used a white light during hours of reduced visibility if METT-TC permitted. d. Checked for abnormalities such as disturbed earth, wires, cables, or anything that did not look like it belonged there. e. Did not dismount unless directed to do so by the vehicle commander. f. When ordered to dismount, checked under the vehicle for visual indicators of IEDs. g. When dismounted, continued to scan assigned sector. 	---	---
<p>2. Conducted a 25-meter scan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Upon completion of the 5-meter scan, continued scanning assigned sector out to 25 meters. b. Scanned near to far, ground level to above head height. c. Used binoculars, night vision goggles, weapons optics, etc. as available. d. Used a white light during hours of reduced visibility if METT-TC permitted. e. Did not dismount unless directed to do so by the vehicle commander. f. When ordered to dismount, continued to scan within assigned sector out to 25 meters. g. Checked under the vehicle for indicators of IEDs when dismounted. h. When dismounted, maintained a low profile around the vehicle during scan. Kept moving using an erratic pattern in order to be a less inviting target for a sniper. 	---	---
<p>3. Conduct a 200-meter scan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Continued a systematic scan out to 200 meters within assigned area of scan. b. Searched near to far, high to low. 	---	---

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Looked for suspicious activity involving people, objects, and animals. d. Searched for reflections, muzzle flash, wires, and anything that looked out of place. e. Used binoculars, night vision goggles, weapons optics, etc. as available. f. Did not dismount unless directed to do so by the vehicle commander. g. When dismounted, checked under the vehicle for indicators of IED's. h. When dismounted, maintained a low profile around the vehicle during scan. Kept moving using an erratic pattern in order to be a less inviting target for a sniper. 		
4. Reported suspicious activity or a possible IED to the vehicle commander.	---	---

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required:

Related:

551-88M-1658

Prepare Vehicle for Convoy Operations

Conditions: You are a vehicle operator preparing to conduct operations within a tactical convoy in a contemporary operational environment. Provided a tactical wheeled vehicle (armored or unarmored); BII and materials to harden vehicle (if needed), such as wire mesh, filled sandbags, rubber or fiber mats, wood shoring material, and steel plates, or any other local and available materials that may be used for vehicle hardening; operational vehicle intercom system; crew-served weapon; weapons mount and ammunition; DA Form 2404 (*Equipment Inspection and Maintenance Worksheet*) and DA Form 5987-E (*Motor Equipment Dispatch [EGA]*); individual field equipment (TA-50 required for mission); tactical radio set with frequencies, or mounted movement tracking system (MTS); vehicle load plan; mission load (cargo) or equipment; and mission guidance.

Standards: You must configure your vehicle to best suit the coming tactical convoy mission by performing all required before-operational maintenance and safety checks to secure an active unit dispatch. If the vehicle is unarmored, you are to harden your vehicle by placing protective materials over vital, vulnerable areas such as fuel tanks, in the cab and cargo/passenger areas (as applicable). All preparations are not to interfere

with the required normal operation of the vehicle, and vehicle driver has full freedom of movement for control and maneuvering of vehicle. If vehicle is armored, all doors and hatches are configured according to mission requirements. All communications equipment is mounted and secured, and communications checks are to be performed (operator is successful entering the mission tactical radio net as required). All combat locking mechanisms are placed in the proper configuration to begin mission, as applicable. All individual and crew-served weapons are well mounted, loaded (as directed), and are ready for test firing. All individual baggage and vehicle load (cargo) is to be loaded and secured (as applicable). If a cargo-carrying vehicle with load, operator possesses all completed load documentation in the equipment records folder as appropriate.

Performance Steps

1. Perform all pre-departure operational and maintenance checks.
 - a. Complete all before-operational preventive maintenance checks on vehicle, and any subsystem such as communications equipment, weapons, mounted night vision devices in accordance with TM, correct deficiencies or refer to proper maintenance level.
 - b. Ensure all completed DA Form 2404, DA Form 5987-E, and DA Form 285-A (*Technical Report of the U.S. Army Ground Accident Index A*) are present in equipment records folder.
 - c. If to be loaded, ensure vehicle load card and load documentation to include DD Form 626 (*Motor Vehicle Inspection [Transporting Hazardous Materials]*) and DD Form 836 (*Dangerous Goods Shipping Paper/Declaration and Emergency Response Information for Hazardous Materials Transported by Government Vehicles*) are present (HAZMAT loads only) in the equipment records folder. Ensure vehicle is placarded in accordance with TACSOP and as HAZMAT rules require for the specific load.
 - d. Ensure equipment records folder is located in vehicle cab in accordance with unit SOP.
 - e. If vehicle is to be hardened, determine adjusted cargo-carrying capacity of vehicle based on weight of sandbags and other heavy materials used to harden vehicle. Filled sandbags weigh about 40 pounds each. Note the adjusted capacity and record in equipment records folder.
 - f. Ensure that canvas and bow assembly is installed over load to conceal from casual observation (as applicable).
 - g. Ensure all combat locking mechanisms are operating well and in proper position as appropriate (if installed).
 - h. Mount all individual and crew-served weapons using weapons mounts located throughout the vehicle. Ensure all locks are secured as appropriate to prevent any accidental dismounting.

Performance Steps

- i.** Load ammunition (as directed) in crew-served weapon. Ensure spare ammunition containers are located and secured per vehicle load plan.
 - j.** Mount (as required) all communications equipment and ensure all items are secure and locked to the vehicle. Leave key(s) in the lock while vehicle is occupied to allow for quick removal in case of vehicle rollover or other accident. If the movement/tracking system or other satellite-based communications/tracking system is installed, ensure that system is powered up and operational.
 - k.** Check vehicle intercom system (if installed) to ensure all components are present and in working order.
 - l.** If the driver's vision enhancer (DVE) is installed on vehicle, ensure that the system is operational.
 - m.** If vehicle is a cargo-carrying vehicle and is to be loaded for mission, ensure that it is loaded according to vehicle load plan by placing large, heavier items on bottom, weight is distributed even, and total of load does not exceed vehicle load limitations. Ensure load compatibility prior to loading. Load must be secured well using appropriate serviceable tie down devices.
 - n.** If vehicle is a prime mover, ensure that the trailer or semitrailer is prepared in accordance with items 1a, b, c, d, f, and l above.
 - o.** Ensure that convoy control number is displayed on all sides of vehicle in accordance with convoy commander's guidance.
- 2.** Harden the vehicle (vehicle without armor kit).
- a.** Ensure all armor kit components are installed well as required by mission.
 - b.** Ensure all combat locks (if installed) are configured as required by SOP for mission.
 - c.** If directed, harden the fuel tank by inserting steel plates under the straps.
 - d.** Harden vehicle doors using steel plates.
 - e.** If possible, place sandbags under the driver and passenger seats of the vehicle.
 - f.** Cover the sandbags with rubber or fiber mats to prolong the life of the sandbags and to reduce risk of injury from sand and fragments.
 - g.** Attach steel plate to the cab floor of the vehicle, and cover it with sandbags.
 - h.** Stack sandbags to the top of the steel plating, using a wood frame to support them.
 - i.** Attach steel plates to the sides of the beds of troop-carrying vehicles to protect troops.
 - j.** Cover the bed of troop-carrying vehicles with steel plate and a double interlocking layer of sandbags.

Performance Steps

3. Configure armored vehicle cab.
 - a. Ensure all armor kit components (doors, access panels, hatches, turret) are installed well as required by mission.
 - b. Ensure all combat locks (if installed) are configured as required by SOP for mission.
 - c. Ensure that all tools for emergency egress (combat locks) of vehicle are present.
4. Report vehicle status to supervisor.
 - a. Ensure that all required forms such as DA Form 2404, DA Form 5987-E, and cargo-related forms are at once available for supervisor prior to movement.
 - b. Provide vehicle cab configuration status.
 - c. Provide status of all communications equipment to include vehicle intercom system (if installed).
 - d. Provide status of all night vision devices of both individual and vehicle mounted.
 - e. Provide status of all weapons and ammunition mounted/stored on vehicle.
 - f. Provide vehicle maintenance status, if prime mover, provide status of trailer or semitrailer.
 - g. Provide status of load (cargo) if loaded for mission.

Evaluation Preparation: *Setup:* Provide for the Soldier a tactical wheeled vehicle, BII, hardening materials. Place vehicle on level ground.

Brief Soldier: You are to prepare your vehicle for operations within a tactical COE theater of operations. You are to perform all required checks and preparational steps to configure your vehicle for tactical operations. A tactical wheeled vehicle, hardening materials, documentation, and BII are provided.

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
1. Performed all pre-departure operation and maintenance checks. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Completed all before-operational preventive maintenance checks on vehicle. b. Ensured all DA Form 2404, DA Form 5987-E, and DA Form 285-A are present in equipment records folder. c. If vehicle has cargo loaded, ensured vehicle load card and load documentation to include DD Form 626 and DD Form 836 (HAZMAT loads only) were present in equipment records folder. Vehicle is placarded as appropriate (HAZMAT loads only). 	---	---

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
<p>d. Ensured the equipment records folder is located within the vehicle cab in accordance with unit SOP.</p>		
<p>e. Determined adjusted cargo-carrying capacity of vehicle based on estimated weight of sandbags and other heavy hardening materials used to harden vehicle. Note this adjusted capacity and recorded in equipment records folder.</p>		
<p>f. If vehicle has cargo loaded, ensured that canvas and bows were used to conceal load from casual observation and protect from inclement weather.</p>		
<p>g. If vehicle armor kit is installed, ensured that all combat locks, panels, and windows are operating well and in proper position for mission.</p>		
<p>2. Hardened the vehicle.</p>	---	---
<p>a. Covered the beds of troop-carrying vehicles with steel plate and a double interlocking layer of sandbags.</p>		
<p>b. Attached steel plates to the sides of the beds of troop-carrying vehicles to protect troops.</p>		
<p>c. Stacked sandbags to the top of the steel plating, using a wood frame to support them.</p>		
<p>d. Attached steel plate to the cab floor of the vehicle and covered it with sandbags.</p>		
<p>e. Covered the sandbags with rubber or fiber mats.</p>		
<p>f. Placed sandbags under the driver and passenger seats of the vehicle.</p>		
<p>g. Hardened vehicle doors using steel plates.</p>		
<p>h. If directed, hardened the fuel tank by inserting steel plates under the straps.</p>		
<p>3. Configured armored vehicle cabin.</p>	---	---
<p>a. Ensured all armor kit components were installed well as required by mission.</p>		
<p>b. Ensured all combat locks (if installed) were configured as required by SOP for mission.</p>		
<p>c. Ensured that all tools for emergency egress (combat locks) of vehicle were present.</p>		
<p>4. Reported vehicle status to supervisor.</p>	---	---

Performance Measures	GO	NO GO
<p>a. Ensured that all required forms such as DA Form 2404), DA Form 5987-E, and cargo-related forms are at once available for supervisor prior to movement.</p> <p>b. Provided vehicle configuration status.</p>		
<p>c. Provided status of all communications equipment to include vehicle intercom system (if installed)</p> <p>d. Provided status of all night vision devices of both individual and vehicle mounted.</p> <p>e. Provided status of all weapons and ammunition mounted/stored on vehicle.</p> <p>f. Provided maintenance condition status.</p>		

Evaluation Guidance: Refer to chapter 1, paragraph 1-9e, (1) and (2).

References

Required: DA Form 285-A, DA Form 2404, DA Form 5987-E, DD Form 626, DD Form 836, FM 55-30, TM 9-2320-260-10, TM 9-2320-272-10, TM 9-2320-279-10-1, TM 9-2320-279-10-2, TM 9-2320-280-10, TM 9-2320-360-10, TM 9-2320-364-10, TM 9-2320-365-10, TM 9-2320-366-10-1, TM 9-2320-366-10-2, TM 9-2330-359-14&P, and TM 9-2330-381-14

Related: TC 21-305-20

081-831-0101

Request Medical Evacuation

Conditions: Repeat task located on 3-88.

081-831-1001

Evaluate a Casualty (Tactical Combat Casualty Care)

Conditions: Repeat task located on 3-139.

081-831-1003

Perform First Aid to Clear an Object Stuck in the Throat of a Conscious Casualty

Conditions: Repeat task located on 3-144.

081-831-1005

Perform First Aid to Prevent or Control Shock

Conditions: Repeat task located on 3-146.

081-831-1023

Perform First Aid to Restore Breathing and/or Pulse

Conditions: Repeat task located on 3-149.

081-831-1032

Perform First Aid for a Bleeding of an Extremity

Conditions: Repeat task located on 3-155.

081-831-1051

Transport a Casualty using a Military Vehicle

Conditions: Repeat task located on 3-161.

081-831-1046

Transport a Casualty

Conditions: Repeat task located on 3-164.

081-831-1007

Perform First Aid for Burns

Conditions: Repeat task located on 3-169.

Appendix

Proponent School or Agency Codes

The first three digits of the task number identify the proponent school or agency responsible for the task. Record any comments or questions regarding the task summaries contained in this manual on a DA Form 2028 (*Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms*) and send it to the proponent school with an information copy to:

Commander, U.S. Army Training Support Center
 ATTN: ATIC-ITSC-CM
 Fort Eustis, VA 23604-5166.

Table A-1. Proponent School or Agency Codes	
<i>School Code</i>	<i>Command</i>
MSCoE CM 031	U.S. Army Chemical School Directorate of Training/Training Development 464 MANSCEN Loop, Suite 2617 Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-8929
MSCoE EN 052	Commandant, U.S. Army Engineer School ATTN: ATSE-DT (Individual Training Division) 320 MANSCEN Loop, Suite 370 Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473
FCoE 061	Directorate of Training and Doctrine U.S. Army Field Artillery School ATTN: ATSF-D Fort Sill, OK 73503-5000
MCoE 071	Commandant, U.S. Army Infantry School ATTN: ATSH-OTSS Fort Benning, GA 31905-5593
AHS 081	Department of Training Support ATTN: MCCS-HTI 1750 Greeley Rd, Ste 135 Fort Sam Houston, TX 78234-5078
SCoE 091 (OMMS) 093 (OMEMS)	U.S. Army Combined Arms Support Command (CASCOM) Training Directorate USACASCOM, ATTN: ATCL-TD

Table A-1. Proponent School or Agency Codes	
<i>School Code</i>	<i>Command</i>
	2221 Adams Avenue., Suite 2018 Fort Lee, VA 23801-1809
SCoE 101	Commander, US Army Quartermaster Center and School ATTN: ATSM-MA Fort Lee, VA 23801-5000
SCoE 113	Commander, USA Signal Center & School ATTN: ATZH-DTM-U Fort Gordon, GA 30905-5074
MCoE 171	Commander, USA Armor Center and School ATTN: ATZK-TDT-TD 204 1ST Cavalry Regiment Road Fort Knox, KY 40121-5123
JAG 181	Commandant, Judge Advocate General Legal Center and School ATTN: JAGS-TDD 600 Massie Road Charlottesville, VA 22903-1781
MSCoE MP 191	Commandant, United States Army Military Police School ATTN: ATSJ-Z 401 MANSZEN Loop, Suite 1068 Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-8926
APAC 224	Director, Army Public Affairs Center 6 ACR Road, Bldg 8607 ATTN: SAPA-PA Fort Meade, MD 20755-5650
ICoE 301	Commander, USA Intelligence Center & Fort Huachuca 550 Cibecque Street, Suite 168 ATTN: ATZS-TDS-I Fort Huachuca, AZ 85613-7002
JFK 331	U.S. Army JFK Special Warfare Center and School Fort Bragg, NC 28310-5000

Table A-1. Proponent School or Agency Codes	
<i>School Code</i>	<i>Command</i>
<p>SCoE 551</p>	<p>U.S. Army Combined Arms Support Command (CASCOM) Training Directorate USACASCOM, ATTN: ATCL-A 2221 Adams Avenue Fort Lee, VA 23801-2102</p>
<p>Fort Jackson SRT</p>	<p>U.S. Army Training Center, Fort Jackson Director of Basic Combat Training (DBCT), Doctrine and Training Development, ATTN: (ATZJ-DTD) 4325 Jackson Blvd. Fort Jackson, SC 29207-5315</p>

This page intentionally left blank.

Glossary

ACH	Army combat helmet
AIDS	acquired immune deficiency syndrome
AIT	advanced individual training
ALM	alarm
AN	annually
ANCOC	advanced noncommissioned officer course
AR	Army regulation
ATNAA	antidote treatment nerve agent autoinjector
ATSC	Army Training Support Center
AUD	audio
AVPU	alert, responds to voice, responds to pain, unresponsive
AWT	Army Warrior Training
az	azimuth
ba	battery
BCT	basic combat training
BDU	battle dress uniform
BNCOC	basic noncommissioned officer course
BTB	believed-to-be
BVO	black vinyl overboots
CAM	chemical-agent monitor
CANA	conversant antidote for nerve agents
CASEVAC	casualty evacuation
C-A-T	combat application tourniquet
CB	chemical-biological
CBRN	chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear
CCW	counterclockwise
CDC	Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
cGy/hr	centigray per hour
CLP	cleaner, lubricant, and preservative
COE	contemporary operating environment
CONEX	container express
CPM	counts per minute
CPR	cardiopulmonary resuscitation
CSF	cerebrospinal fluid
CVC	combat vehicle crewman
DA	Department of the Army
DAP	deltoid auxiliary protector
DOD	Department of Defense

DS	decontaminating solution
DS2	decontaminating solution number 2
DTG	date-time group
DU	depleted uranium
EHI	extra-high intensity
EMR	electromagnetic radiation
EOD	explosive ordnance disposal
EST	Engagement Skills Trainer
F	Fahrenheit, fail
FMC	field medical card
FORSCOM	United States Army Forces Command
FOV	field of view
FPL	final protective line
FTX	field training exercise
FY	fiscal year
GI	government issue
G-M	grid-magnetic
GN	grid North
GPS	global positioning system
GPW	Geneva Convention of 1949 Relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War
GS	general support
GTA	graphic training aid
GWS	Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in the Armed Forces in the field
HBV	hepatitis B virus
HE	high explosive
HIV	human immunodeficiency virus
HMMWV	high-mobility multipurpose wheeled vehicle
HQ	headquarters
HRCRD	handheld remote control radio device
HTH	high-test hypochlorite
HWTS	high weapon thermal sight
IAL	infrared aiming light
ICAM	improved chemical agent monitor
ID	identification
IED	improvised explosive device
IEDK	individual equipment decontamination kit

IOTV	improved outer tactical vest
IR	infrared
ISO	International Organization for Standardization
IV	intravenous
JP	joint publication
JSLIST	joint-Service, lightweight integrated suit technology
LAW	lubricating oil arctic weather
LBE	load-bearing equipment
LCE	load-carrying equipment
LCSS	Lightweight Camouflage Screen System
LIF	light interference filter
LSA	lubricating oil, semi fluid, automatic weapon
m	meter
MEDEVAC	medical evacuation
METL	mission essential task list
METT-TC	mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, civil considerations
MIJI	meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference
ml	milliliter
mm	millimeter
MOA	minute of adjustment
MOPP	mission-oriented protective posture
MOS	military occupational specialty
MOUT	military operations in urban terrain
MP	military police
MRE	meal, ready to eat
MSR	main supply route
MTP	mission training plan
MULO	multipurpose overboots
MWTS	medium weapon thermal sight
NA	not applicable
NBC	nuclear, biological, and chemical
NCO	noncommissioned officer
NCOIC	noncommissioned officer in charge
NCS	net control station
NFOV	narrow field of view
NPA	nasopharyngeal airway
NSN	National Stock Number
OPSEC	operations security
OSUT	one station unit training

OT	observer-target
PASGT	personnel armor system ground troop
PATS	protection assessment test system
PDF	principal direction of fire
PL	preservative lubricant
PLDC	Primary Leadership Development Course
PMCS	preventive maintenance checks and services
PMM	preventive medicine measure
PMO	provost marshal office
POL	petroleum, oils, and lubricants
PPE	protective posture equipment
PW	prisoner of war
PWR	power
qt	quarterly
RBC	rifle bore cleaner
ROE	rules of engagement
ROI	rules of interaction
RPG	rocket-propelled grenade
RSDL	reactive skin decontaminating lotion
RUF	rules for the use of force
SA	semiannually
SALUTE	size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment
SANDI	stop, assess, note, drawback, inform
SC	single channel
SD	self development
SERE	survival, evasion, resistance, or escape
SINGARS	single-channel ground and airborne radio system
SITREP	situation report
SL	skill level
SM	Soldier's manual
SMCT	Soldier's manual of common tasks
SME	subject matter expert
SOI	signal operation instructions
SOP	standing operating procedure
S-P-O-R-T-S	slap, pull, observe, release, tap, squeeze
SPOTREP	spot report
STB	super tropical bleach
STD	sexually transmitted disease

STP	Soldier's training publication
T&E	traversing and elevation
TC	training circular
TCCC	tactical combat casualty care
TGN	total gamma-neutron
TIM	toxic industrial material
TM	technical manual
TOE	table of organization and equipment
TRADOC	United States Army Training and Doctrine Command
TSOP	tactical standing operating procedure
TWS	thermal weapon sight
U.S.	United States
UCMJ	Uniform Code of Military Justice
UXO	unexploded ordnance
VIS	visual
WFOV	wide field of view
WLC	Warrior Leaders Course
WTBD	warrior tasks and battle drills

This page intentionally left blank.

References

REQUIRED PUBLICATIONS

Required publications are sources that users must read to understand or comply with this publication.

ARMY REGULATIONS

AR 27-1. *Legal Services, Judge Advocate Legal Services*. 30 September 1996.

AR 360-1. *The Army Public Affairs Program*. 15 September 2000.

AR 530-1. *Operations Security (OPSEC)*. 19 April 2007.

AR 750-1. *Army Materiel Maintenance Policy*. 20 September 2007.

DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY FORMS

DA forms are available on the APD Web site (www.apd.army.mil).

DA Form 285-A. *Technical Report of the U.S. Army Ground Accident Index A*.

DA Form 1594. *Daily Staff Journal or Duty Officer's Log*.

DA Form 2028. *Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms*.

DA Form 2404. *Equipment Inspection and Maintenance Worksheet*.

DA Form 5987-E. *Motor Equipment Dispatch (EGA)*.

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE FORMS

DD forms are available on the OSD Web site

(www.dtic.mil.whs/directives/infongt/forms/formsprogram.htm).

DD Form 626. *Motor Vehicle Inspection (Transporting Hazardous Materials)*.

DD Form 836. *Dangerous Goods Shipping Paper/Declaration and Emergency Response Information for Hazardous Materials Transported by Government Vehicles*.

FIELD MANUALS

FM 3-11.3. *Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Chemical, Biological, Radiological, and Nuclear Contamination Avoidance*. 2 February 2006.

FM 3-11.4. *Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Protection*. 2 June 2003.

FM 3-11.5. *Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Chemical, Biological, Radiological, and Nuclear Decontamination*. 4 April 2006.

FM 3-19.15. *Civil Disturbance Operations*. 18 April 2005.

FM 3-21.8. *The Infantry Platoon and Squad*. 28 March 2007.

FM 3-21.75. *The Warrior Ethos and Soldier Combat Skills*. 28 January 2008.

FM 3-22.68. *Crew Served Weapons, 5.56-MM and 7.62-MM*. 21 July 2006.

- FM 3-25.26. *Map Reading and Land Navigation*. 18 January 2005.
- FM 3-25.150. *Combatives*. 1 April 2009.
- FM 23-23. *Antipersonnel Mine M18A1 and M18 (Claymore)*. 6 January 1966.
- FM 27-10. *The Law of Land Warfare*. 18 July 1956.
- FM 46-1. *Public Affairs Operations*. 30 May 1997.

TECHNICAL MANUALS

- TM 3-4230-229-10. *Operator's Manual for Decontaminating Kit Skin: M291, (NSN 4230-01-251-3702)*. 2 October 1989.
- TM 3-4230-235-10. *Operator's Manual for Decontamination Kit, Individual Equipment: M295 (NSN 6850-01-357-8456) (EIC: Y67)*. 21 November 2008.
- TM 3-4240-279-10. *Operator's Manual for Mask, Chemical-Biological: Field, ABC-M17 (NSN 4240-00-542-4450 – Small) (4240-00-542-4451 – Medium) (4240-00-542-4452 – Large); M17A1 (4240-00-926-4199 – Small) (4240-00-926-4201 – Medium) (4240-00-926-4200 – Large); M17A2 (4240-01-143-2017 – X-Small) (4240-01-143-2018 – Small) (4240-01-143-2019 – Medium) (4240-01-143-2020 – Large)*. 5 October 1987.
- TM 3-4240-280-10. *Operator's Manual for Mask, Chemical-Biological: Aircraft, ABC-M24 and Accessories and Mask, Chemical-Biological, Tank, M25A1 and Accessories*. 15 March 1988.
- TM 3-4240-300-10-2. *Operator's Manual for Chemical-Biological Mask: Combat Vehicle, M42 (4240-01-258-0064 – Small) (4240-01-258-0065 – Medium) (4240-01-258-0066 – Large)*. 30 August 1998.
- TM 3-4240-312-12&P. *Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual (Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List) for Mask, Chemical-Biological: Aircraft, M43, Type I (NSN 4240-01-208-6966 – Small) (4240-01-208-6967 – Medium) (4240-01-208-6968 – Large) (4240-01-208-6969 – Extra Large); Type II (4240-01-265-2677 – Small) (4240-01-265-2679 – Medium) (4240-01-265-2678 – Large) (4240-01-265-2680 – Extra Large)*. 30 June 1988.
- TM 3-4240-346-10. *Operator's Manual for Chemical-Biological Mask: Field, M40A1 (4240-01-370-3821 – Small) (4240-01-370-3822 – Medium) (4240-01-370-3823 – Large); Chemical-Biological Mask: Combat Vehicle, M42A2 (4240-01-413-4100 – Small) (4240-01-413-4101 – Medium) (4240-01-413-4102 – Large)*. 31 August 2010.
- TM 3-4240-542-13&P. *Operator and Field Maintenance Manual (Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List) for Mask, Chemical-Biological: Joint Service General Purpose, Field, M50 (4240-01-512-4431) Small, (4240-01-512-4434) Medium, (4240-01-512-4437) Large; and Mask, Chemical-Biological: Joint Service General Purpose, Combat Vehicle, M51 (4240-01-512-4429) Small, (4240-01-512-4435) Medium, (4240-01-512-4436) Large*. 30 May 2008.

- TM 3-6665-307-10. *Operator's Manual for Chemical Agent Detector Kit, M256 (NSN 6665-01-016-8399) and M256A1 (6665-01-133-4964).* 1 September 1985.
- TM 3-6665-311-10. *Operator's Manual for Paper, Chemical Agent Detector: M9 (NSN 6665-01-226-5589).* 31 August 1998.
- TM 3-6665-331-10. *Operator's Manual for Chemical Agent Monitor (CAM).* 12 June 1992.
- TM 3-9905-001-10. *Operator's Manual for Sign Kit, Contamination (NSN 9905-01-346-4716).* 23 August 1982.
- TM 9-1005-201-10. *Operator's Manual for Machine Gun, 5.56-MM, M249 W/Equip (NSN 1005-01-127-7510) (EIC: 4BG) (AR Role), (NSN 1005-01-451-6769) (EIC: 4BK) (LMG Role).* 26 July 1991.
- TM 9-1005-249-10. *Operator's Manual for Rifle, 5.56-MM, M16 (NSN 1005-00-856-6885); Rifle, 5.56-MM, M16A1 (1005-00-073-9421).* 11 February 1985.
- TM 11-5820-890-10-8. *Operator's Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio, AN/PRC-119A (NSN 5820-01-267-9482) (EIC: L2Q), AN/PRC-119D (NSN 5820-01-421-0801) (EIC: GC9), AN/PRC-119F (NSN 5820-01-451-8252) (EIC: GA4), AN/VRC-87A (NSN 5820-01-267-9480) (EIC: L22), AN/VRC-87C (NSN 5820-01-304-2045) (EIC: GDC), AN/VRC-87D (NSN 5820-01-351-5259) (EIC: GAR), AN/VRC-87F (NSN 5820-01-451-8248) (EIC: GA5), AN/VRC-87G (NSN 5820-01-555-7674) (EIC: N/A), AN/VRC-88A (NSN 5820-01-267-9481) (EIC: L23), AN/VRC-88D (NSN 5820-01-352-1694) (EIC: GAS), AN/VRC-88F (NSN 5820-01-452-8435) (EIC: GA3), AN/VRC-89A (NSN 5820-01-267-9479) (EIC: L24), AN/VRC-89D (NSN 5820-01-420-6619) (EIC: GD8), AN/VRC-89F (NSN 5820-01-451-8247) (EIC: GAY), AN/VRC-90A (NSN 5820-01-268-5105) (EIC: L25), AN/VRC-90D (NSN 5820-01-420-6618) (EIC: GD9), AN/VRC-90F (NSN 5820-01-451-8246) (EIC: GA2), AN/VRC-90G (NSN 5820-01-555-7371) (EIC: N/A), AN/VRC-91A (NSN 5820-01-267-9478) (EIC: L26), AN/VRC-91D (NSN 5820-01-420-6621) (EIC: GDG), AN/VRC-91F (NSN 5820-01-451-8249) (EIC: GA8), AN/VRC-92A (NSN 5820-01-267-9477) (EIC: L27), AN/VRC-92D (NSN 5820-01-421-2605) (EIC: GDH), AN/VRC-92F (NSN 5820-01-451-8250) (EIC: GM2), Used with Automated Net Control Device (ANCD) AN/CYZ-10 Simple Key Loader (SKL) AN/PYQ-10 Precision Lightweight GPS Receiver (PLGR) AN/PSN-11 Secure Telephone Unit (STU) Frequency Hopping Multiplexer (FHMUX) TD-1456/VRC.* 1 December 1998.
- TM 11-6665-251-10. *Operator's Manual for Radiac Set AN/VDR-2 (NSN 6665-01-222-1425).* 1 March 1988.
- TM 11-6665-364-12. *Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Radiac Set AN/UDR-13 (NSN 6665-01-407-1237) (EIC: KYH).* 1 February 2002.
- TM 11-6665-365-12&P. *Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual (Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List) for Radiac Set AN/PDR-77 (NSN 6665-01-347-6100) (EIC: N/A).* 28 February 1995.

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- ACP 125 US Supp-1. *Communications Instructions Radiotelephone Procedures for Use by United States Ground Forces*. 1 October 1985.
- DODD 3150.8. *DOD Response to Radiological Accidents*. 13 June 1996.
- GTA 03-04-001A. *Depleted Uranium Awareness*. 1 October 1999.
- GTA 03-06-004. *Chemical Agent Monitor (CAM) User's Guide*. 24 July 2000.
- GTA 05-02-012. *Coordinate Scale and Protractor*. 1 October 2005.
- GTA 07-01-039. *M16A2 Rifle Disassembly Layout*. 2 January 1996.
- GTA 09-12-001. *Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) Procedures UXO Marker White Bomb on a Red Background*. 1 March 2007.
- JP 4-06. *Mortuary Affairs in Joint Operations*. 5 June 2006.
- TC 27-10-1. *Selected Problems in the Law of War*. 26 June 1979.

RELATED PUBLICATIONS

Related publications are sources of additional information; they are not required to understand this publication.

ARMY REGULATIONS

- AR 40-66. *Medical Record Administration and Health Care Documentation*. 17 June 2008.
- AR 350-1. *Army Training and Leader Development*. 18 December 2009.
- AR 600-63. *Army Health Promotion*. 7 May 2007.

FIELD MANUALS

- FM 3-06. *Urban Operations*. 26 October 2006.
- FM 3-06.11. *Combined Arms Operations in Urban Terrain*. 28 February 2002.
- FM 3-11.19. *Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Reconnaissance*. 30 July 2004.
- FM 3-19.13. *Law Enforcement Investigations*. 10 January 2005.
- FM 3-20.15 (FM 17-15). *Tank Platoon*. 22 February 2007.
- FM 3-20.98. *Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon*. 3 August 2009.
- FM 3-22.9. *Rifle Marksmanship M16-/M4-Series Weapons*. 12 August 2008.
- FM 3-22.65. *Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .50 HB, M2*. 3 March 2005.
- FM 3-23.35. *Combat Training with Pistols, M9 and M11*. 25 June 2003.
- FM 4-25.11. *First Aid*. 23 December 2002.
- FM 17-95. *Cavalry Operations*. 24 December 1996.
- FM 19-10. *The Military Police Law and Order Operations*. 30 September 1987.
- FM 21-10. *Field Hygiene and Sanitation*. 21 June 2000.
- FM 21-60. *Visual Signals*. 30 September 1987.

- FM 22-6. *Guard Duty*. 17 September 1971.
- FM 3-39.40 (FM 3-19.40). *Internment and Resettlement Operations*.
12 February 2010.
- FM 90-3. *Desert Operations*. 24 August 1993.

DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY FORMS

- DA forms are available on the APD Web site (www.apd.army.mil).
- DA Form 5164-R. *Hands-on Evaluation*.
- DA Form 5165-R. *Field Expedient Squad Book*.

TECHNICAL MANUAL

- TM 3-22.31. *40-mm Grenade Launchers*. 17 November 2010.
- TM 9-1005-213-10. *Operator's Manual For Machine Guns, Caliber .50; M2, Heavy Barrel Flexible, W/E (NSN 1005-00-322-9715) (EIC: 4AG), M48 Turret Type (1005-00-957-3893) (EIC: 4BB), Soft Mount (1005-01-343-0747) (Navy), Fixed Type Right Hand Feed (1005-00-122-9339) (Navy), Fixed Type Left Hand Feed (1005-00-122-9368) (Navy)*. 1 June 2001.
- TM 9-1005-313-10. *Operator's Manual for Machine Gun, 7.62mm, M240 (1005-01-025-8095); Machine Gun, 7.62mm, M240B (1005-01-412-3129); Machine Gun, 7.62mm, M240C (1005-01-085-4758); Machine Gun, 7.62mm, M240D (1005-01-418-6995); Machine Gun, 7.62mm, M240E1 (1005-01-252-4288); Machine Gun, 7.62mm, M240L (1005-01-549-5837); Machine Gun, 7.62mm, M240H (1005-01-518-2410); Machine Gun, 7.62mm, M240N (1005-01-493-1666)*. 15 November 2002.
- TM 9-1005-317-10. *Operator's Manual for Pistol, Semiautomatic, 9mm, M9 (NSN 1005-01-118-2640)(EIC: 4MN); and PISTOL, Semiautomatic, 9mm, M9A1 (NSN 1005-01-525-7966)*.
28 February 2007.
- TM 9-1005-319-10. *Operator's Manual for Rifle, 5.56 mm, M16A2 W/E (NSN 1005-01-128-9936) (EIC: 4GM); Rifle, 5.56 mm, M16A3 (1005-01-357-5112); Rifle, 5.56 mm, M16A4 (1005-01-383-2872) (EIC: 4F9); Carbine, 5.56 mm, M4 W/E (1005-01-231-0973) (EIC: 4FJ); Carbine, 5.56 mm, M4A1 (1005-01-382-0953)*. 30 June 2010.
- TM 9-1010-221-10. *Operator's Manual for Grenade Launcher, 40-mm: M203 (NSN 1010-00-179-644 7); Grenade Launcher, 40-mm: M203A1 (1010-01-434-9028)*. 1 August 2001.
- TM 9-1240-413-13&P. *Operator and Field Maintenance Manual Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List for M68 Sight, Reflex, w/Quick Release Mount and Sight Mount (COMP M2: NSN 1240-01-411-1265) (COMP M4: NSN 1204-01-540-3690)*. 19 March 2008.
- TM 9-1330-200-12. *Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Grenades*. 17 September 1971.
- TM 10-8415-209-10. *Operator's Manual for Individual Chemical Protective Clothing*. 31 March 1993.
- TM 10-8415-220-10. *Operator Manual for Joint Service Lightweight Integrated Suit Technology (JSLIST) Chemical Protective Ensemble*.
28 July 2008.

TM 11-5820-890-10-1. *Operator's Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio, ICOM Manpack Radio AN/PRC-119A (NSN 5820-01-267-9482) (EIC: L2Q), Short Range Vehicular Radio AN/VRC-87A (NSN 5820-01-267-9480) (EIC: L22), Short Range Vehicular Radio with Single Radio Mount AN/VRC-87C (NSN 5820-01-304-2045) (EIC: GDC), Short Range Vehicular Radio with Dismount AN/VRC-88A (NSN 5820-01-267-9481) (EIC: L23), Short Range Vehicular Radio with Dismount and Single Radio Mount AN/VRC-88C (NSN 5820-01-304-2044) (EIC: GDD), Short Range/Long Range Vehicular Radio AN/VRC-89A (NSN 5820-01-267-9479) (EIC: L24), Long Range Vehicular Radio AN/VRC-90A (NSN 5820-01-268-5105) (EIC: L25), Short Range/Long Range Vehicular Radio with Dismount AN/VRC-91A (NSN 5820-01-267-9478) (EIC: L26), Long Range/Long Range Vehicular Radio AN/VRC-92A (NSN 5820-01-267-9477) (EIC: L27).* 1 September 1992.

TM 11-5820-890-10-3. *Operator's Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio, Non-ICOM AN/PRC-119 (NSN 5820-01-151-9915) (EIC: L2A), Short Range Vehicular Radio AN/VRC-87 (NSN 5820-01-151-9916) (EIC: L2T), Short Range Vehicular Radio AN/VRC-87D (NSN 5820-01-351-5259) (EIC: TBD) (with Single Radio Mount), Short Range Vehicular Radio with Dismount AN/VRC-88 (NSN 5820-01-151-9917) (EIC: L2U), Short Range Vehicular Radio with Dismount AN/VRC-88D (NSN 5820-01-352-1694) (EIC: TBD) (with Single Radio Mount), Short Range/Long Range Vehicular Radio AN/VRC-89 (NSN 5820-01-151-9918) (EIC: L2V), Long Range Vehicular Radio AN/VRC-90 (NSN 5820-01-151-9919) (EIC: L2W), Short Range/Long Range Vehicular Radio with Dismount AN/VRC-91 (NSN 5820-01-151-9920) (EIC: L2X), Long Range/Long Range Vehicular Radio AN/VRC-92 (NSN 5820-01-151-9921) (EIC: L2Y).* 1 September 1992.

TM 11-5855-213-10. *Operator's Manual for Night Vision Sight, Individual Served Weapon, AN/PVS-4 (NSN 5855-00-629-5334) (EIC: IPJ).* 1 February 1993.

TM 11-5855-214-10. *Operator's Manual for Night Vision Sight, Crew Served Weapon, AN/TVS-5 (NSN 5855-00-629-5327).* 15 February 1989.

TM 11-5855-238-10. *Operator's Manual for Night Vision Goggles Ground Use: AN/PVS-5 and AN/PVS-5A (NSN 5855-00-150-1820) (EIC: IPD) AN/PVS-5B (5855-01-228-0938) (EIC: IPV) AN/PVS-5C (5855-01-228-0936) (EIC: IPU) Aviation Use: GM-6(V)1 Goggles GM-6(V)2 Goggles.* 15 May 1993.

TM 11-5855-301-12&P. *Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual (Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List) for Light, Aiming, Infrared AN/PAQ-4B (NSN 5855-01-361-1362) (EIC: N/A) AN/PAQ-4C (5855-01-398-4315) (EIC: N/A).* 15 May 2000.

TM 11-5855-306-10. *Operator's Manual for Monocular Night Vision Device (MNVD) AN/PVS-14.* 1 October 2010.

- TM 11-5855-308-12&P. *Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual (Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List) Target Pointer Illuminator/Aiming Light AN/PEQ-2A (NSN 5855-01-447-8992)*. 15 May 2000.
- TM 11-5855-312-10. *Operator's Manual for Sight, Thermal AN/PAS-13B(V)2 (NSN 5855-01-464-3152) (EIC:N/A), AN/PAS-13B(V)3 (5855-01-464-3151) (EIC:N/A)*. 15 February 2005.
- TM 11-5855-312-23&P. *Unit Maintenance and Direct Support Maintenance Manual (Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List) for Sight, Thermal AN/PAS-13B(V)2 (NSN 5855-01-464-3152) (EIC: N/A) AN/PAS-13B(V)3 (NSN 5855-01-464-3151) (EIC: N/A)*. 15 February 2005.

This page intentionally left blank.

STP 21-1-SMCT
2 May 2011

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

MARTIN E. DEMPSEY
General, United States Army
Chief of Staff

Official:



JOYCE E. MORROW
Administrative Assistant to the
Secretary of the Army
1103303

DISTRIBUTION:

Army National Guard, and U.S. Army Reserve: Distribute in accordance with the initial distribution number IDN 111447, requirements for STP 21-1-SMCT.

This page intentionally left blank.

WARRIOR ETHOS

The Warrior Ethos forms the foundation for the American Soldier's spirit and total commitment to victory, in peace and war, always exemplifying the ethical behavior and Army Values. Soldiers put the mission first, refuse to accept defeat, never quit, and never leave behind a fellow American. Their absolute faith in themselves and their comrades makes the United States Army invariably persuasive in peace and invincible in war.

PIN: 059832-000